BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

# INTRODUCTION

# CITATION, COPYRIGHT AND DISCLAIMER

Citation: BC Centre for Palliative Care (2017). B.C. Inter-professional Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines.

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca

All information contained within these Guidelines is owned and copyrighted by the BC Centre for Palliative Care. Users are granted a limited license to display or print the information, without modification, for personal, educational and non-commercial use only and all copyright and other proprietary notices are retained. Under no circumstances may any of the information be otherwise reproduced, republished or re-disseminated in any other manner or form without the prior written permission of an authorized representative of the BC Centre for Palliative Care.

These Inter-professional Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines are intended to provide general advice to clinicians, physicians, nurses and allied health staff involved in palliative care supports; and have been prepared with regard to general settings using information available at the time. The content is derived from a number of sources on an "as-is" basis without any representation, warranty, or condition whatsoever, whether express or implied, statutorily or otherwise, as to accuracy, completeness, currency, reliability, efficacy, legality or fitness for a particular purpose. Under no condition should the information contained in these Guidelines be relied upon as a substitute for the proper assessment of the circumstances involved in each case and the individual needs of each patient by qualified health care professionals.

The BC Centre for Palliative Care and the content providers of the Guidelines shall have no liability, directly or indirectly, in any manner whatsoever arising from the use, or reliance upon, all or any part of the information contained in these Guidelines whether based on tort or breach of contract, including without limitation, negligence, intellectual property rights' infringement, strict liability, fundamental breach or otherwise.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## LETTER OF INTRODUCTION – DR. DORIS BARWICH

The BC Centre for Palliative Care is thrilled to have been able to support the development of these updated B.C. Inter-professional Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines for Inter-Disciplinary providers in BC. It has been an exciting project involving many expert clinicians as well as front-line providers to ensure a product that not only ensures best practices but is also accessible and user-friendly for health care providers throughout BC. Enabling quality of life for patients and families with serious illness is core to what we do. Enabling excellence in pain and symptom management 24/7 throughout BC will ensure quality of care and improve outcomes for patients and families.

A big thank you to all our partners who helped make it possible.

**Doris Barwich MD CCFP(PC)**
**Executive Director, BC Centre for Palliative Care**
Clinical Associate Professor, Division of Palliative Care
Department of Medicine, University of British Columbia
300- 601 Sixth Street New Westminster, BC V3L 3C1
T: 604 553-4866 Fax: 604 553-4865
www.bc-cpc.ca

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## BACKGROUND AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE B.C. PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

The Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care Program's Symptom Management Guidelines (Fraser SMGs) were first introduced in Dec 2006. Since then, some have been updated and the 4th edition (2012) is currently available on the Fraser Health website[1]. Island Health, Interior Health and Northern Health have adapted and adopted the Fraser Health SMGs as Best Practice Guidelines. Vancouver Coastal uses their Community Palliative Care Clinical Practice Guidelines,[2] while First Nations Health Authority utilized guidelines from their nearest regional health authority.

Educators and clinical leaders from the health authorities using the Fraser SMGs acknowledged a lack of sufficient resources to independently update them and expressed interest in a collaborative process. They offered in kind contribution by palliative educators and clinicians to further the provincial effort.

In addition to the request from regional health authorities, the BC Ministry of Health recognized the need for provincial guidelines for end of life care. The BC Center for Palliative Care (BC-CPC) was mandated by the Ministry to support the creation of new hospice
spaces by:

- Promoting excellence in end of life care and innovation / best practices in end of life care;
- Implementing provincial end of life clinical guidelines, protocols and standards[3].

In March of 2016, the project, "Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines; a resource for British Columbia" was approved by the sponsor, Dr. Doris Barwich (Executive Director, BC-CPC) with the goal of creating a provincial set of palliative symptom management best practice guidelines which were:

- Informed by evidence current to May 2016;
- Endorsed by each health authority in B.C.

The objectives of the project were to:

- Utilize an agreed-upon, documented methodology for evidence review;
- Provide a toolkit for future guideline revisions, informed by lessons learned during this project;
- Create an opportunity for provincial collaboration towards shared goals.

---

1 Fraser Health. "Hospice Palliative Care Symptom Guidelines". Accessed Feb 8, 2016. https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

2 Vancouver Coastal Health. "Community Palliative Care Clinical Practice Guidelines", 2007.

3 BC Center for Palliative Care Strategic Plan 2015

# PART 1 - DEVELOPMENT PROCESS: PHASES 1 - 3

## Phase 1 Stakeholder engagement and scoping of the project (March-June, 2016)

The primary goal of Phase 1 was the establishment of a provincial Steering Committee that would provide leadership and guidance throughout the project. The committee was comprised of representatives from six health authorities (Fraser, Providence, First Nations, Island, Northern, and Interior) who worked together to address foundational questions related to the project. As a result, three key decisions were made:

The existing Fraser Health Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines would be the primary source document for revision.

The AGREE II and AGREE II – Global Rating Scale4 would be the principal tools used by the Clinician Review Panel through Phase 2.

Although the committee reinforced the necessity for a holistic approach to care, the scope of this project would be limited to end of life symptoms within the physical domain.

In addition, decisions were made outlining the scope of the project including; the audience, care setting, and patient population. The audience for the guidelines was determined to be nurses and physicians without palliative specialization, working with adults with any life-limiting illness, in any care setting (Ideally, with 24-hour access to palliative specialist consultation). The scope was further defined to exclude refractory symptom management or health authority specific protocols such as pre-printed orders.

At completion of Phase 1, an update and report of key decisions was sent to each health authority and the project sponsor.

## Phase 2 Literature review, writing and revisions (July 2016 – Aug 31, 2017)

The literature review included sources from 2012-2016, utilizing a modified GRADE[5] methodology to determine the strength of practice recommendations. Each guideline

4 Brouwers M, Kho ME, Browman GP, Burgers JS, Cluzeau F, Feder G, Fervers B, Graham ID, Grimshaw J, Hanna S, Littlejohns P, Makarski J, Zitzelsberger L (2010). AGREE II: Advancing guideline development, reporting and evaluation in healthcare. *Can Med Assoc J. Dec 2010; 182:E839-842; doi:10.1503/090449*

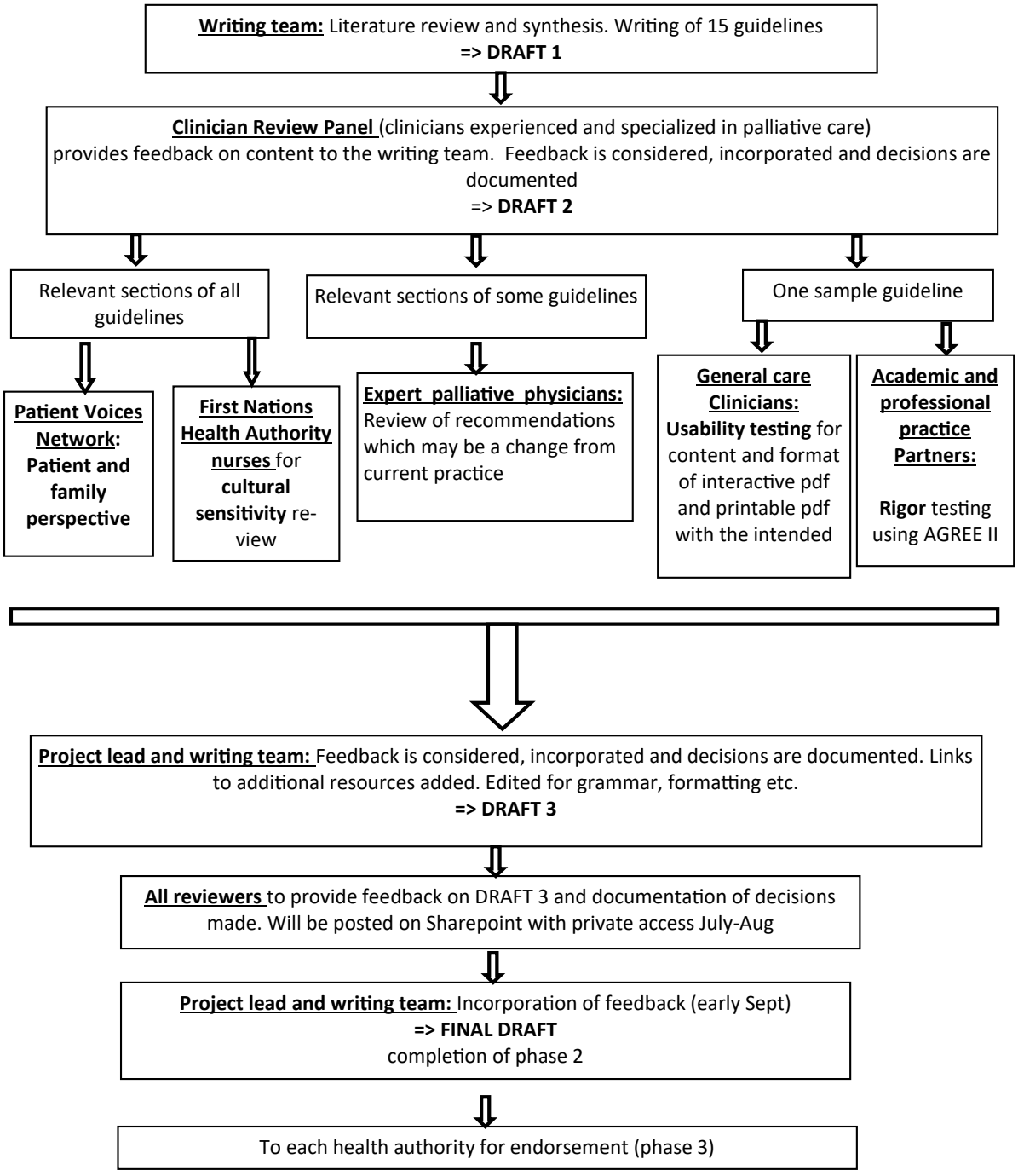
5 Goldet, G. and Howick, J. (2013), Understanding GRADE: an introduction. Journal of Evidence-Based Medicine, 6: 50–54. doi:10.1111/jebm.12018

had internal review amongst members of the writing team and the project lead before being released to the clinician review panel. The guidelines were reviewed from many perspectives and then revised based on multiple feedback sources (Figure 1: Phase 2 process summary).

### **Phase 3 Health authority endorsement and reporting** (Sept 1-Dec 23, 2017)

Phase 3 consists of each Steering Committee member putting the guidelines through their health authority's process for adopting new best practice guidelines. Assuming most health authorities endorse the guidelines for clinical use, the project will be complete. The guidelines will then be housed on the BC Centre for Palliative Care website. The anticipated release is at the end of November 2017.

**Figure 1:** Phase 2 process summary




For more detail, please contact Kathleen Yue, Project Lead kyue@bc-cpc.ca

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## PART 2, REFRACTORY SYMPTOMS / PALLIATIVE SEDATION AND NURTURING PSYCHOSOCIAL AND SPIRITUAL WELL-BEING - DEVELOPMENT PROCESS

Part 1 of this project resulted in the BC Inter-professional palliative symptom management guidelines (Nov 2017), which have been accessed over 6000 times since their release. At completion of Part 1, a report of lessons learned, a toolkit, an evaluation of user experience and a plan for future revisions was submitted to the project sponsor and relevant stakeholders.

Part 2 is a continuation of the project, with development of 2 more guidelines:

- Nurturing psychosocial and spiritual well-being (and
- Refractory symptoms and palliative sedation therapy.

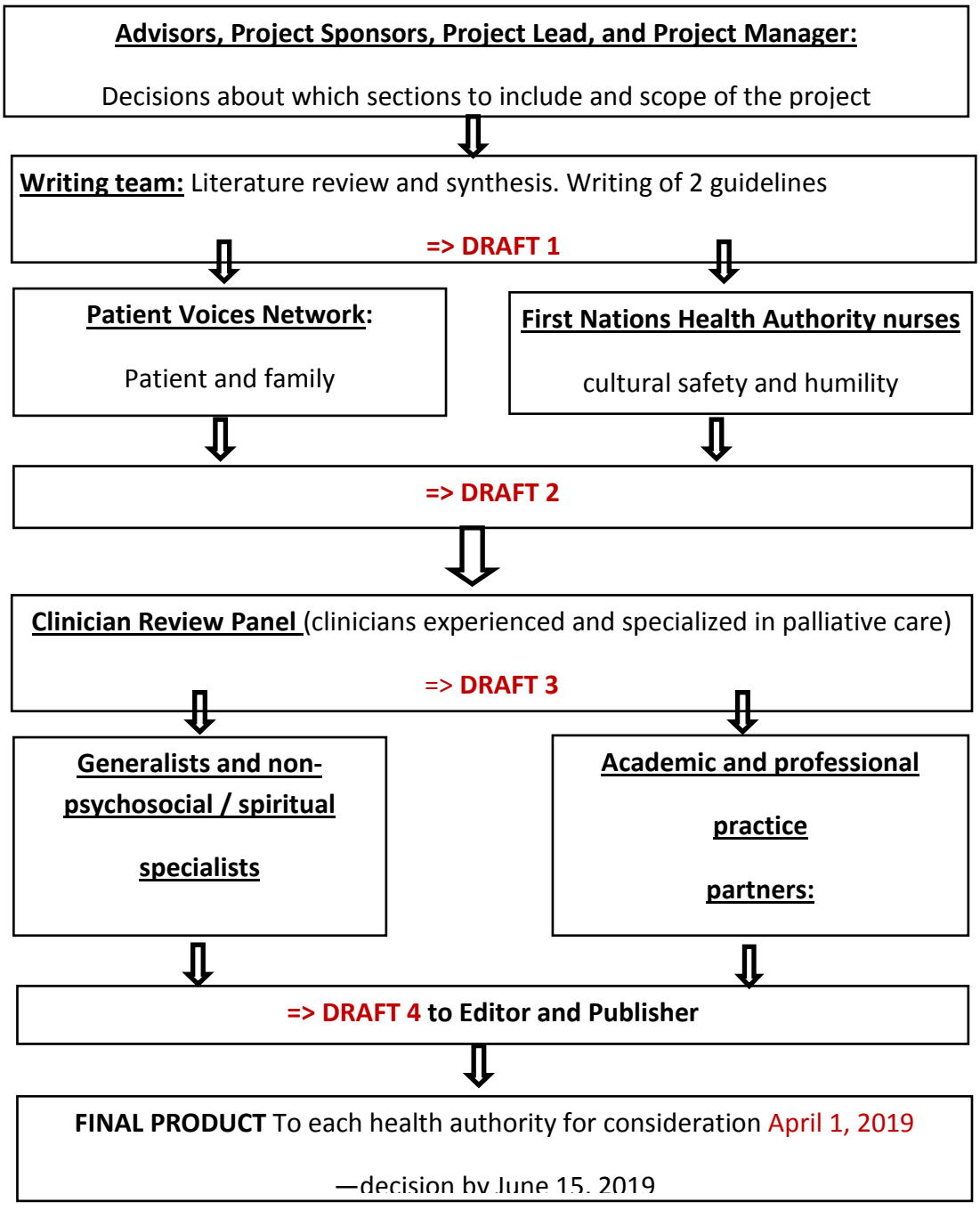
For Part 1 of the guidelines, a modified GRADE process was used. However, the nature of the evidence found in the literature led to a different process for Part 2. For Refractory symptoms and palliative sedation therapy, several Canadian, recently published best practice guidelines already existed. Therefore, the writers compiled the common features of these as well as a few research studies and then had B.C. palliative expert physicians, pharmacists and nurses review and provide significant input.

For Nurturing psychosocial and spiritual well-being, much of the research evidence was qualitative, which is not highly valued using the GRADE tool. Therefore, writers searched for and recommended interventions which were relevant to the patient population and demonstrated consistent positive results as reported in several sources. All recommended interventions are low risk, such as providing active listening. These recommends were validated with palliative expert social workers, counsellors, spiritual health practitioners and nurses.

### Process Summary[6]

6 Feedback on each DRAFT was provided to selected members of the advisors, clinician reviewers, Patient Voices and writing team who incorporated suggestions as appropriate and documented the decisions made

# INTRODUCTION



BC Centre for Palliative Care

# CLINICIAN INTRODUCTION TO THE B.C. PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

The B.C. Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines were developed to support clinicians to provide effective symptom management for patients with life-limiting illness without a referral to a palliative specialist. Using this reference, we hope you will feel both confident and competent to care for patients and families, enabling them to receive most care from their trusted primary care providers. Each health authority has access to some level of palliative consultation services for advice, coaching and mentorship as well as courses and workshops to strengthen your skills. Please find links to consultation services in the "Additional resources" section of each guideline.

There were several key decisions made about the scope of these guidelines you may find helpful to understand:

1. Symptoms chosen for inclusion were:
    a. Physical in nature (e.g. spiritual distress was excluded);
    b. Common to more than one life-limiting illness (e.g. cancer-specific symptoms were excluded).
2. All care settings were included. To support decision making, each of the non-pharmacological interventions is categorized as "available in the home and residential care facilities" or "requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care".
3. Specific protocols, pre-printed orders, or clinical tools were excluded as they may vary between health authorities.
4. While we anticipate that allied health professionals will find these guidelines useful, they were written with physicians and nurses in mind.
5. Two formats of the guidelines are available; a printable pdf and an interactive pdf (available at the BC Centre for Palliative Care website).

You will notice that the guidelines all have the same structure, this was carefully refined with much feedback. Our intent is to lead you through a process similar to your current practice, with a few modifications to reflect the context of palliative care. We refer to the patient and family as the unit of care (family is whoever the patient finds supportive, regardless of the social relationship).

## The standard format

1. Definition
2. Prevalence
3. Impact
4. Standard of care

   Step 1 | **Goals of care conversation**

   Step 2 | **Assessment**

   Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[7]

   Physical assessment

   Diagnostics

   Step 3 | **Determine possible cause (s)**

   Principles of management (a summary of key items in the guideline)

   Step 4 | **Interventions**

   Legend for use of bullets

   Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence using a modified GRADE process.

   Non-pharmacological interventions

   Pharmacological interventions

   Patient and family education

5. Appendix A – Additional Resources for management of symptom

---

7 Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care]

Resources specific to the symptom

General resources

Resources specific to health authority or region

Resources specific to patient population

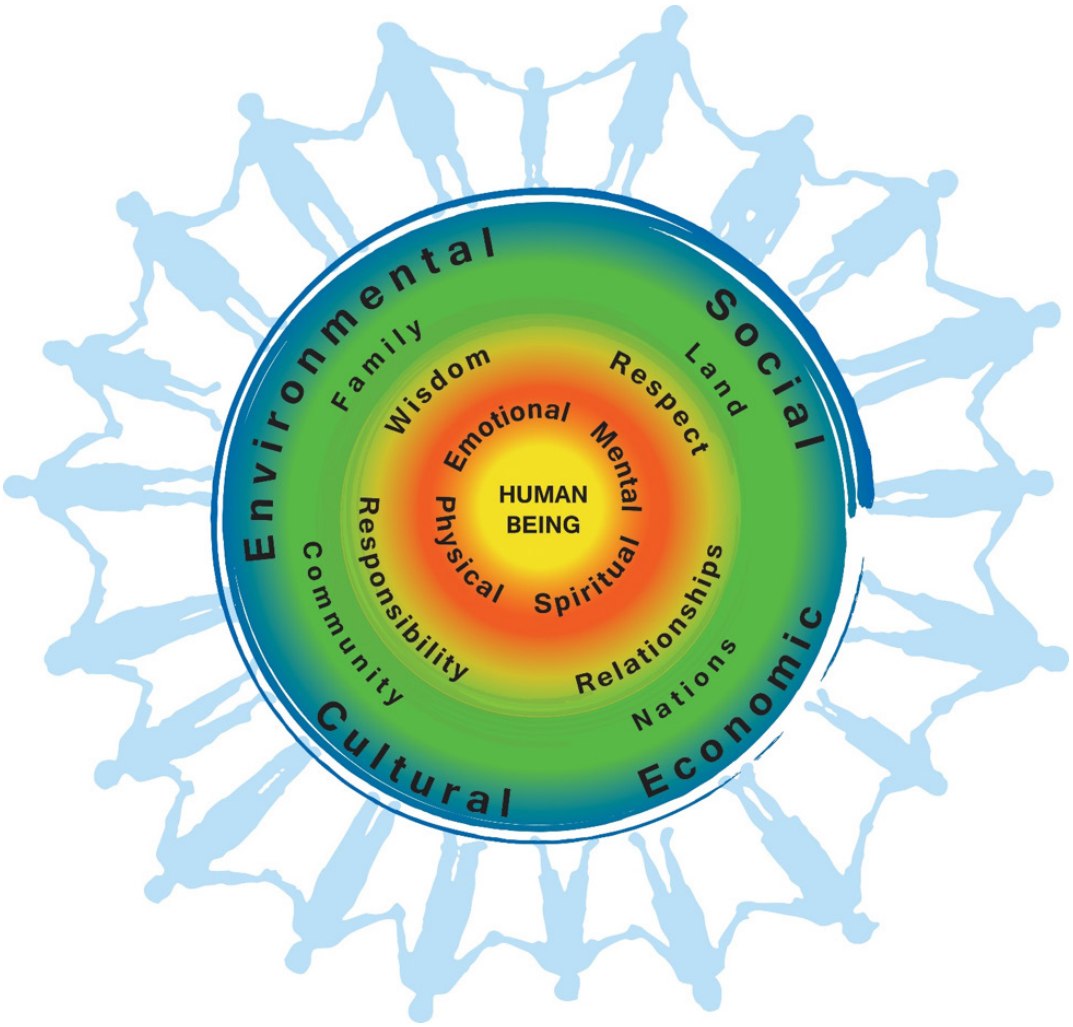
6. Appendix B - Underlying causes of symptom in palliative care
7. Appendix C – Medications for management of the symptom
8. Appendix D – Management algorithm
9. Appendix E – Extra resources or assessment tools

## FIRST NATIONS PERSPECTIVE ON HEALTH & WELLNESS

When deciding which symptoms to include in the scope of this project, the Steering Committee chose to include only symptoms directly in the physical facet of life. We included symptoms such as constipation and excluded anxiety, depression and existential distress. The Steering Committee struggled with this decision, as we all agreed it is critical to care for people as holistic human beings, and not to separate them into components. However, two factors influenced this decision: we needed to limit the project's scope to what was achievable with existing resources; and we realized that non-physical distress may not be best classified as a "symptom" per se. To address the other facets of health, we included assessment questions and interventions about non-physical concerns such as anxiety.

We consulted with care providers and members of First Nations communities to try and understand the potential impacts of each physical symptom on the spiritual, emotional and mental facets. Their suggestions have been incorporated into the guidelines, especially in the assessment questions, which include questions about cultural and spiritual values. Many suggestions are applicable for other cultures and beliefs as well, within the overall approach of seeking to understand without judgement.

The "wellness wheel" was the lens through which we viewed health throughout the development of the guidelines. We recognize that a human being can be well within one facet of life while being unwell in another facet. For example, one can be spiritually at peace while physically dying.




First Nations Health Authority. (2014). *First Nations Perspective on Health and Wellness.* Used with permission.

*For a further description:* http://www.fnha.ca/wellness/wellness-and-the-first-nations-health-authority/first-nations-perspective-on-wellness

We learned from our First Nations health partners that some symptoms have spiritual significance, for example, dyspnea may be interpreted not just a sensation physical discomfort, rather as a lack of the essential element of air, which is needed for wellness. Another example is how a professional trained in western medicine may interpret visions of passed loved ones as a hallucination, whereas some First Nations' people would see this as a needed part of the passing over process. Without this insight, a medical professional

may attempt to remove these visions with medication, possibly preventing the comforting presence of loved ones.

We are indebted to our health partners for helping us to appreciate the impact of past trauma, for example, how interventions for constipation may re-traumatize those with past sexual abuse. Also, for insights about the significance of remaining within ones' community and being allowed to utilize traditional remedies and participate in spiritual practices.

The guidelines are much richer because of the health partners' thoughtful input. For future revisions and updates, we recommend including patient and family representatives of other cultures as well as First Nations.

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES: A RESOURCE FOR B.C. - ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

**We are so thankful for the many partners who contributed to these guidelines, making it a true collaborative effort we can all be proud of.**

A special thank-you to the original authors of the Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care Program Symptom Management Guidelines http://www.fraserhealth.ca/media/HPC_SymptomGuidelines_Authors.pdf. The Fraser guidelines have been adapted and adopted in several B.C. health authorities and served as the foundation for this work.

The guideline for management of pain was adapted from the source document written by the following Fraser Health contributers:

- Barbara McLeod , Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care
- Dr. Mary-Jane O'Leary, Palliative Physician
- Dr. Charlie Chen, Palliative Physician
- Dr. Nicola Macpherson, Palliative Physician
- Bruce Kennedy, Clinical Pharmacist
- Della Roberts, Clinical Nurse Specialist

---

**Project Sponsor:** Dr. Doris Barwich, MD, CCFP (PC), Executive Director, BC Centre for Palliative Care

**Project Leads:** Kathleen Yue, RN, MN, CHPCN (C) and Carolyn Tayler, RN BN MSA CON (C)

**Project Manager:** Chris Yue, BSc, MDiv, PMP

**Steering Committee**: We are especially grateful to the health authorities who generously gave in-kind contributions as members of the Steering Committee

- **Interior Health:** Elisabeth Antifeau, RN, MSN, GNC (C), CHPCN (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist
- **First Nation Health Authority:** Gina Gaspard, RN, MN, GNC (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Healthy Living and Chronic Disease
- I**sland Health:** Della Roberts, RN MSN CHPCN(C), Clinical Nurse Specialist,

Palliative and End of Life Care Program

- **Fraser Health:** Shelley Briggs, RN, MN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program
- **Northern Health:** Stacey Joyce, RN, BSN, Lead, Palliative Consultant Team
- **Providence Health:** Dr. Gil Kimel, MD, MD, MSc, FRCPC, Physician Program Director, Palliative Care and Dr. Jonathan Pearce, MD, CCFP (PC)
- **Patient Voices Network:** Maggie Schulz, who donated her own time to participate in the Steering Committee

**Writing team**

- Bruce Kennedy, B.Sc. (Pharm.), M.B.A. Clinical Pharmacy Specialist, Palliative Care
- Judy Lett RN, BScN, MSc, GNC(C), CHPCN(C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Hospice Palliative Care
- Deanna Hutchings, RN, MN, CHPCN (C), Nurse Educator, Palliative Care

**References and source management**

- Dr. Amber Husband, MD
- Dr. Anna Cooper, MD, MRCGP
- Canice Ma, BSc, BSN (in progress) – conducted initial literature search

**Editing, design and layout**

- Editing, design and layout: Angela Cragg, Editor, Word Gypsy Editing
- Design and layout: Holy Cow Communication Design

**Patient Voices Network** (Patient and family representatives)

- Maggie Schulz: reviewed each symptom guideline in depth
- Jean Shepherd
- Kent Loftsgard
- Kira Tozer, MPH PMP, Engagement Leader, Southern Vancouver Island, Patient & Public Engagement, BC Patient Saftey and Quality Council
- Leah Smith, Engagement Leader, Southern Vancouver Island, Patient & Public Engagement, BC Patient Saftey and Quality Council

**Clinician review panel**

- Physicians
    - Dr. G. Michael Downing, MD
    - Dr. Jonathan Pearce, MD, CCFP (PC)
    - Dr. Gil Kimel, MD, MSc, FRCPC, Physician Program Director, Palliative Care
    - Dr. Alan Nixon Medical Director Palliative and EOL Care, MD, CCFP, DABHPM,FAAHPM
    - Dr. Marnie Jacobsen, MD CCFP – Palliative Care CAC
    - Dr. Gillian Fyles, MD, CCFP (PC)
    - Dr. Christian Wiens, MD, FRCPC
    - Dr. Amirish Joshi, MBBS; CCFP(PC); MSc. Palliative Medicine.

- First Nations Health Authority
    - Marilyn Dalton, LPN, Wellness Nurse Navigator
    - Carol Machell, RN, BSN Community Health Practice Consultant, Interior Nursing Team
    - Gina Gaspard, RN, MN, GNC (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Healthy Living and Chronic Disease
    - Cindy Preston, Pharmacist
    - Lorraine Harry, RN Regional Manager for Vancouver Island

- Fraser Health
    - Bella Wang, RN, MN, CHPCN (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program
    - Nicole Wikjord, RN, MSN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program
    - Patsy Lam, RN, MSN, CHPCN (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program
    - Sue North, BSc, BSc(Pharm), ACPR  Pharmacist
    - Barbara McLeod, RN, MSN, CHPCN (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program
    - Susan Brown, R.N., BScN., MScN., GNC (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Residential Care and Assisted Living, Gerontology

- Island Health
    - Angela Lorenz Robertson, RN, BScN, CHPCN (C), Palliative Care Coordinator
    - Holly Anderson RN BScN CHPCN(C), Palliative Care Coordinator
    - Necia Kaechele, RN, MN, CHPCN(C), Palliative Care Coordinator
    - Kelly Weber, RN, BScN, CHPCN (C) Palliative Care Coordinator
    - Amy E. Frey, MSW, HSW, RSW, Nanaimo Kidney Care and Transplant Social Worker
    - Heather Shivas, Pharmacist
    - Shelley Tysick, RN,BSN,BSW, Clinical Nurse Leader, Victoria Hospice
- Interior Health
    - Natalie Manhard, MscN, NP (F)
    - Debbie Montague, RRT, CRE, Respiratory Therapist
    - Susan Kast, BA, BSW, MSW, RSW, Social Worker,
    - Tennille Campbell, BScOT, Community Occupational Therapist,
    - Kathryn Proudfoot, MSc., Registered Dietitian
    - Ayesha Hassan, Clinical Pharmacist, BSc.(Pharm), ACPR, MSc. (Palliative Care)
    - Jacki Morgan, RN, Home Health Regional Knowledge Coordinator
    - Dianne Stockwell, RN BScN, CHPCN (C)
    - Vicki Kennedy, RN, BN, MN, CRE (CNS-C)
- Vancouver Coastal
    - Jane Webley, RN, LL.B., Regional Program Lead, end of life
    - Ingrid See, RN, BSN, Med, CHPCN (C), Clinicial Nurse Specialist
    - Annette Cavey, RN BSN CHPCN(C) Clinical Practice Leader Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care Services
- Providence
    - Pat Richardson, RN, BScN, CHPCN (C), Palliative Care Nurse Clinician
    - Dr. Caroline Baldwin, CCFP (PC), Palliative Care Physician
- Northern Health
    - Jennifer Ferguson RN, BScN, CHPCN(c), Palliative Care Nurse Consultant (NI)

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

**First Nations Health Authority Consultants**

- Marilyn Dalton, LPN, Wellness Nurse Navigator
- Carol Machell, RN, BSN, Community Health Practice Consultant, Interior Nursing Team
- Gina Gaspard, RN, MN, GNC (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Healthy Living and Chronic Disease

**Expert palliative physicians** (Reviewed key portions of Pain, Delirium, Dysphagia, Nausea and vomiting)

- Dr. G. Michael Downing, MD
- Dr. Neil Hilliard, MCFP (PC), Program Medical Director, Palliative Care Program, Fraser Health, Associate Clinical Professor, Department of Medicine, UBC.
- Dr. Douglas McGregor, MB ChB, Medical Director, Victoria Hospice
- Dr. G Fyles MD, CCFP (Palliative Care)

**General care clinicians** (Reviewed a sample guidline for usability)

- **Residential / long term care**
    - Lauren Wiegel
    - Dr. Jocelyn Chase, MD, FRCPC, Geriatrics and Internal Medicine, Clinical Instructor, University of British Columbia
    - Tammy Scott, RN, Clinical Nurse Leader, Long-term care
    - Michelle Porter RN, BScN, GNC(C), Residential Care
    - Jim Oldnall RN, BSN, GNC(C)
    - Colleen Bowers, RN, BSN, Cancer Care Coordinator, Northern Health
    - Megan Hiltz RN MHS GNC(C), Clinical Nurse Specialist – Dementia Care/ Clinical Nurse Leader, The Veterans Memorial Lodge at Broadmead
- **Home and community care**
    - Giselle Reyes RN, BSN, Home Care Nurse
- **Acute care**
    - Lauren Wiegel
    - Ricki Avitan
    - Sandra Shook RN, NRGH –Palliative Care Unit

- **Primary care / family practice**
    - Ashley Heaslip, MD CCFP MPH, Family Physician
    - Elizabeth Bastian, MD, General Practice in Oncology, Palliative care, Northern Health
    - Dr. Nick Petropolis

**Academic and professional practice partners**

- Dr. Rick Sawatzky, RN, PhD and his Masters of Science in Nursing class, Trinity Western University
- Helena Daudt, PhD, Director, Education & Research, Victoria Hospice
- Karen Levy, RN MSN, Clinical Practice Lead, Vancouver Home Hospice
- Susan Brown , R.N., BScN., MScN., GNC (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Residential Care
  and Assisted Living, Gerontology, Fraser Health Authority
- Coby Tschanz, RN, MN, PhD (c), CHPCN(C)
- Dr. Sukaina Kara, MD, CCFP (Palliative Care)
- Dr. Charlie Chen, M.D., CCFP-PC, Program Director: UBC Adult Palliative Medicine Residency Programs

**Specific patient populations**

- Camara van Breeman - RN, MN, CHPCN (C), NP (F)
- Sarah Leung, B.Sc.(Pharm.), ACPR, Clinical Pharmacist, Children's & Women's Health Centre of B.C.
- Charmaine Ngo, B.Sc.(Pharm.), ACPR, Clinical Pharmacist, Children's & Women's Health Centre of British Columbia
- Dr. Philippa Hawley, B.Med., FRCPC, Head of UBC Division of Palliative Care, and Director, Pain and Symptom Management/Palliative Care Provincial Program, B.C. Cancer Agency

**Advisors from the Guidelines and Protocols Advisory Committee, B.C. Ministry of Health**

- Shannon Gibson, Research Officer, B.C. Ministry of Health
- Jill Murray, Research Officer, B.C. Ministry of Health
- Dr. Douglas McTaggart, MD, Medical Consultant, Guidelines and Protocols Advisory Committee, B.C. Ministry of Health
- Dr. Sandra Lee, MD, Medical Consultant, Guidelines and Protocols Advisory Committee, B.C. Ministry of Health

# ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS FOR REFRACTORY SYMPTOMS / PALLIATIVE SEDATION

**Advisors**

- Dr. Charlie Chen, M.D., CCFP-PC, Program Director: UBC Adult Palliative Medicine
- Dr. Inbhan Redy, M.D., Palliative Care Physician, Northern Health
- Dr. Douglas McGregor, MB ChB, Medical Director, Victoria Hospice
- Della Roberts, RN MSN CHPCN(C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative and End of Life Care Program
- Elisabeth Antifeau, RN, MSN, GNC (C), CHPCN (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Interior Health
- Jane Webley, RN, LL.B., Regional Program Lead, End of Life, Vancouver Coastal Health
- Stacey Joyce, RN, BSN, Lead, Palliative Consultant Team
- Shelley Briggs, RN, MN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Program, Fraser Health

**Writing team**

- Kathleen Yue, RN, BSN, MN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Lead, Education, BC Centre for Palliative Care
- Dr. Julia Ridley, MD, CCFP(PC), Medical Lead, Education, BC Centre for Palliative Care
- Dr. Charlie Chen, M.D., CCFP-PC, Program Director: UBC Adult Palliative Medicine
- Jacqueline Schellenberg, BScPharm, PharmD, Clinical Pharmacist, Fraser Health

**Patient Voices**

- Esther Storvold
- E.R. Gubby
- Gillian Robinson (Treschow)
- Jamie Kelley
- Beverley Dunsmore

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

**First Nations Health Authority**

- Marilyn Dalton, LPN, Wellness System Navigator, Fraser Salish Region
- Lucy Barney
- Leona Abbinante
- Gina Gaspard, RN, MN, GNC (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Healthy Living and Chronic Disease

**Palliative expert reviewers**

- Dr. Charlie Chen – FH, Medical Director for Palliative Care, on Pall Ed
- Dr. Douglas McGregor - Medical Director, Victoria Hospice
- Dr. Inban Reddy - Northern Health consult team
- Dr. Rob Baker - Kamloops palliative physician
- Dr. Ruth Farren - Interior Health palliative physician
- Dr. Mike Banwell - Kelowna palliative physician
- Dr. Marianne Morgan - GP and Co-Director Palliative Care team in Kelowna.
- Adele Einarson, Palliative Care Coordinator, Island Health
- Vicki Kennedy - CNS In. He
- Elisabeth Antifeau, RN, MScN, CHPCN(C), GNC(C), Regional Clinical Nurse Specialist (CNS-C), IH Regional Palliative Care Program
- Amber Davis, CNS, Fraser Health
- Nicole Wikjord, RN, MSN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program, Fraser Health
- Della Roberts, RN MSN CHPCN(C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative and End of Life Care Program
- Karen Peterson, Interior Health

**“End-user” clinicians**

- Deanna Hutchings, RN, MN, CHPCN (C), Nurse Educator, Palliative Care
- Lindsay Reynolds, Island Health
- Queenie Tsang, Vancouver Coastal Health
- Dr. Sukaina Kara, MD, CCFP (Palliative Care)
- Charlene Neufeld BA, MA., Spiritual Health Lead, Professional Practice, Fraser Health
- Melanie Ross, RN, CHPCN(C), Hospice Palliative Care Clinician, SMH/Community Palliative Consult Team
- Kimberlee Araya

**Academic and professional practice partners**

- Dr. Philippa Hawley, B.Med., FRCPC, Head of UBC Division of Palliative Care, and Director, Pain and Symptom Management/Palliative Care Provincial Program, B.C. Cancer
- Dr. Sukaina Kara, MD, CCFP (Palliative Care)
- Bella Wang, RN, BSN, MN, CHPCN(C) , Clinical Nurse Specialist, Palliative Care Program, Fraser Health
- Dominique Duquette, RN, BScN, MN, CHPCN(c), University of Victoria

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS FOR NURTURING PSYCHOSOCIAL AND SPIRITUAL WELL-BEING SECTION

**Project Sponsor:** Dr. Doris Barwich, CCFP (PC), Executive Director, BC Centre for Palliative Care

**Project Leads:** Kathleen Yue, RN, BSN, MN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Lead, Education, BC Centre for Palliative Care and Carolyn Tayler, RN, BN, MSA, CON (C), Director of Strategic Initiatives, BC Centre for Palliative Care

**Project Manager:** Chris Yue, BSc, MDiv, PMP

**Advisors and writing team**

- Kathleen Yue, RN, BSN, MN, CHPCN (C), Clinical Lead, Education, BC Centre for Palliative Care
- Mary-Ann Statton, BSW, RSW, Social Worker Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care
- Michele Martin, MSW, RSW, Social Worker Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care
- Mary Coleman, MSW, RSW, Palliative Social Worker, Vancouver Coastal and Canuck Place Children's Hospice
- Tammy Dyson, MSW, RCSW, Leader, Medical Assistance in Dying (MAiD) Fraser Health
- Kathryn Calzavara, M.Div., Hons.B.A., Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care
- Lawrence T. Cheung, MCS, Spiritual Heath Practitioner, Hospice Palliative Care and Nephrology , Providence Health Care/ St. Paul's Hospital

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS


**Patient Voices**

- Esther Storvold
- E.R. Gubby
- Gillian Robinson (Treschow)
- Jamie Kelley
- Beverley Dunsmore

**First Nations Health Authority**

- Marilyn Dalton, LPN, Wellness System Navigator, Fraser Salish Region
- Lucy Barney
- Leona Abbinante
- Gina Gaspard, RN, MN, GNC (C) Clinical Nurse Specialist, Healthy Living and Chronic Disease

**Palliative expert reviewers**

- Elisabeth Antifeau, RN, MSN, GNC (C), CHPCN (C), Clinical Nurse Specialist, Interior Health
- Darren Colyn, Spiritual Health Leader, Island Health
- Vicki Kennedy, RN, BN, MN, CRE (CNS-C), Interior Health
- Annie Leong, RN, Nurse consultant, Northern Health
- Courtney Wright, MSW, RSW, Palliative Care Social Worker, Island Health
- Susan Kast, BA, BSW, MSW, RSW, Social Worker, Interior Health
- Wendy Wainwright - SW and Victoria Hospice Director
- Misha Budot - Counselor, VIctoria Hospice
- Viktor Gindel, Spiritual Health Practitioner, Interior Health
- Philip Murray, Chair, Professional Practice Commission, Canadian Association for Spiritual Care
- Fiona Abram, MSW RSW, Palliative Care Social Worker, , Island Health
- Maureen Ryan, RN, MN, Clinical Nurse Leader, BC Cancer

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

**"End-user" clinicians**

- Kelly Schutt, Trinity Western University
- Lindsay Reynolds, Island Health
- Charlene Neufeld BA, MA., Spiritual Health Lead, Professional Practice, Fraser Health
- Deanna Hutchings, RN, MN, CHPCN (C), Nurse Educator, Palliative Care
- Kimberlee Araya, RN BScN CHPCN(C), Palliative Care Coordinator, Island Health

**Academic and professional practice partners**

- Kelly Shutt, Trinity Western University
- Dominique Duquette, RN, BScN, MN, CHPCN(c), University of Victoria

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

# PAIN

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Pain** is an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage or described in terms of such damage.[1] This guideline does not address management of chronic pain. However, those with chronic pain may have acute pain as their disease advances which is addressed in this guideline.

**Nociceptive pain** arises from actual or threatened damage to non-neural tissue and is due to the activation of nociceptors.[1]

**Neuropathic pain** is caused by a lesion or disease of the somatosensory nervous system.[1] It may be associated with abnormal sensations. **Hyperalgesia** is an increased perception or experience of painful stimuli. **Allodynia** is the experience of pain induced by non-painful stimuli. **Dysesthesias** are uncomfortable sensations that are perceived as abnormal and described using terms such as “burning”, “shock-like” or “electrical”. All three are indicative of neuropathic pain mechanisms.[70]

**Mixed pain** has both nociceptive and neuropathic components.[2]

**Total Pain**, a term used often in palliative care, describes the multidimensional factors that contribute to the patient’s experience of pain and suffering.[3, 4]

**Background pain** is pain present for twelve or more hours per day during the previous week, or would be present if not taking analgesia.[66]

**Breakthrough pain (BT)** is a transient exacerbation of pain that occurs either spontaneously, or in relation to a specific predictable or unpredictable trigger, despite relatively stable and adequately controlled background pain.[66] Different subtypes of breakthrough pain:

**Incident pain** is precipitated by a movement or a voluntary action, and is predictable or expected.[67, 68]

**Spontaneous pain** is not related to an identifiable precipitant, and so is unpredictable in nature.[66]

**End-of-Dose Failure** describes an exacerbation of pain that occurs prior to the next dose of the background analgesic, and reflects declining levels of the background analgesic.[69]

## DEFINITION *CONTINUED*

**Breakthrough Dose (BTD)** is an additional dose used to control breakthrough pain. It does not replace or delay the next routine dose. BTD is also known as a rescue dose.[44]

**Titration:** Adjustments of analgesics to improve pain control and to minimize adverse effects

**Total Daily Dose (TDD)** is the 24 hour total of a drug that is taken for regular and breakthrough doses combined.[44]

## PREVALENCE

Pain at end of life is highly prevalent among all patient groups regardless of primary diagnosis.[5] Although pain can be well or completely controlled in up to 90% of patients using standard therapies in accordance with well-publicized guidelines, [6-13] pain still remains under-recognized and undertreated in many patient groups.[14]

## IMPACT

Unrelieved pain has a significant impact on the physical, emotional and functional wellbeing of patients and caregivers.[15-18] Access to appropriate assessment and treatment of pain should be considered an ethical imperative and human right.[19, 20]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional Resources for Management of Pain) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

### Step 2 | Assessment

- Perform a comprehensive pain assessment for each pain reported.

- For those unable to communicate verbally, assess for pain by non-verbal indicators, such as restlessness and rigidity, grimacing, and distressed vocalizations such as moaning and repeated calling out. [21]
- Use an observational pain rating scale to assess behavioral indicators of pain such as the Pain Assessment in Advanced Dementia Scale (PAINAD) Scale (see Additional resources for management of pain for link). [22]

## Pain Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V90

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? If unable to describe, ask is the pain sharp, dull, aching, burning, or do they experience pins and needles? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Where is it? Does it spread anywhere? Use a body map to illustrate location and number of pain areas (see Pain extra resources or assessment tools for body map link). |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? If the patient has difficulty using a numerical rating scale use an alternative such as the visual analogue scale (VAS) or verbal rating scale (VRS) (link in Pain extra resources or assessment tools). [1, 3, 23] |
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |

| | |
|---|---|
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? What are your beliefs about opioid/narcotic medications? (See Pain extra resources or assessment t ools for responses to common misconceptions.) |
| **V**alues | Are you having to make compromises such as decreasing activities or enduring side effects to deal with your pain? What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

## Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

Completion of a comprehensive pain assessment will determine the etiology and type of pain to enable appropriate treatment for each type/location of pain reported. Ongoing documentation of assessment findings, treatment plan and patient response is essential to find trends for effective team communication and optimal care. **Place in a readily visible and consistent location.**

## Diagnostics: consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

Pain etiologies, types and sites will determine investigation and imaging requirements.

First, determine if an emergency situation exists. **If so, refer the patient immediately to the acute hospital setting** for further investigations and treatment of the underlying cause while proceeding to treat the pain.

### Pain emergencies

Spinal cord compression, bone fracture or impending fracture of weight-bearing bone, infection/abscess, obstructed or perforated viscus, an ischemic process, or superior vena cava obstruction.[23]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## Step 3 | **Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care** (For more details, see Underlying causes and possible medications for pain in palliative care):

Assess each reported pain fully, based on pathophysiology, before discussing treatment options.[39]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?).

- Pain rarely occurs in isolation in patients with advanced disease. [4, 25]

- Conduct a multidimensional assessment for prompt recognition and treatment of pain to improve comfort and quality of life.[1, 26]
- Educate patients about their pain and involve them in decision-making about their pain management plan.[2, 27-29]
- Reassess pain at regular and frequent intervals: at expected peak action time of analgesic, following the start of new treatment, with each new report of pain, with any change in the presentation of pain, and when pain is not relieved by previously effective strategies.[30, 31]
- Seek consultation if pain is not improving with titration, adequately relieved within 72 hours, or for pain that is not managed after applying standard analgesic guidelines and interventions.
- Assess and treat other symptoms to maximize patient comfort.
- The 3 practices of assessment, documentation and decision making need to be routinely linked for a consistent approach to pain management.[89]
- Clinicians are encouraged to consider the use of traditional, Western and non-pharmacologic strategies to optimize pain management.[32]
- The concept of total pain reminds us that a unilateral pharmacological approach will not be adequate to address the multiple factors that influence pain and suffering. An inter-professional approach to pain management is recommended whenever possible.[33]

Step 4 | **Interventions**

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬠ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological interventions

**Non-pharmacological pain strategies that may be available in the home or residential care facilities include but are not limited to:**

⬠ **Physical**: such as physio, exercise, massage, positioning, application heat/cold. Note: use with caution with frail elderly.

- **Psychological**: such as relaxation, meditation, cognitive therapy.[32]
- **Relevant spiritual and cultural practices**.

For additional information on non-pharmacological interventions, see National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (link in Additional resources for management of pain).

### Interventions requiring additional equipment or transfer to acute care

Transcutaneous Electrical Nerve Stimulation (TENS), acupuncture, acupressure.

Specialized Medical therapies include (All require consultation with palliative specialist for appropriate referrals):

- Palliative radiation
- Palliative surgery
- Neurotaxial analgesia
- Cementoplasty

## Pharmacological interventions

### 1) Considerations before choosing an analgesic

- Match pain causes to drug treatment choice considerations (see Medications for management of pain based on type of pain for possible causes).
- Use patient specific goals and preferences to aid drug selection.
- Review health performance status, medical conditions, organ impairments, allergies. Determine if they may limit drug options. Consider drug limiting factors including interactions, concerns about medication use, adherence, risk of misuse or abuse.
- Discuss and resolve concerns about tolerance, fears, addiction and side effects.[39] (See Response to Common Misconceptions About Opioid Analgesics)
- Ensure patient access to prescribed medications, considering cost

and ability to access medications in their care setting. Activate drug benefit coverage for BC PharmaCare Palliative Care Benefits program appropriately.

- Assess and actively treat other symptoms that can potentially make pain perception worse, such as nausea or constipation. Refer to other management guidelines for more information.

## 2) Assess substance/opioid misuse risk

- All patients being considered for opioid therapy should be evaluated for substance use disorder.[40] Prescribers should be familiar with the BC College of Physicians Professional Standards and Guidelines: Safe Prescribing of Drugs with Potential for Misuse/Diversion (link in Additional resources for management of pain)[41] However, **the College recognizes that these standards may not apply to treatment of palliative, nursing home and end-of-life patients.[41]** If opioid misuse or abuse expected, complete a risk assessment prior to treatment.[30] The Opioid Risk Tool is one of several useful tools (Pain extra resources or assessment tools for link).[42] Patient self-reports of substance misuse are variable and consideration of urine drug testing has been recommended.[40]

**Treatment with an opioid analgesic is not contraindicated in a patient with a history of substance use disorder but requires a comprehensive treatment plan.**[40]

## 3) Initiation of analgesics (see Medications for management of pain based on type of pain for detailed pharmacological information and Additional resources for management of pain for additional resources such as use of fentanyl patch and equianalgesic tables)

- Integrate non-pharmacological treatments and adjuvant analgesics concurrent with analgesics for all levels of pain: mild, moderate or severe.

- Treatment choices are guided by pain intensity on a scale with 0-10 with 0 being none and 10 being the worst possible; **however, when pain is expected to worsen, choosing from options for more intense pain may avoid a future medication switch.[44]**

### Mild pain (patient rating of 1 to 4/10)

- Acetaminophen or non-steroidal anti-inflammatories (NSAIDs).

⚠C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C ⚠C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C

with less frequent dosing (e.g., q6h instead of q4h).

- ***BY MOUTH*** - While the oral route is most common as the safest and least invasive administration method, other routes (IV, subcutaneous, rectal, transdermal, transmucosal) can be used as indicated to maximize patient comfort.[55, 57]
- ***BY THE CLOCK*** - Regular/fixed administration schedule, such as every 4 or 6 hours, rather than only "on demand",[24] including waking from sleep for a scheduled dose. Once pain control achieved, switch to long acting agents to improve compliance and sleep.[55]
- ***PLAN FOR ADVERSE EFFECTS*** – Anticipate, monitor and manage analgesic adverse effects, including starting laxatives proactively.
- ***PLAN FOR BREAKTHROUGH PAIN*** - When starting an opioid, use immediate release with breakthrough doses (BTD) until dose is stabilized to enable timely and effective titration.[44, 46, 55]

### Breakthrough dosing

- Breakthrough doses are generally 10% of the total regular daily opioid dose.[56]
- Use immediate release opioids every hour orally or every 30 minutes subcutaneously PRN
- Use of the same opioid for breakthrough pain doses and the regularly scheduled opioid improves the ease and clarity for determining future dose titrations.
- Reassess when 3 or more breakthrough doses used per 24 hours (See titration section below).

### 4) Titration: Adjustments to improve pain control and to minimize adverse effects

- Use practice tools to monitor pain rating, adverse effects, and track patient goal attainment. A suitable numerical or descriptive pain rating scale should be used consistently.
- Follow sedation levels using a tool such as the Pasero Opioid-Induced Sedation Scale[78] (see Pain Extra resources or assessment tools), especially during titration of opioid doses.
- Individualize dosing readjustments balancing effectiveness and tolerability.
- Following selection of a starting opioid dose, adjustment is almost always required.[46]
- Titrate with caution in patients with risk factors such as decreased renal/hepatic function, chronic lung disease, upper airway compromise, sleep apnea, or poor performance status.[30]
- Adjustment may require a dose adjustment of both the regular dose as well as the BTD.
- Dose adjustments should not be made more frequently than every 24 hours.[44] However, severe or crisis pain may require more aggressive titration.[44]
- The rapidity of the dose escalation should be related to the pain severity, expected onset and duration of analgesics, and ability to monitor during dose titration.[30]

#### Titration

1. Calculate total daily dose (TDD) for the past 24 hours
   **TDD = Regular + all BTD**[44, 58]
2. Regular dose q4h for the next 24 hours = past **TDD ÷ 6**
3. Breakthrough dose (BTD) = **new regular dose × 10%**[4]
   **Increase the opioid BTD proportionately whenever the regular dose is increased.**[44]

- Individualized dosing readjustments can use fixed dose increases, e.g., a 30-50% opioid dose increase, or base increased regular analgesic dose on quantity of BTD.
- Adverse effects from opioids can be managed by dose reduction, changing to a different opioid or route of administration, or symptomatic management, e.g., anti-emetic use.[59]
- Impaired swallowing capacity can require a conversion of oral opioids to subcutaneous or intravenous routes; reduce parenteral doses by half for chronic pain, reflecting potency differences.[44]
- Monitor for excessive opioid doses; effects often are sedation or confusion.
- Addressing opioid-induced neurotoxicity will require strategies including lowering doses, a switch (rotation) to a different opioid, hydration and consultation. Refer to the Twitching/Myoclonus/Seizures guideline for myoclonus management.

**See additional resources in** Additional resources for management of pain **for pain and opioid management guidelines.**

### Titration

1. Calculate total daily dose (TDD) for the past 24 hours
   **TDD = Regular + all BTD**[44, 58]
2. Regular dose q4h for the next 24 hours = past **TDD ÷ 6**
3. Breakthrough dose (BTD) = **new regular dose × 10%**[4]
   **Increase the opioid BTD proportionately whenever the regular dose is increased.**[44]

## 4) Adjuvant Analgesics to improve pain control

- Optimize the opioid regimen before introducing an adjuvant analgesic in cancer pain.[62]
- Adjuvant analgesics are medications that have a primary indication other than pain, but have analgesic effects in some types of painful conditions.[60] They include: anticonvulsants, antidepressants, cortico- steroids, muscle relaxants, topical NSAIDS/opioids, bone modifying drugs. See Medications for

management of pain based on type of pain for detailed medication list.

- Use appropriate adjuvant analgesics at any pain severity level.[61]
- Select based on predominating pain type, symptoms, comorbidities, supporting clinical evidence, potential adverse effects, drug interactions, ease of administration and cost.
- The adjuvant analgesic with the greatest benefit and least risk should be administered as first-line treatment.[62] Often this is an anticonvulsant such as gabapentin, or an antidepressant such as nortriptyline for treatment of cancer-related neuropathic pain.[63]
- Doses should be increased until the analgesic effect is achieved, adverse effects become unmanageable, or the conventional maximum dose is reached.[30] Reassess regularly and taper or discontinue ineffective medications.[30, 56]
- Consider combination therapy with two or more drugs in the event of partial response to single drug therapy.[64] However, avoid initiating and titrating several adjuvants concurrently.[62] Opioid rotation within an adjuvant combination is suggested as a further progressive pain strategy.[65]

### 5) Utilize Consultation Services – when to consider calling for help!

- For **unrelieved pain**. Pain should improve on titration within 72 hours.
- For **rapidly escalating pain**, not responding to opioid titration, to point of concern or suffering.
- **Specific situations** such as: unmanageable adverse effects, toxicity, special patient populations
(e.g., moderate to severe renal or liver impairment), safety concerns, substance abuse.
- **Use of methadone, ketamine, lidocaine or interventional treatment strategies**. **See** Additional resources for management of pain **for additional resources for prescription of methadone for analgesia**; these medications can be prescribed by family physicians**.**
- Need of **qualified specialists** such as pain specialists, oncologists, orthopedics, anaesthesiologists.

## Patient and family education

- Instruct patients/families to contact clinician if pain or side effects

worsen.

- Encourage patients to report their pain.[3, 27, 34-36] Inform patients they have the right to receive adequate pain management. Reassure them their report of pain will be believed and acted upon.[37]
- If patient and family disagree about the use of pain medication, explore their understanding and come to agreement, especially if family members are administering analgesics.
- Accurate and reliable information should be given regarding opioid treatment; detect and correct false beliefs or misunderstandings that may affect adherence to the treatment, its effectiveness, and patient safety.[38] (see Response to Common Misconceptions about Opioid Analgesics for detailed responses to common misconceptions.)
- Give an explanation for the cause of each pain and reassurance that pain can usually be very well controlled.[23]
- Identify the three simple stepwise goals for pain management:[33]
    - A good night's sleep.
    - Pain control during the day while at rest.
    - Pain control when active and ambulatory.
- Describe the 3 common side effects for opioid naïve patients: cognitive (confusion or sedation), nausea and constipation. Explain that cognitive and nausea side effects commonly improve and disappear in 3 to 7 days. Elicit level of patient and family willingness to tolerate short term side effects during the titration phase. Constipation will need ongoing management.
- Teach patients and families how to use an appropriate pain assessment tool, and encourage patients to keep a pain diary (see Pain Extra resources or assessment tools for link) and record scheduled and breakthrough analgesia usage.
- Explain how to use pain medication effectively.[28]
    - What the medications are and why they have been prescribed.
    - How and when they should be taken.
    - Potential adverse effects and how they can be managed if they occur.
    - Medication safety processes.
    - How prescriptions are filled.

- Safe handling, storage, and pharmacy take-back disposal of analgesics, particularly opioids.[30]

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF PAIN

## Resources specific to pain

- BC College of Physicians Professional Standards and Guidelines: Safe prescribing of drugs with potential for misuse/diversion

➞ https://www.cpsbc.ca./files/pdf/PSG-Safe-Prescribing.pdf

- BC Guidelines Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease - Part 2: Pain and Symptom Management.

➞ Appendix A: Equianalgesic Conversion for Morphine and Fentanyl transdermal patch https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_-_pain_equianalgesic.pdf

➞ Appendix B: Medications used in palliative care for pain management https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_pain_medtable.pdf

- College of Physicians and Surgeons of British Columbia Controlled Drug Resources

➞ https://www.cpsbc.ca/programs/drug-programs/prp/prp-guidelines

- College of Physicians and surgeons of British Columbia: Methadone for analgesia - currently under review as of December 2018

➞ https://www.cpsbc.ca/files/pdf/PSG-Prescribing-Methadone.pdf

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/health/integrative-health#types

- Fraser Health: Opioid Principles Jan 2016

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care (includes use of the World Health Organization (WHO) analgesic ladder, guidance for Fentanyl patches, titration and equi-analgesic tables)

- Pain Assessment in Advanced Dementia (PAINAD)

➞ http://bcbpsd.ca/docs/part-1/Final%20Provincial%20PAINAD%20Scale.pdf

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support,

call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.

- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/

palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

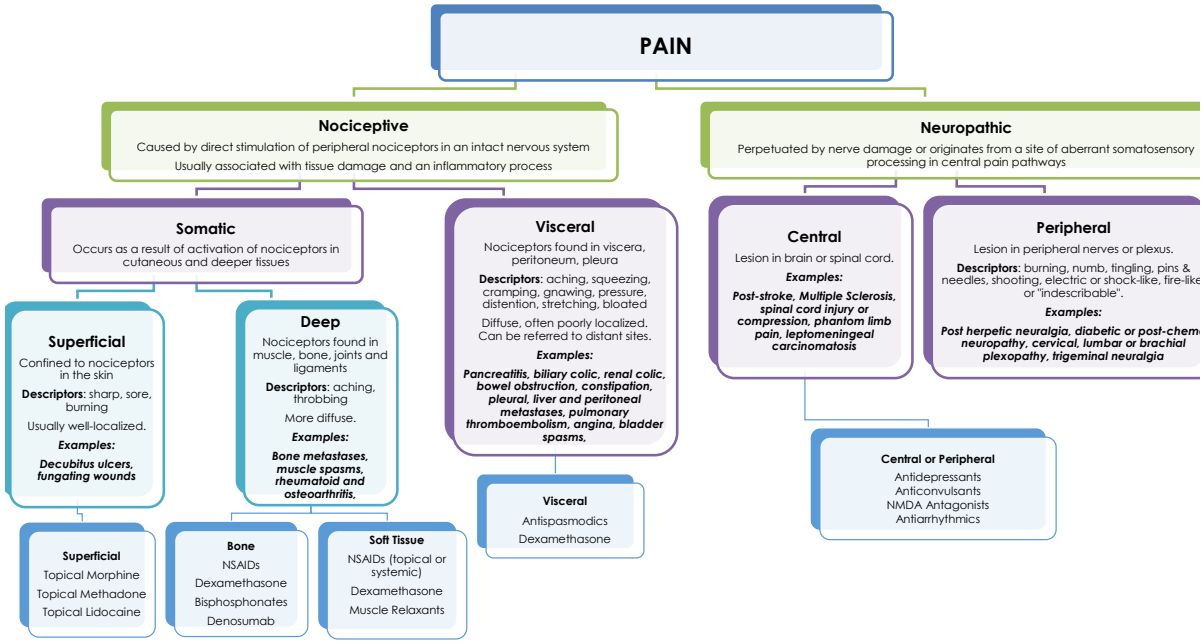
➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

# UNDERLYING CAUSES AND POSSIBLE MEDICATIONS FOR PAIN IN PALLIATIVE CARE[72]

Algorithm created by Dr Nicola Macpherson, MD FRCPC (Anesthesiology), DABHPM. Hospice Palliative Care Physician, Fraser Health, British Columbia, Canada. Adapted with permission



BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF PAIN BASED ON TYPE OF PAIN *CONTINUED*

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF PAIN BASED ON TYPE OF PAIN

| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range[73] | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns[73-75] |
|---|---|---|
| **1. Pain** | | |
| **Acetaminophen** | 500 to 1g PO, PR q6h to q4h | Caution in renal impairment and severe hepatic impairment, particularly when associated with alcohol dependence and malnutrition. Maximum 4 g per day or 3 g in the elderly.[76, 77] |
| | 650 to 1300 mg SR PO q8h | |
| **NSAIDs** | | **Avoid in frail elderly, cardiac, renal and hepatic dysfunction, or active peptic ulcers.** |
| Diclofenac | 50 mg PO, PR q12h or q8h | Maximum dose 100 mg per day. Contraindicated in those with cardiovascular impairment. [91] |
| | 75 SR PO q12h or 100 mg daily | |
| | 50 to100 mg PR q8h | |
| Ibuprofen | 400 to 800 mg PO q8h | Maximum 2400 mg per day |
| **COX-2 Inhibitors** | | **Contraindicated if established ischaemic heart disease, peripheral arterial disease or cerebrovascular disease.** |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF PAIN BASED ON TYPE OF PAIN *CONTINUED*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Celecoxib | 200 to 400 mg PO daily or q12h | Maximum 400 mg per day |
| Meloxicam | 7.5 to 15 mg PO daily | Maximum 15 mg per day |
| **Corticosteroids** | | Start at a high dose then reduce to a maintenance level. Stop if no response within 7 to 10 days. Taper steroid dose gradually if used for more than 3 weeks or if stopping doses greater than 4 mg per day.<br>Hyperglycemia, anxiety, steroid psychosis, myopathy.<br>**Long-term adverse effects are significant; therefore, avoid prolonged use.**<br>**Avoid concomitant use with NSAIDs.** |
| Dexamethasone | High Dose: 8 mg PO, SC once daily or twice daily | |
| | Low Dose: 2 to 6 mg PO, SC daily | |
| **2. Superficial Somatic Pain** | | |
| **Topical NSAIDs** | | **Do not apply on an open wound, or on areas of infection or rash.**<br>Apply to affected area up to 4 times per day. |
| Diclofenac Sodium | Apply 1.5% cream topically | |
| Diclofenac Gel | Apply 1.16 to 5% cream topically | |
| Ketoprofen | Apply 5 to 20% cream topically | |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF PAIN BASED ON TYPE OF PAIN *CONTINUED*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Topical Opioids | Apply topical morphine 0.1% (1 mg per mL) in hydrogel once to twice daily | The amount of gel applied varies according to the size and the site of the inflammation or ulcer. The topical morphine is kept in place with gauze or a non-absorbable dressing. |
| **3. Deep Somatic Bone Pain** | | |
| **Bisphosphonates - bone modifying agent** | | Adverse effects include: osteonecrosis of the jaw, renal impairment, or hypocalcemia. Transient mild flu-like symptoms for 1 to 2 days may occur after administration. Monitor renal function and calcium with each treatment. Dental review is necessary before initiation.<br>**Use with extreme caution in renal impairment, dose adjustment required.** |
| Clodronate | 900 mg IV every 4 weeks | |
| | 1600 to 2400 mg PO daily | |
| Pamidronate | 60 to 90 mg IV every 3 to 4 weeks | |
| Zolendronic Acid | 4 mg IV every 4 weeks | |
| **Monoclonal Antibody - bone modifying agent** | | Monitor calcium levels prior to administration. Dental review is necessary before initiation. No dose adjustment required for renal impairment. |
| Denosumab | 120 mg SC every 4 weeks | |
| **4. Deep Somatic Soft Tissue Pain** | | |
| **Skeletal Muscle Relaxant** | | |
| Diazepam | 2 to 10 mg PO at night | Useful for painful muscle spasm. Adverse effects include drowsiness and ataxia. **Caution in elderly patients.** |
| Baclofen | 5 mg PO q12h or q8h | Start at 5 mg daily and increase to 15 mg daily in divided doses. Maximum recommended dose 100 mg daily. Monitor liver function tests periodically. Abrupt cessation associated with seizures. Adverse effects include drowsiness. |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF PAIN BASED ON TYPE OF PAIN *CONTINUED*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Tizanidine | 2 to 8 mg PO q8h or q6h | Start at 2 mg daily and increase by 2 mg every 3 to 4 days according to response. Maximum recommended total daily dose 36 mg. |
| **5. Visceral Pain** | | |
| **Anticholinergics** | | |
| Hyoscine butylbromide | 20 mg SC q6h | Monitor for peripheral antimuscarinic effects which may include: blurred vision, dry mouth, constipation and urinary retention. Does not cross the blood brain barrier; therefore, does not cause sedation. Maximum recommended total daily dose 300 mg. |
| | 60 to 120 mg CSCI daily | |
| **6. Neuropathic Pain** | | |
| **Antidepressants** | | **First line for neuropathic pain** |
| TCAs | | Starting dose 10 to 25 mg at bedtime. Titrate slowly every 3 to 7 days by 10 to 25 mg as tolerated. Target therapeutic dose range 75 to 150 mg daily. Monitor for anticholinergic effects: drowsiness, constipation, dry mouth, urinary retention.<br>**Avoid if poor cardiac function, severe prostatic hypertrophy, or glaucoma.**<br>Positive effects on mood and sleep may be desirable. |
| Amitriptyline | 75 to 150 mg PO at bedtime | |
| Nortriptyline | 75 to 150 mg PO at bedtime | |
| *SNRIs* | | Safer and better tolerated than TCAs, but limited evidence of analgesic efficacy.<br>Initiate venlafaxine at 37.5 mg daily for one week. |
| Duloxetine | 60 to 120 mg PO daily | |
| Venlafaxine | 75 to 225 mg PO daily | |
| **Anticonvulsants** | | **First line for neuropathic pain** |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Gabapentin | 300 to 800 mg PO every q8h to q6h | Starting dose 100 to 300 mg at bedtime. Titrate slowly every 1 to 7 days by 100 to 300 mg as tolerated. Target therapeutic dose ranges from 900 to 3600 mg daily in 3 to 4 divided doses.<br>An adequate trial should include 1 to 2 weeks at the maximum-tolerated dose. Monitor for somnolence, dizziness, and ataxia. Slower titration for the elderly or medically frail.<br>**Dose adjustment required for those with renal insufficiency.** |
| Pregabalin | 150 to 300 mg PO q12h | Starting dose 75 mg twice daily. Titrate slowly every 3 to 7 days. Target therapeutic dose ranges from 50 to 150 mg daily in divided doses. Monitor for somnolence, dizziness, and ataxia. Slower titration for the elderly or medically frail.<br>**Dose adjustment required for those with renal impairment.** |
| ***Analgesic Adjuvants for Consideration AFTER Specialist Consultation*** | | |
| **NMDA Blockers** | | **Second line for neuropathic pain** |
| Ketamine | 10 to 50 mg PO q8h to q6h | Starting dose 10 to 25 mg q8h. Titrate in steps of 10 to 25 mg up to a maximum dose of 200 mg q6h. |
| | 100 to 500 mg CSCI daily | Start with 100 mg over 24 hours. Increase after 24 hours to 300 mg over 24 hours and further increase to 500 mg over 24 hours if ineffective. Stop 3 days after last dose increment.<br>**Monitor for psychomimetic effects.**<br>Treat dysphoria with haloperidol, diazepam or midazolam. |
| **Local Anesthetic** | | **Second line for neuropathic pain** |
| Lidocaine | 5 to 12.5 mg per kg over 120 minutes IV or SC every 2 weeks **OR** by continuous infusion | Use with caution in patients with cardiac failure.<br>**Dose adjustment required in hepatic or renal impairment.** |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## PAIN MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document; however, Underlying Causes of pain in Palliative Care – Underlying Causes of Pain in Palliative Care contains possible treatments based on cause.

## PAIN EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

Body map

- ➡ http://palliative.org/NewPC/_pdfs/tools/ESAS-r.pdf

Visual analogue scale (VAS)

- ➡ http://img.medscape.com/article/742/580/VAS.pdf

British Columbia Centre on Substance Use and B.C. Ministry of Health. A Guideline for the Clinical Management of Opioid Use Disorder. Published June 5, 2017

- ➡ http://www.bccsu.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/06/BC-OUD-Guidelines_June2017.pdf

Patient symptom diary

- ➡ http://www.virtualhospice.ca/Assets/cvh%20symptom%20diary_20090429144800.pdf

Equianalgesic dose conversion for oral (PO) opioids [92,93] (to be used as a general guide, while considering individual patient characteristics[33,94])

| Morphine = | Codeine = | Oxycodone = | Hydromorphone |
|---|---|---|---|
| 30 mg | 200 mg | 20 mg | 4[92]-6[93]mg |

Fentanyl patch conversion: Refer to BC Guidelines conversion table

➡ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2.pdf

Oral (PO) to parental (IV/SC) ratio ranges from 2 – 3:1 [33,92]

## Response to Common Misconceptions About Opioid Analgesics[24, 72]

| Patient/Family Fears and Misconceptions | Possible Healthcare Professional Responses |
|---|---|
| **Fear of Addiction** | Opioid addiction in patients with cancer related-pain patients is extremely rare.[79, 80]<br><br>If opioids are abruptly discontinued, a physical withdrawal reaction may occur. This is a normal physiological reaction, not a sign of addiction. This can be prevented by gradually tapering off the medication. |
| **Fear of Side Effects** | Drowsiness, nausea and constipation commonly occur with the use of opioids. These side effects will be addressed while the pain is being managed.<br><br>Drowsiness and/or nausea may develop when opioids are started or when the opioid dose is increased, but usually resolves within 3 to 5 days.<br><br>Constipation will always occur and needs to be anticipated, pro-actively managed, and assessed on an ongoing basis. |
| **Fear it Won't Be Effective When The Pain Becomes Worse** | This concern is without any scientific or medical basis. Opioids can be used with good effect for as long as they are needed, and the dose can be adjusted to whatever level is needed for pain relief. The best way to manage pain is to control it early. |
| **Fear of Tolerance** | For many patients, their opioid dose remains stable over long periods of time.[81-84] |
| **Fear People Will Think You Are 'Giving Up'** | Patients with pain that is well controlled are more likely to be able to manage other aspects of their illness and enjoy a better quality of life.<br><br>Pain is also easier to control if it is treated promptly, so it is important that pain is treated as soon as possible. |
| **Opioids Hasten Death** | Studies show that good pain management using opioids has actually improved not only quality but also length of life.[84-88] |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Fear About Personal Limitations.** | For non-commercial driving in Canada, taking opioids does not mean that you can no longer drive. The decision about whether it is safe to drive is left to the individual. If the dose of opioid has been stable and drowsiness is not a problem, then driving is allowed; if there is drowsiness from the medications, if your dose is being titrated upward due to increased pain, then it is not safe to drive. |

## Pasero Opioid-Induced Sedation Scale (POSS)[78]

| | |
|---|---|
| **S** | sleep, easy to arouse |
| **1** | awake and alert |
| **2** | slightly drowsy, easily aroused |
| **3** | frequently drowsy, arousable, drifts off to sleep during conversation |
| **4** | somnolent, minimal or no response to physical stimulation |

## PAIN REFERENCES


1. Caraceni A, Cherny N, Fainsinger R, Kaasa S, Poulain P, Radbruch L, et al. Pain measurement tools and methods in clinical research in palliative care: recommendations of an Expert Working Group of the European Association of Palliative Care. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2002;23(3):239-55.

2. Pasero C, McCaffery M. Pain assessment and pharmacologic management. Canada: Elsevier; 2011.

3. Ripamonti CI, Bandieri E, Roila F. Management of cancer pain: ESMO clinical practice guidelines. Annals of Oncology. 2011;22(SUPPL. 6):69-77.

4. Grond S, Zech D, Diefenbach C, Bischoff A. Prevalence and pattern of symptoms in patients with cancer pain: a prospective evaluation of 1635 cancer patients referred to a pain clinic. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1994;9(6):372-82.

5. Romem A, Tom SE, Beauchene M, Babington L, Scharf SM, Romem A. Pain management at the end of life: A comparative study of cancer, dementia, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients. Palliat Med. 2015;29(5):464-9.

6. Ventafridda V, Tamburini M, Caraceni A, De Conno F, Naldi F. A validation study of the WHO method for cancer pain relief. Cancer. 1987;59(4):850-6.

7. Walker VA, Hoskin PJ, Hanks GW, White ID. Evaluation of WHO analgesic guidelines for cancer pain in a hospital-based palliative care unit. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1988;3(3):145-9.

8. Goisis A, Gorini M, Ratti R, Luliri P. Application of a WHO protocol on medical therapy for oncologic pain in an internal medicine hospital. Tumori. 1989;75(5):470-2.

9. Schug SA, Zech D, Dorr U. Cancer pain management according to WHO analgesic guidelines. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1990;5(1):27-32.

10. Zech DF, Grond S, Lynch J, Hertel D, Lehmann KA. Validation of World Health Organization Guidelines for cancer pain relief: a 10-year prospective study. Pain. 1995;63(1):65-76.

11. Grond S, Radbruch L, Meuser T, Sabatowski R, Loick G, Lehmann KA. Assessment and treatment of neuropathic cancer pain following WHO guidelines. Pain. 1999;79(1):15-20.

12. Meuser T, Pietruck C, Radbruch L, Stute P, Lehmann KA, Grond S. Symptoms during cancer pain treatment following WHO-guidelines: a longitudinal follow-up study of

symptom prevalence, severity and etiology. Pain. 2001;93(3):247-57.

13. Caraceni A, Martini C, Zecca E, Portenoy RK, Ashby M, A., Hawson G, et al. Breakthrough pain characteristics and syndromes in patients with cancer pain. An international survey. Palliat Med. 2004;18(3):177-83.

14. World Health Organisation. Cancer pain relief and palliative care. 2nd ed. Geneva: World Health Organisation; 1996.

15. Te Boveldt N, Vernooij-Dassen M, Burger N, Ijsseldijk M, Vissers K, Engels Y. Pain and its interference with daily activities in medical oncology outpatients. Pain Physician. 2013;16(4):379-89.

16. Serlin RC, Mendoza TR, Nakamura Y, Edwards KR, Cleeland CS. When is cancer pain mild, moderate or severe? Grading pain severity by its interference with function. Pain. 1995;61(2):277-84.

17. Lynn J, Ely EW, Zhong Z, McNiff KL, Dawson NV, Connors A, et al. Living and dying with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2000;48(5 Suppl):S91-100.

18. Melzack R. The tragedy of needless pain. Scientific American. 1990;262(2):27-33.

19. United Nations: The International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights. 1966 [Available from: http://www.ohchr.org/EN/ProfessionalInterest/Pages/CESCR.aspx.

20. International Association for the study of Pain. Pain Clinical Updates. Pain relief as a human right. 2004 [Available from: http://www.iasp-pain.org/.

21. Horgas A, Miller L. Pain assessment in people with dementia. The American journal of nursing. 2008;108(7):62-70; quiz 1.

22. Warden V, Hurley AC, Volicer L. Development and psychometric evaluation of the Pain Assessment in Advanced Dementia (PAINAD) scale. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2003;4(1):9-15.

23. National Comprehensive Cancer Network. NCCN Practice Guidelines for Adult Cancer Pain. Version 2: NCCN; 2014 [Available from: http://williams.medicine.wisc.edu/pain.pdf.

24. [Available from: http://www.virtualhospice.ca/Assets/cvh%20symptom%20diary_20090429144800.pdfHome/Topics/Topics/Symptoms+_+Health+Concerns/Pain.aspx.

25. Potter J, Hami F, Bryan T, Quigley C. Symptoms in 400 patients referred to palliative care services: prevalence and patterns. Palliat Med. 2003;17(4):310-4.

26. Cleeland CS, Gonin R, Hatfield AK, Edmonson JH, Blum RH, Stewart JA, et al. Pain and its treatment in outpatients with metastatic cancer. The New England journal of medicine. 1994;330(9):592-6.

27. de Wit R, van Dam F, Zandbelt L, van Buuren A, van der Heijden K, Leenhouts G, et al. A pain education program for chronic cancer pain patients: follow-up results from a randomized controlled trial. Pain. 1997;73(1):55-69.

28. Paice J. Pain at the end of life. In: Ferell B, Coyle N, editors. Oxford textbook of palliative nursing2010. p. 161-85.

29. Donovan MI, Evers K, Jacobs P, Mandleblatt S. When there is no benchmark: designing a primary care-based chronic pain management program from the scientific basis up. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1999;18(1):38-48.

30. Adult Cancer Pain: National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2017 [Available from: www.NCCN.org.

31. Canadian Council on Health Services Accreditation. Hospice Palliative and End-of-Life Care Standards. 2nd ed: Canadian Council on Health Services Accreditation Program; 2006. p. 15-6.

32. RNAO Clinical Practice Guidelines: Pain: Assessment and Management. 2013 [3rd [Available from: http://rnao.ca/bpg/guidelines/assessment-and-management-pain.

33. Black F, Downing G. Pain- Principles and Titration. In: Downing G, Wainwright W, editors. Medical Care of the Dying. 4th ed. Victoria, BC, Canada: Victoria Hospice Society, Learning Centre for Palliative Care.; 2006.

34. Gordon DB, Dahl JL, Miaskowski C, McCarberg B, Todd KH, Paice JA, et al. American pain society recommendations for improving the quality of acute and cancer pain management: American Pain Society Quality of Care Task Force. Arch Intern Med. 2005;165(14):1574-80.

35. Christo PJ, Mazloomdoost D. Cancer pain and analgesia. Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences. 2008;1138:278-98.

36. Fine P. Principles of effective pain management at the End of Life. 2006 [Available from: http://www.medscape.com/viewprogram/6079.

37. Ward SE, Goldberg N, Miller-McCauley V, Mueller C, Nolan A, Pawlik-Plank D, et al. Patient-related barriers to management of cancer pain. Pain. 1993;52(3):319-24.

38. Garcia-Toyos N, Escudero-Carretero MJ, Sanz-Amores R, Guerra-De Hoyos JA, Melchor-Rodriguez JM, Tamayo-Velazquez MI. Preferences of caregivers and patients regarding opioid analgesic use in terminal care. Pain Med. 2014;15(4):577-87.

39. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines: Pain Management: NHS Scotland; 2017 [Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/pain/pain-management.aspx

40. Methadone for Analgesia Guidelines: College of Physicians and Surgeons of British Columbia; 2016 [Available from: https://www.cpsbc.ca/programs/drug-programs/mmp/methadone-analgesia.

41. Safe Prescribing of Drugs with Potential for Misuse/Diversion: College of Physicians and Surgeons of British Columbia; 2016 [Available from: www.cpsbc.ca.

42. DeGroote M. Canadian Guideline for Safe and Effective Use of Opioids for Chronic Non- Cancer Pain. Appendix B-2: Opioid Risk Tool. [Available from: http://nationalpaincentre.mcmaster.ca/opioid/cgop_b_app_b02.html.

43. Teater D. Evidence for the efficacy of pain medications.: National Safety Council; [Available from: www.nsc.org.

44. Principles of Opioid Management: Fraser Health; 2016 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

45. Pharmacological Management of Cancer Pain in Adults: An Roinn Slainte. Department of Health; 2015 [Available from: http://health.gov.ie/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/Pharma-Mgmt-Cancer-Pain.pdf.

46. Portenoy R, Mehta Z, Ahmed E. Cancer pain management with opioids: optimizing analgesia: UpToDate; 2017 [Available from: www.uptodate.com.

47. Straube C, Derry S, Jackson KC, Wiffen PJ, Bell RF, Strassels S, et al. Codeine, alone and with paracetamol (acetaminophen), for cancer pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2016;6.

48. Wiffen PJ, Derry S, Moore AR. Impact of morphine, fentanyl, oxycodone or codeine on patient consciousness, appetite and thirst when used to treat cancer pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2015;1.

49. Kennedy B. PANBC conference: “climbing the Mountains of Safe Patient Care” : T3’s not for me: PeriAnesthesia Nursing Association of British Columbia; 2012 [Available from: https://panbc.ca/past-panbc-conferences/.

50. Muir JC, Scheffey C, Young HM, Vilches AO, Davis MS, Connor SR. Opioid prescribing practices before and after initiation of palliative care in outpatients. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;45(6):1107-11.

51. Bandieri E, Romero M, Ripamonti CI, Artioli F, Sichetti D, Fanizza C, et al. Randomized Trial of Low-Dose Morphine Versus Weak Opioids in Moderate Cancer Pain. J Clin Oncol. 2016;34(5):436-42.

52. Wiffen PJ, Wee B, Moore AR. Oral morphine for cancer pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2016;4.

53. Bao YJ, Hou W, Kong XY, Yang L, Xia J, Hua BJ, et al. Hydromorphone for cancer pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2016(10).

54. Schmidt-Hansen M, Bennett MI, Arnold S, Bromham N, Hilgart JS. Oxycodone for cancer-related pain. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2015;2.

55. Branford R, Wighton E, Ross J. Principles of drug therapy: focus on opioids. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online. 5th edition. [1-14].

56. Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease. Pain and Symptom Management. Part 2 : 2017
[Available from: www.BCGuidelines.ca.

57. Fallon M, Cherny N. Opioid therapy: optimizing analgesic outcomes. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 5th edition. [1-45].

58. End-of-life care: moving towards the ideal. Aging Successfully. 2006;16(1):12-3 2p.

59. Portenoy R, Mehta Z, Ahmed E. Cancer pain management with opioids: Prevention and management of side effects. 2017 [Available from: www.uptodate.com.

60. Lussier D, Portenoy R. Adjuvant analgesics. In: Cherny N FM, Kaasa S, Portenoy RK, Currow DC., editor. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine. 5th ed: Oxford University Press; 2015. p. 1-26.

61. Shinde S, Gordon P, Sharma P, Gross J, Davis MP. Use of non-opioid analgesics as adjuvants to opioid analgesia for cancer pain management in an inpatient palliative unit: does this improve pain control and reduce opioid requirements? Support Care Cancer. 2015;23(3):695-703.

62. Lussier D, Huskey AG, Portenoy RK. Adjuvant analgesics in cancer pain management. Oncologist. 2004;9(5):571-91.

63. van den Beuken-van Everdingen MH, de Graeff A, Jongen JL, Dijkstra D, Mostovaya I, Vissers KC. Pharmacological Treatment of Pain in Cancer Patients: The Role of Adjuvant Analgesics, a Systematic Review. Pain practice : the official journal of World Institute of Pain. 2017;17(3):409-19.

64. Sindrup SH, Jensen TS. Pharmacotherapy of trigeminal neuralgia. Clin J Pain. 2002;18(1):22-7.

65. Davis M, Goforth H, Gamier P. Palliative Cancer Pain. In: Hayek S, Shah B, Desai M, Chelimsky T, editors. Pain Medicine: An Interdisciplinary Case-Based Approach: Oxford University Press; 2015.

66. Davies AN, Dickman A, Reid C, Stevens AM, Zeppetella G. The management of cancer-related breakthrough pain: recommendations of a task group of the Science Committee of the Association for Palliative Medicine of Great Britain and Ireland. European journal of pain (London, England). 2009;13(4):331-8.

67. Tawfik M. Osseous metastasis with incident pain. 2010. In: Guide to pain management in low-resource settings [Internet]. Seattle: International Association for the Study of Pain. Available from: http://www.iasp-pain.org/.

68. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network: Control of pain in adults with cancer, a national cinical guideline. Edinburgh2008 [Available from: www.palliativecareggc.org.uk/uploads/file/guidelines/SIGN106.pdf

69. Cited 2017. Available from: www.breakthroughcancerpain.org/en/classification.

70. Portenoy R, K., Dhingra L, K. . Assessment of cancer pain 2017 [cited 2017 Feb 21st]. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

71. Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. 5th ed. American Psychiatric Asssociation2013.

72. O' Leary MJ, Mcleod B, Chen C, Macpherson N, Kennedy B, Roberts D. Fraser Health Authorship: Pain guideline 2014.

73. Twycross R, Wilcock A, Dean M, Kennedy B. Palliative Care Formulary. Canadian Edition.: Palliativedrugs.com; 2010.

74. Gallagher HC, Gallagher RM, Butler M, Buggy DJ, Henman MC. Venlafaxine for neuropathic pain in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015(8):Cd011091.

75. Endocrine system. Corticosteroids. British National Formulary. 4th ed. London, UK.

76. National Guideline C. Pain management in older adults. In: Evidence-based geriatric nursing protocols for best practice. 2012.

77. Koshy A. Palliative Care and Symptom Management in Older Patients with Cancer. Clinics in Geriatric Medicine. 2016;32(1):45-62.

78. Pasero C. Assessment of sedation during opioid administration for pain management. Journal of PeriAnesthesia Nursing. 2009;24(3):186-90.

79. Friedman DP. Perspectives on the medical use of drugs of abuse. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1990;5(1 Suppl):S2-5.

80. Physical dependency nor addiction are significant problems in the management of cancer patients. American Pain Society Principles of analgesic use in the treatment of cancer pain. Skokie, IL1992.

81. Arnér S, Rawal N, Gustafsson LL. Clinical experience of long–term treatment with epidural and intrathecal opioids – a nationwide survey. Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica. 1988;32(3):253-9.

82. Brescia FJ, Portenoy RK, Ryan M, Krasnoff L, Gray G. Pain, opioid use, and survival in hospitalized patients with advanced cancer. J Clin Oncol. 1992;10(1):149-55.

83. Gourlay GK, Plummer JL, Cherry DA, Onley MM, Parish KA, Wood MM, et al. Comparison of intermittent bolus with continuous infusion of epidural morphine in the treatment of severe cancer pain. Pain. 1991;47(2):135-40.

84. Schug SA, Zech D, Grond S, Jung H, Meuser T, Stobbe B. A long-term survey of morphine in cancer pain patients. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1992;7(5):259-66.

85. Bakker J, Jansen TC, Lima A, Kompanje EJ. Why opioids and sedatives may prolong life rather than hasten death after ventilator withdrawal in critically ill patients. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2008;25(2):152-4.

86. Hinnant DC. Do opioids hasten death? The American journal of nursing. 1995;95(4):61-2.

87. Sykes N, Thorns A. The use of opioids and sedatives at the end of life. The Lancet Oncology. 2003;4(5):312-8.

88. Gallagher R. Killing the symptom without killing the patient. Can Fam Physician. 2010;56(6):544-6.

89. Tayler C., McLeod B. Linking nursing pain assessment, decision-making and documentation. Canadian Journal of Oncology Nursing. 2001;11(1):28-32).

90. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care]

91. Health Canada. Diclofenac - Update to Heart and Stroke Related Safety Information and Decrease in the Maximum Recommended Daily Dose for Tablets and Suppositories - For Health Professionals http://healthycanadians.gc.ca/recall-alert-rappel-avis/hc-sc/2014/41701a-eng.php Oct 6, 2014

92. B.C. Protocols Advisory Committee. Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease: Pain and Symptom Management – Pain Management: Appendix A. [Internet]. 2017. Available from: https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2.pdf

93. DeGroote M. National Pain Centre McMaster University. Canadian Guideline for Safe and Effective Use of Opioids for Chronic Non-Cancer Pain. Appendix B-8.1: Oral Opioid Analgesic Conversion Table. [Internet]. Available from: http://nationalpaincentre.mcmaster.ca/opioid_2010/cgop_b_app_b08.html

94. Treillet E. Practical management of opioid rotation and equianalgesia. J Pain Res. 2018;11:2587–601.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# FATIGUE

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Fatigue** or **"asthenia"**[1, 2] is a subjective symptom, ranging from tiredness to exhaustion, that is out of proportion to recent activity.[3-5] It occurs as a result of disease, emotional state and/or treatment, and may be acute or chronic. Major features[5] include: easy tiring and reduced capacity for activity; generalized weakness; and impaired concentration, with memory loss and emotional lability.

## PREVALENCE

Fatigue is the most frequent and debilitating symptom in advanced cancer (60-90%)[5] and advanced chronic illness (75-99%).[6-8]

## IMPACT

Fatigue is expected in disease progression and is part of the normal clinical changes that occur approaching end of life.[6] It interferes with function and impacts all aspects of well-being and quality of life, leading to economic consequences and significant distress for both patient and family.[6, 7, 9-13] Education and anticipatory guidance is essential to support patient and family self-management with coping abilities and to enable them to set realistic goals and expectations.[8]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of fatigue) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

### Fatigue Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[60]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did you start to feel fatigued? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Not applicable |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? |
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **Understanding** | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? How is this affecting your emotional, spiritual and social health? Have you had to change any of your daily activities? Does it impact your ability to work? Enjoy hobbies? Exercise? Visit with family and friends? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom (e.g., shortness of breath)? |
| **Values** | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

### Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

A comprehensive history with careful systems review including sleep and psychiatric history, detailed physical examination, and review of prescribed and over the counter medication use, to identify side-effects and possible drug-drug interactions that may be reversible is of importance.[2] Identified underlying conditions and contributing factors should be assessed for reversibility and optimized, as appropriate, recognizing patient condition, preferences and goals of care.[8]

### Diagnostics: consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

- Diagnostic tests may include hemoglobin, WBC, serum sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, blood glucose, serum urea, creatinine, liver enzymes, triiodothyronine, thyroxine, drug levels (phenytoin, digoxin),[49, 50] and urinalysis, as UTI can be common cause in frail patients.

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of fatigue in palliative care)

Fatigue usually has multiple causes[10,49-56] and may be related to underlying disease, treatments, or a variety of reversible and non-reversible factors. Symptom problems, psychosocial factors and mood disturbances, such as depression and anxiety,[57, 58] may all disrupt sleep and/or contribute to fatigue.

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Focus on identifying and optimizing underlying conditions and somatic causes[1, 2, 14]
- For mild fatigue (1-3/10), provide patient and family education on methods of energy conservation, and counselling to support self-management and coping. Encourage moderate physical activity to preserve muscle function.[10]
- For moderate fatigue (4-6/10), refer to Physiotherapy and Occupational Therapy to support comfort & safety in activities. Include pharmacological, and non-pharmacological approaches, as appropriate.
- For severe fatigue (7-10/10), provide counselling and anticipatory guidance to support coping and realistic expectations.
- Multidisciplinary team involvement is beneficial to support psychosocial, emotional and spiritual concerns.[6, 8, 11]
- For patients who are near end of life, re-direct focus from physical function to other enjoyable activities. Eg. Massage, music
- Encourage the patient and family to prioritize meaningful activities, and to give themselves permission to take a less active role in housework, etc.

Step 4 | **Interventions**

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬠ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological Interventions

#### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

✓ **Physical activity or exercise** - Maintains independence, physical function, well-being, self-esteem and energy, in patients who are able.[5, 6, 32-34] Moderate benefit for cancer-related fatigue.

✓ **Moderate activity** helps maintain strength, performance and well-being in advanced cancer patients, but no change to fatigue.[5, 36]

⚠ limited evidence in palliative care patients.[5, 33, 35] Tailor activity to
patient status.

⬠ **Patient education and cognitive behavioural therapy** improves sleep and fatigue in patients with advanced-stage cancer; helpful for patients and families.[5, 6, 37]

- **Cognitive restructuring** to change dysfunctional beliefs, such as catastrophizing or feeling helpless with respect to fatigue.[41-43]
- **Multidisciplinary team involvement** supports psychosocial, emotional, spiritual and cultural concerns.[6, 11]
- **Physiotherapy** improves physical wellbeing, fatigue, depression, and overall quality of life, functional mobility, anxiety, stress, and depression.[36, 38-40] Helps with de-conditioning[5] in earlier stages. Passive range of motion exercises maintain flexibility and reduce painful tendon retraction in the immobile patients.[5]
- **Occupational therapy** provides education/physical review to simplify tasks and conserve energy; recommends equipment to support safe transfers, mobility and self-care; and prevents further muscle atrophy, tendon retraction, and pressure ulcers.[5]

## Alternative and complementary therapy

- Mind-body techniques, music and art therapy, and spiritual practices.
- Massage has a beneficial effect on patient's experience of fatigue.[6]

## Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

- **Transfusion of packed red blood cells** benefits severe anemia (hemoglobin <8g/dL). Improves patient fatigue, dyspnea and well-being for 15 days.[5, 6] Consider patient status, goals and preferences. Short term benefit but risk of harm increases with multiple transfusions.
- **Acupuncture -** benefits cancer-related fatigue and quality of life.[5, 44]
- Little evidence for acupuncture effect on fatigue in the palliative, chronic disease population.

## Not recommended

- **Parenteral Hydration.**[45] Benefit for fatigue uncertain, safety is not assured and may necessitate transfer from desired location.

## Pharmacological interventions

### Corticosteroids

- Monitor closely for drug interactions and adverse effects. Dose varies with indication. Short term use of dexamethasone.[15] Most commonly used at 2-4mg/d.[59]
- Methylprednisolone, 16 mg twice daily for one week; although very rarely used PO, also significantly improved fatigue.[16]
- Limit duration of treatment for fatigue. No benefit shown beyond 7 to 15 days. Adverse effects increase with longer treatment16, 17 and higher doses. Give earlier in day to reduce insomnia. Physicians believe to be effective, but evidence is inconsistent.15, 17, 18

### Methylphenidate

- Consider use if fatigue due to **opioids** or **depression**.[19] Although lack of evidence, an individual trial could be appropriate, with monitoring for response and adverse effects.[20]
- Start with 5 mg daily (2.5 mg for elderly), increasing to twice daily: morning and at noon. Second dose given no later than 14:00 to minimize night-time insomnia. A favourable response occurs within one to a few days.[21-23] If no response, discontinue.
- Adverse effects of agitation, restlessness, tachycardia, delirium, confusion and insomnia; limit dose patient tolerability and willingness to continue use.[24]
- Intolerable adverse effects occurred within 7 days in one-third of cancer patients, most on 5 mg daily.22 Note: Relative contraindication: pre-existing arrhythmia (e.g., AFib).

### Modafinil

- Benefit shown in cancer-related fatigue, but ONLY for those with severe fatigue ≥7/10 on the Brief Fatigue Inventory (BFI).[25, 26] Minimal toxicities shown.[26]
- Not recommend use for mild or moderate fatigue.

### Melatonin

- No benefit in palliative patients with advanced cancer, 20 mg/day[27]
- Advanced breast cancer patients showed potential for improving circadian disruption resulting in improved sleep, quality of life, and fatigue, on 5 mg nightly[28]

### Not recommended

- **Erythropoiesis stimulating agents** [29-31] due to serious increased health risks and high cost.

## Patient and family education

Education and counselling empowers patients and their family/caregivers to cope more effectively with fatigue[1,5,10] and supports their ability to develop realistic expectations.[8]

- Provide information on symptoms and expected disease progression to reduce feelings of anxiety and guilt related to patient's fatigue.
- Encourage exercise as appropriate to capability.
- Instruct on fatigue self-care through energy conservation and activity management.
- Balance activity and rest: too much rest may increase fatigue. Exercise as able.
- Request medication/dose changes in those that may be causing loss of energy.

- Prepare patient and family to anticipate increasing need for activity assistance.
- Encourage use of energy restoration strategies. This includes relaxation and pursuit of patient preferred enjoyable activities, e.g., music, massage, etc.
- Direct focus away from fatiguing physical functions and towards other enjoyable activities.[6] This helps transition understanding and acceptance.
- Provide supportive, goal-tailored information about the dying process.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF FATIGUE

### Resources specific to Fatigue

- BC Guidelines: Fatigue and weakness

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_fatigue.pdf

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Fatigue

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/wp-content/uploads/downloads/2015/01/Fatigue-Jan-2015.pdf

### General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➡ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDklylVKjb2

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➞ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF FATIGUE IN PALLIATIVE CARE[1, 2, 10, 14]

- Advanced aging-Frailty
- Anemia
- Anorexia - cachexia
- Autonomic dysfunction
- Bleeding
- Cancer: tumor, host-derived factors, cytokines
- Cardiac disease (CHF)
- Central nervous system (CNS) abnormalities
- Deconditioning (bed rest/immobility)
- Dementia (end-stage)
- Dehydration
- Endocrine disorders
- Electrolyte imbalances (hypercalcemia, hyponatremia, etc)
- Gastro-intestinal symptoms (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, constipation)
- HIV-AIDS (end-stage)
- Hypoxemia
- Infection
- Other symptoms (dyspnea, pain, drowsiness, depression)
- Over-exertion
- Liver Failure (end-stage)
- Medications – monitor regularly
- Metabolic disorders
- Muscle abnormalities
- Neuro-muscular Diseases (ALS, MS)
- Nutritional deficiencies
- Para-neoplastic neurological syndromes
- Psychological issues
- Renal Failure (end-stage)
- Respiratory disease (copd, ild)
- Side-effects of Treatment
- Sleep disorders (insomnia)
- Unrelieved symptoms (pain, dyspnea, N/V, delirium, etc)

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF FATIGUE

### Medication details for fatigue are included in the body of the guideline

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## FATIGUE MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## FATIGUE EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

### Brief Fatigue Inventory

➡ http://www.npcrc.org/files/news/brief_fatigue_inventory.pdf

### Edmonton Symptom Assessment System-revised (ESASr)[46]

➡ http://palliative.org/NewPC/_pdfs/tools/ESAS-r.pdf

### European Cooperative Oncology Group Criteria (ECOG) Performance Status

➡ http://ecog-acrin.org/resources/ecog-performance-status

### Victoria Hospice Palliative Performance Scale

➡ https://www.victoriahospice.org/sites/default/files/pps_-_english_-_sample.pdf

## FATIGUE REFERENCES


1. Yennurajalingam SB, E. Fatigue and asthenia. In: Cherny NF, M.; Kaasa, S.; Portenoy, R.K.; Currow, D.C., editor. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine. 5 ed. OXford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2015.

2. Bruera EY, S. Palliative care: Overview of fatigue, weakness, and asthenia [updated Jul 22, 2016. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

3. Goedendorp MM, Gielissen MF, Verhagen CA, Bleijenberg G. Psychosocial interventions for reducing fatigue during cancer treatment in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009(1):CD006953.

4. Ahlberg K, Gaston-Johanssen F, Mock V. Assessment and management of cancer related fatigue in adults. The Lancet. 2003(362):640-50.

5. Yennurajalingam S, Bruera E. Fatigue and asthenia. In: Cherny N, Fallon M, Kaasa S, Portenoy RK, Currow DC, editors. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine. 5 ed. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2015.

6. Bruera E, Yennurajalingam S. Palliative care: Overview of fatigue, weakness, and asthenia 2016 [updated Jul 22, 2016. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

7. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Fatigue. In: Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S, editors. Geriatric Palliative Care. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2014. p. 1-9.

8. O'Neil-Page E, Anderson PR, Dean GE. Fatigue. In: Ferrell BR, Coyle, N.; Paice, J., editor. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2015.

9. Ferrell BR, Grant M, Dean GE, Funk B, Ly J. Bone tired: The experience of fatigue and impact on quality of life. Oncology Nursing Forum. 1996;23(10):1539-47.

10. Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care Program. Symptom guidelines: Fatigue 2006 [cited 2016. Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/media/11FHSymptomGuidelinesFatigue.pdf.

11. Poort H, Goedendorp MM, Peters M, Bleijenberg G, Gielissen MFM, Jacobsen P, et al. Psychosocial interventions for fatigue during cancer treatment with palliative intent. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2016(1):1-11.

12. Tanaka K, Akechi T, Okuyama T, Nishiwaki Y, Uchitomi Y. Impact of dyspnea, pain, and fatigue on daily life activities in ambulatory patients with advanced lung cancer. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2002;23(5):417-23.

13. Paiva CE, Paiva BS. Prevalence, predictors, and prognostic impact of fatigue among Brazilian outpatients with advanced cancers. Supportive Care in Cancer. 2013;21(4):1053-60.

14. Chai EM, D.; Morris, J.; Goldhirsch, S. Fatigue. In: Chai EM, D.; Morris, J.; Goldhirsch, S., editor. Geriatric Palliative Care. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2014.

15. Yennurajalingam S, Frisbee-Hume S, Palmer JL, Delgado-Guay MO, Bull J, Phan AT, et al. Reduction of cancer related fatigue with dexamethasone: A double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial in patients with advanced cancer. Journal of Clinical Oncology. 2013;31(25):3076-82.

16. Paulsen O, Klepstad P, Rosland JH, Aass N, Albert E, Fayers P, et al. Efficacy of methylprednisolone on pain, fatigue, and appetite loss in patients with advanced cancer using opioids: a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial. J Clin Oncol. 2014;32(29):3221-8.

17. Lundstrom SH, Furst CJ. The use of corticosteroids in Swedish palliative care. Acta Oncologica. 2006;45(4):430-7.

18. Eguchi K, Honda M, Kataoka T, Mukouyama T, Tsuneto S, Sakamoto J, et al. Efficacy of corticosteroids for cancer-related fatigue: A pilot randomized placebo-controlled trial of advanced cancer patients. Palliat Support Care. 2015;13(5):1301-8.

19. Fraser Health. Hospital Palliative Care Program. Symptoms Guidelines. Depression in the Terminally Ill. 2006 [cited 2016. Available from: http://www.fraserhealth.ca/media/08FHSymptomGuidelinesDepression.pdf.

20. Hardy SE. Methylphenidate for the treatment of depressive symptoms, including fatigue and apathy, in medically ill older adults and terminally ill adults. Am J Geriatr Pharmacother. 2009;7(1):34-59.

21. Bruera E. The Role of Methylphenidate in Cancer-Related Fatigue. Commentary on Mitchell et al. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2015;50(3):287.

22. Siu SWK, Law M, Liu RKY, Wong KH, Soong IS, Kwok AOL, et al. Use of

methylphenidate for the management of fatigue in Chinese patients with cancer. American Journal of Hospice & Palliative Medicine. 2014;31(3):281-6.

23. Yennurajalingam S, Palmer JL, Chacko R, Bruera E. Factors associated with response to Methylphenidate in advanced cancer patients. The Oncologist. 2011(16):246-53.

24. Onishi E, Biagioli F, Safranek S. FPIN's Clinical Inquiries. Methylphenidate for management of fatigue in the palliative care setting. Am Fam Physician. 2014;89(2):124-7.

25. Mucke M, Mochamat, Cuhls H, Peuckmann-Post V, Minton O, Stone P, et al. Pharmacological treatments for fatigue associated with palliative care. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015(5):CD006788.

26. Jean-Pierre P, Morrow GR, Roscoe JA, Heckler C, Mohile S, Janelsins M, et al. A phase 3 randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind, clinical trial of the effect of modafinil on cancer-related fatigue among 631 patients receiving chemotherapy: a University of Rochester Cancer Center Community Clinical Oncology Program Research base study. Cancer. 2010;116(14):3513-20.

27. Lund Rasmussen C, Klee Olsen M, Thit Johnsen A, Petersen MA, Lindholm H, Andersen L, et al. Effects of melatonin on physical fatigue and other symptoms in patients with advanced cancer receiving palliative care: A double-blind placebo-controlled crossover trial. Cancer. 2015;121(20):3727-36.

28. Innominato PF, Lim AS, Palesh O, Clemons M, Trudeau M, Eisen A, et al. The effect of melatonin on sleep and quality of life in patients with advanced breast cancer. Support Care Cancer. 2016;24(3):1097-105.

29. Product Monograph: Eprex [Internet]. 2016 [cited Oct 2016]. Available from: http://www.janssen.com/canada/sites/www_janssen_com_canada/files/product/pdf/epr05052016cpm_snds_185119.pdf.

30. Product monograph: Aranesp (darbepoetin alfa0 [Internet]. Amgen Canada Inc. 2016 [cited Oct 2016].

31. Product Monograph: Mircera (methoxy polyethylene glycol-epoetin beta) [Internet]. Hoffman-La Roche Limited. 2008 [cited Oct 2016]. Available from: www.rochecanada.com.

32. Guo Y, Shin KY. Rehabilitation Needs of Cancer Patients. Critical Reviews in Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine. 2005;17(2):83-99.

33. Cramp F, Byron-Daniel J. Exercise for the management of cancer-related fatigue in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;11(11):CD006145.

34. Jensen W, Baumann FT, Stein A, Bloch W, Bokemeyer C, de Wit M, et al. Exercise training in patients with advanced gastrointestinal cancer undergoing palliative chemotherapy: a pilot study. Support Care Cancer. 2014;22(7):1797-806.

35. Payne C, Wiffen PJ, Martin S. Interventions for fatigue and weight loss in adults with advanced progressive illness. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;1(1):CD008427.

36. Oldervoll LM, Loge JH, Lydersen S, Paltiel H, Asp MB, Nygaard UV, et al. Physical exercise for cancer patients with advanced disease: a randomized controlled trial. Oncologist. 2011;16(11):1649-57.

37. Kwekkeboom KL, Abbott-Anderson K, Cherwin C, Roiland R, Serlin RC, Ward SE. Pilot randomized controlled trial of a patient-controlled cognitive-behavioral intervention for the pain, fatigue, and sleep disturbance symptom cluster in cancer. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2012;44(6):810-22.

38. Salakari MR, Surakka T, Nurminen R, Pylkkanen L. Effects of rehabilitation among patients with advances cancer: a systematic review. Acta Oncol. 2015;54(5):618-28.

39. Litterini AJ, Fieler VK, Cavanaugh JT, Lee JQ. Differential effects of cardiovascular and resistance exercise on functional mobility in individuals with advanced cancer: a randomized trial. Arch Phys Med Rehabil. 2013;94(12):2329-35.

40. Cheville AL, Kollasch J, Vandenberg J, Shen T, Grothey A, Gamble G, et al. A home-based exercise program to improve function, fatigue, and sleep quality in patients with Stage IV lung and colorectal cancer: a randomized controlled trial. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;45(5):811-21.

41. Beck AT. Cognitive therapy: nature and relation to behavior therapy. Behavior Therapy. 1970;1(2):184-200.

42. Beck AT. Cognitive Therapy and Emotional Disorders. New York: International Universities Press; 1976.

43. Beck JS. Introduction to cognitive behavior therapy. In: Beck JS, editor. Cognitive Behavior Therapy: Basics and Beyond. 2nd ed. New York: The Guilford Press; 2011. p. 1-14.

44. Molassiotis A, Bardy J, Finnegan-John J, Mackereth P, Ryder DW, Filshie J, et al. Acupuncture for cancer-related fatigue in patients with breast cancer: a pragmatic randomized controlled trial. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(36):4470-6.

45. Bruera E, Hui D, Dalal S, Torres-Vigil I, Trumble J, Roosth J, et al. Parenteral hydration in patients with advanced cancer: a multicenter, double-blind, placebo-controlled randomized trial. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(1):111-8.

46. Bruera E KN, Miller MJ, Selmser P, Macmillan K. The Edmonton Symptom Assessment System (ESAS): a simple method for the assessment of palliative care patients. Journal of Palliative Care. 1991;7(2):6-9.

47. Cella DF TD, Gray G, Sarafin B, Linn E, Bonomi A, Silberman M, Yellen SB, Winicour P, Brannon J, et al. The Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy scale: development and validation of the general measure. J Clin Oncol. 1993;11(3):570-9.

48. Cella D ED, Lai JS, Peterman AH, Merkel DE. Combining Anchor and Distribution-Based Methods to Derive Minimal Clinically Important Differences on the Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy (FACT) Anemia and Fatigue Scales. Jpsm. 2002;24(6):547-61.

49. Symptom guidelines: Fatigue 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/media/11FHSymptomGuidelinesFatigue.pdf.

50. Lane I. Managing cancer-related fatigue in palliative care. Nursing Times. 2005;101(18):38-41.

51. Waller AC, N.L. Weakness. Handbook of Palliative Care in Cancer. 2nd ed. Boston, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann; 2000. p. 77-84.

52. Tyler LSL, A.G. Fatigue in Palliative Care Patients. Evidence Based Symptom Control in Palliative Care Systematic Reviews and Validated Clinical Practice Guidelines for 15 Common Problems in Patients with Life Limiting Disease. 2000;8(1):129-41.

53. Sherman DWM, M.L.; Coyne, P.; Ferrell, B.R.; Penn, B.K. Teaching symptoms management in end-of-life care: the didactic content and teaching strategies based on the end-of-life nursing education curriculum. Journal for Nurses in Staff Development. 2004;20(3):103-15.

54. Kaasa SL, J.H. Quality of life in palliative medicine - principles and practice. In: Doyle DH, G.; Cherny, N.I.; Calman, K., editor. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine. 3rd ed. Oxford, England: Oxford University Press; 2004. p. 196-210.

55. Guo YS, K.Y. Rehabilitation Needs of Cancer Patients. Critical Reviews in Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine. 2005;17(2):83-99.

56. National Comprehensive Cancer Network. Clinical Practice Guidelines in Oncology - Cancer Related Fatigue 2006 [2016]. Available from: http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/PDF/fatigue.pdf.

57. Poort HG, M.M.; Peters, M.; Bleijenberg, G.; Gielissen, M.F.M.; Jacobsen, P.; Verhagen, S.; Knoop, H. Psychosocial interventions for fatigue during cancer treatment with palliative intent. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2016(1).

58. Peters MEWJG, M.M.; Verhagne, C.A.H.H.V.M.; van der Graaf, W.T.A.; Bleijenberg, G. Exploring the contribution of psychosocial factors to fatigue in patients with advanced incurable cancer. Psycho-oncology. 2014;23(7):773-9.

59. Princess Alice Hopice. Guidelines for corticosterioid use. UK 2008. cited June 13, 2017. Available from: http://www.palliativedrugs.com/download/090423_Steroid_Guidelines_Summary_2008.pdf

60. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# PRURITUS

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Pruritus** or itch is defined as an intense cutaneous discomfort occurring with pathological change in the skin and mucous membranes which elicits vigorous scratching. It is a complex symptom with poorly characterized pathophysiology and is variable in its perceived quality and intensity.[1] It may be idiopathic or prodrome of disease.[2]

## PREVALENCE

Pruritus is rare but troublesome, ranging from 1% at onset of administration of opioids to 25-85% for persons with advanced renal failure. Prevalence increases with age.[2,3]

## IMPACT

Can create significant suffering and morbidity leading to sleep deprivation, depression, anxiety, impaired quality of life, and even suicidal ideation.[1]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of pruritus) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

### Pruritus Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[31]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Where do you feel itchy? Is it in one area or your entire body? |
| **Severity** | Pruritus cannot be measured directly and is difficult to quantify.[4,5] Focus questions on impact on quality of life. May try questions using a rating scale: How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? (Existing itch measurement tools are too detailed and resource intensive for use in palliative care setting.[5]) |
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **Understanding** | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **Values** | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing.

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care

- Pruritus should not be considered simply a skin disorder, but rather a systemic problem for which there are multiple causes. It is difficult to isolate these entirely and some degree of overlap is likely.[6]
- **Systemic etiology** may be present in 4-40% of all cases.6 Anxiety or fear may be both cause and consequence of pruritus.6
- Although it is normal to experience occasional mild or moderate pruritus, the **severe pruritus** seen in patients with advanced disease is usually associated with uremia (chronic renal failure), cholestasis, opioids, and hematologic disorders; it is a frequent complication of cholestasis.7 Solid tumours can cause pruritus via biliary obstruction (e.g., in pancreatic cancer). Dry skin also accompanies many of these conditions.8
- **Opioid-induced itch** is due to release of histamines and is more common with spinal opioids than with systemic opioids.[8] May require switching of opioids.[31]

# PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- There is no universally effective treatment for palliative care patients due to different pathomechanisms.[3,9]
- Combinations of systemic and topical agents often provide the best relief.[1]
- Treatment evidence is stronger for systemic drug therapy than for topical

therapy; however, topicals have fewer adverse effects.

- Treatment responses are very individual and cannot easily be predicted.[10]
- Medications inducing photosensitivity may exacerbate itching; these include: NSAIDS, diuretics, antineoplastics, ciprofloxin.[11]

- Address other associated cluster symptoms associated with pruritus including sleep, depression and pain.
- A multi-disciplinary team approach is often essential.[12,13] Difficult cases require consultation with other medical specialists, e.g., palliative physician and dermatologist.

Step 4 | **Interventions**

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬠ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

- **Tepid baths** with mild, unscented soap can be soothing and temporarily relieve the itch.[1,8]
- Add **baking soda** to late evening bath to form protective layer and maintain hydration.[4,7]
- **Dry skin** by **gently** patting with soft towel or use hair dryer on low setting.[7]
- **Use a "soak and seal" method**: pat skin dry, lubricate the skin with a fragrance-free, cream-base emollient containing camphor or menthol (**see pharmacological interventions below**).
- **Keep** finger and toe nails **short and filed**.

- Provide **cotton gloves** for day or night use for those with strong urge to scratch.
- **Apply tap water wet dressings** (e.g., cotton long underwear soaked in water) to the affected areas several times daily for 1–2 hours for excoriations and crusting due to scratching; provides temporary relief and hastens healing of injured skin.[1]
- **Loose, cotton clothing** is less irritating, minimizes heat retention and sweating.[1]
- **Avoid fragrant** topical agents, perfumes, perfumed soaps.[8]
- **Cool packs** and loose, light cotton bedding.
- Provide **cool humidified environment**.[2]

### Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

- **Ultraviolet B light therapy** performed 3 X a week may be useful in pruritus secondary to uremia, cholestasis and malignant skin infiltrations; may not be suitable for terminally ill persons.[8] **Stent placement** helps pruritus from cholestasis secondary to pancreatic cancer (to decompress biliary obstruction)[7,8,14] and might negate the need for any pharmacologic treatment, eliminating potential adverse side effects of certain drugs.[8]
- **Endoscopic or percutaneous biliary tree decompression** should be considered in biliary obstruction.[15]

## Pharmacological interventions (For more detailed pharmacological information, see Medications for management of pruritus)

High quality evidence for interventions in palliative care patients is lacking; the diverse nature and presentation of pruritus hamper studies and drug selection.[7,9]

- **Antihistamines** are generally not helpful, as the role of histamine remains unclear.[7,8,16]
  - Antihistamines value maybe limited to relief via sedation and use at bedtime.[4,9]
  - Cetirizine is a very minimally sedating daytime antihistamine.

- **Cholestyramine** is the only drug with a Canadian licensed indication for treatment of pruritus, for use associated with partial biliary obstruction.[17]
- **Paroxetine's** effectiveness is cautiously assumed for general palliative pruritus treatment, yet its harm assessment is limited.[3,9]
- Sertraline at low daily doses can be effective; does not require dose adjustment in renal impairment. Adverse effects may be minimal.

## Topicals

- Mild to moderate potency corticosteroids (for inflammation), topical anesthetics (lidocaine, prilocaine, pramoxine), doxepin.[2]
- Cooling products such as menthol (0.25-2%), camphor (1-3%) are used within emollient compounds.[2]
- Ketamine (0.5-5%) with amitriptyline (1-2%) in compounded creams.[18,19]
- Avoid topical antihistamine creams due to risk of allergic contact dermatitis.[7,20]

## Other

- Systemic corticosteroids have also been used for cholestatic pruritus.[21]
- Case reports therapies have included: lidocaine infusion,[22] ranitidine,[23] and indomethacin for pruritus in HIV patients.[3]

### Patient and family education

- Prevent boredom or anxiety in creative, personalized ways.[7]
- Avoid vasodilators such as coffee, alcohol, spices and hot water.
- Teach recommended non-pharmacologic strategies.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF PRURITUS

### Resources specific to Pruritus

- BC Cancer Agency symptom management guidelines for radiation dermatitis

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/Symptom%20Management%20Guidelines/14RadiationDermatitis.pdf

- BC Cancer Agency symptom management guideline for acneiform rash

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/1.%20Acneiform%20Rash.pdf

- BC Renal Agency pruritic treatment algorithm in hemodialysis patients

➡ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/resource-gallery/Documents/SymptomManagementProtocolPruritus1.pdf

- ESAS Renal

➡ http://palliative.org/NewPC/_pdfs/tools/ESASr%20Renal.pdf

### General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom

management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.

- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDkoOFVKjb1

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure

symptom management

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF PRURITUS IN PALLIATIVE CARE

Information is contained in the body of the document.

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF PRURITUS

| Drug, Action | Indication(s) | Dose, therapeutic range | Adverse Effects, Precautions, Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cholestyramine<br>(resin binds intestinal biliary acids, interrupts enterohepatic cycle of biliary acids)[2, 7, 24] | Cholestasis,<br>Solid tumors and paraneoplastic disorders,<br>Uremia | Initial: 4 g PO taken 30 minutes before breakfast and 30 minutes after breakfast.<br>As needed, add 2 doses at lunchtime (before and after the meal) or at dinnertime (before and after the meal)<br>Maximum: 16 to 32 g/day. | Nausea, constipation, abdominal discomfort, flatulence, unpleasant taste. Often poorly tolerated.<br>Breakfast dosing time effective as pruritogens are stored in the gallbladder overnight.<br>MANY drug interactions, commonly requires dose spacing. Take one hour before or 4-6 hours after other medication to avoid absorption impairment. |
| Doxepin<br>](H1, H2, muscarinic antagonist)[2] | Cholestasis,<br>Psychogenic | Initial: 10 to 25 mg PO HS<br>Increase by 25 mg/day.<br>Maximum:75 to 300 mg per day in divided doses. | Drowsiness, xerostomia<br>Powerful H1 effect (more than hydroxyzine or diphenhydramine).<br>QTc prolongation if dose over 100 mg per day. |
| Gabapentin<br>(blocks central nociceptive transmissions to brain)[4,15,16] | Lymphoma,<br>Opioid-induced,<br>Uremia,<br>if failure of other treatments | Initial: 100 mg PO TID.<br>Hemodialysis patients: 100 to 300 mg PO once after HD<br>Pre-op: 1200 mg single dose<br>Maximum: up to 1200 mg/day. | Drowsiness, dizziness, fatigue, ataxia, peripheral edema, visual disturbances, unsteadiness. Adjust dose for reduced renal function.<br>In extended therapy, (optimally) reduce dose over a minimum of one week.<br>Very few drug interactions |

## Medications for the management of pruritus *continued*

| Drug, Action | Indication(s) | Dose, therapeutic range | Adverse Effects, Precautions, Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|---|
| Methylnaltrexone<br>(mu opioid receptor antagonist)[25, 26] | Cholestasis | Initial: 12 mg SC daily<br>Repeat dosing every 1 to 2 days PRN. | Abdominal pain (SC 21-29%), flatulence (13%), nausea (9-12%).<br>Contraindicated in known or suspected GI obstruction or if an increased risk of recurrent obstruction. Costly.<br>Acts peripherally; did not reverse opioid analgesia in two patients. |
| Mirtazapine (H1,5-HT2, 5HT3 receptor antagonist)[2,26] | Cholestasis,<br>Lymphoma, Solid tumors and paraneoplastic disorders, uremia<br>if failure of other treatments | Initial: 7.5 to 15 mg PO HS.<br>If partial relief after one week, increase by 15 mg.<br>Maximum: 30 mg/day. | Drowsiness, but may be beneficial for itch suffering at HS. Weight gain.<br>No anxiety or nausea at start of use (unlike SSRI's).<br>Few drug interactions.<br>Use caution if history of seizures. Discontinuation symptoms have been reported upon abrupt withdrawal; reduce dose gradually if possible.<br>Therapeutic effect may disappear after 4 to 6 weeks.<br>Clearance is reduced in moderate and severe renal function.<br>Administer with caution in hepatic impairment. |

## Medications for the management of pruritus *continued*

| Drug, Action | Indication(s) | Dose, therapeutic range | Adverse Effects, Precautions, Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|---|
| Naloxone<br>(mu opioid receptor antagonist)[2, 27] | Cholestasis, Opioid-induced, Psychogenic | Initial: 0.2 mcg per kg per minute IV infusion.<br>Double the infusion rate every 3 to 4 hours PRN<br>Maximum: 0.8 mcg/kg/min. | Withdrawal syndrome: if on opioids (reversing analgesia), or if high endogenous opioids (e.g., in cholestasis, liver damage or uremia).<br>May change to PO naltrexone after 24 to 48 hours of use. |
| Naltrexone<br>(mu opioid receptor antagonist)[2,3,24,26] | Cholestasis, Psychogenic, Uremia | Initial: 6.25 to 12.5 mg PO daily.<br>Increase by increments of 12.5 to 25 mg BID or TID.<br>Maximum: 300 mg/day. | Vertigo (19-50%) is a major fall risk concern. Dizziness, nausea (29%),<br>abdominal pain, diarrhea, appetite loss, vomiting, arthralgia, anxiety.<br>Withdrawal syndrome; if on opioids (reversing analgesia), or if high endogenous opioids (e.g., in cholestasis, liver damage or uremia)<br>Hepatotoxicity at high doses. |
| Ondansetron<br>(5-HTs antagonist)[1-3, 6, 24] | Cholestasis, Opioid-induced, Psychogenic, Uremia | Initial: 4 mg PO, SC, IV<br>once or twice daily.<br>Maximum: 8 mg TID. | Headache (17%), constipation (11%), diarrhea (16%), xerostomia (5%), increased liver enzymes (17%), fever.<br>Benefit may be ineffective or dose dependent. Single 4 mg IV may be effective for 4 hours; 8 mg IV effective for 16 hours. Costly. |

## Medications for the management of pruritus *continued*

| Drug, Action | Indication(s) | Dose, therapeutic range | Adverse Effects, Precautions, Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|---|
| Paroxetine<br>(serotonin reduced via 5-HT3 receptor reduction)[2,8,26,28] | Cholestasis,<br>Solid tumors and paraneoplastic disorders,<br>Opioid induced, if failure of other treatments | Initial: 5 to 10 mg PO daily.<br>Increase by 10 mg per day, every 4 to 5 days.<br>Maximum: 20 mg/day. | Nausea and vomiting, especially first 3 days. Drowsiness.<br>Lower or less frequent dosing may be needed in severe renal impairment (CrCl less than 30 mL/min).<br>Lower and less frequent dosing may be necessary in patients with severe hepatic impairment.<br>Use caution in seizure disorder patients.<br>Pruritus may return within 3 days if discontinued.<br>Avoid abrupt discontinuation as may increase risk of serious discontinuation symptoms; gradual dose reduction and monitoring recommended.<br>Antipruritic effect may disappear after 2-3 months for some patients |

## Medications for the management of pruritus *continued*

| Drug, Action | Indication(s) | Dose, therapeutic range | Adverse Effects, Precautions, Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|---|
| Rifampin (also called Rifampicin, e.g., in Europe)<br>(inhibits biliary acid reuptake, interrupts enterohepatic cycle of biliary acids)[2,26] | Cholestasis | Initial: 75 mg PO daily.<br>Double dose every week PRN.<br>Maximum: 300 mg BID. | MANY drug interactions; assess risk prior to initiation.<br>Monitor liver function, particularly in first 2 months of treatment.<br>Do not drink alcohol while taking.<br>Take 1 hour before or 2 hours after a meal with a full glass of water.<br>To avoid long term adverse effects, (hepatitis, hemolytic anemia, renal failure, thrombocytopenia) stop if pruritus completely resolves. |
| Sertraline<br>(serotonin reduced via 5-HT3 receptor reduction)[2,26,29,30] | Cholestasis | Initial: 25 mg PO daily.<br>Adjust by 25 mg per day every 4 to 5 days.<br>Maximum: 100 mg/day. | Adverse effects: insomnia, nausea.<br>Duration of antipruritic effect sustained throughout full treatment use, unlike paroxetine.<br>Use caution in seizure disorder patients.<br>No adjustment needed in renal impairment. |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdf provides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## PRURITUS MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## PRURITUS EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

No extra resources or assessment tools included in this document.

## PRURITUS REFERENCES


1. Pittelkow MR, Loprinzi CL, Pittelkow RK. Pruritus and sweating in palliative medicine. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 5th Edition. [1-42].
2. Care Beyond Cure. Management of Pain and Other Symptoms. 4th ed: A.P.E.S.; 2009. 346 p.
3. Siemens W, Xander C, Meerpohl JJ, Antes G, Becker G. Drug treatments for pruritus in adult palliative care. 2014.
4. Bergasa NV. Medical palliation of the jaundiced patient with pruritus. Gastroenterology clinics of North America. 2006;35(1):113-23 11p.
5. Lowney AC, McAleer MA, Kelly S, McQuillan RJ. Thalidomide therapy for pruritus in the palliative setting-a distinct subset of patients in whom the benefit may outweigh the risk. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2014;48(2):e3-5 1p.
6. Larkin P. Pruritus, fever and sweats. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 4th Edition. [1-18].
7. Magee C. Managing cholestatic pruritus in palliative care. European Journal of Palliative Care. 2014;21(6):266-9 4p.
8. Seccareccia D, Gebara N. Pruritus in palliative care: Getting up to scratch. Canadian Family Physician. 2011;57:1010-3 4p.
9. Xander C, Meerpohl JJ, Galandi D, Buroh S, Schwarzer G, Antes G, et al. Pharmacological interventions for pruritus in adult palliative care patients. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2015;10.
10. Murtagh FE, Addington-Hall JM, Donohoe P, Higginson IJ. Symptom management in patients with established renal failure managed without dialysis. EDTNA/ERCA journal (English ed). 2006;32(2):93-8.

11. Drugs that Increase Photosensitivity. Therapeutic Research Center [Internet]. 2012; #180717. Available from: www.pharmacistsletter.com.

12. Fischer J. Palliating symptoms other than pain. Australian Family Physician. 2006;35(10):766-70 5p.

13. Kumar N, Garg N, Bailey A. Opiate Receptor Antagonists for Treatment of Severe Pruritus Associated with Advanced Cholestatic Liver Disease. Journal of Palliative Medicine. 2013;16(2):122-3 2p.

14. Dean MH, J. Regnaud, C. Symptom Relief in Palliative Care: Skin Problems. 2nd ed: CRC Press; 2010. p. 203 - 10.

15. Chai E MD, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Pruritus. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford University Press; [1-8].

16. Anand S. Gabapentin for Pruritus in Palliative care. American Journal of Hospice & Palliative Medicine. 2013;30(2):192-6 5p.

17. Product Monograph. Cholestyramine. Montreal, Quebec: Pharmascience Inc; 2016. p. 1-32.

18. Poterucha TJ, Weiss WT, Warndahl RA, Rho RH, Sandroni P, Davis MD, et al. Topical amitriptyline combined with ketamine for the treatment of erythromelalgia: a retrospective study of 36 patients at Mayo Clinic. Journal of drugs in dermatology : JDD. 2013;12(3):308-10.

19. Poterucha TJ, Murphy SL, Sandroni P, Rho RH, Warndahl RA, Weiss WT, et al. Topical amitriptyline combined with topical ketamine for the management of recalcitrant localized pruritus: a retrospective pilot study. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2013;69(2):320-1.

20. Pruritus. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines [Internet]. 2017 2017. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/symptom-control/Pruritus.aspx

21. Berger L, Garcia Popov A, Berger B. Case Report: Relieving the Itch of Cholestasis with Corticosteroids in Palliative Care. Journal of Palliative Medicine. 2015;18(11):913-4 2p.

22. McDonald JC, Spruyt O, Alhatem A. Control of intractable pruritus in a patient with cutaneous T-cell lymphoma using a continuous subcutaneous infusion of lidocaine. 2015.

23. Deacock SJ. An approach to the patient with urticaria. Clinical and experimental immunology. 2008;153(2):151-61.

24. Beuers U, Kremer AE, Bolier R, Elferink RP. Pruritus in cholestasis: facts and fiction. Hepatology. 2014;60(1):399-407.

25. Hohl CM, Wong JK, Harlos MS. Methylnaltrexone to Palliate Pruritus in Terminal Hepatic Disease. Journal of palliative care. 2015;31(2):124-6 3p.

26. (subscription required) [cited 2017. Available from: www.micromedexsolutions.com.

27. Marinangeli F, Guetti C, Angeletti C, Bonetti C, Paladini A, Piroli A, et al. Intravenous naloxone plus transdermal buprenorphine in cancer pain associated with intractable cholestatic pruritus. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2009;38(4):e5-8 1p.

28. Zylicz Z, Krajnik M, Sorge AA, Costantini M. Paroxetine in the treatment of severe non-dermatological pruritus: a randomized, controlled trial. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2003;26(6):1105-12.

29. Mayo MJH, I. Saldana, S. Jacobe, H. Getachew, Y. Rush, AJ. . Sertraline as a First-Line Treatment for Cholestatic Pruritus. Hepatology. 2007;45(3):666-74.

30. Chan KY, Li CW, Wong H, Yip T, Chan ML, Cheng HW, et al. Use of sertraline for antihistamine-refractory uremic pruritus in renal palliative care patients. J Palliat Med. 2013;16(8):966-70.

31. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# SEVERE BLEEDING

# SEVERE BLEEDING

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Bleeding** is the loss of blood or blood escaping from the circulatory system. Associated symptoms depend on the duration and rate of bleeding.[1] The terms **'massive' or 'catastrophic' are sometimes preferred over the term 'terminal' hemorrhage** because not all large bleeds result in death.2 This guideline will refer to **severe bleeding** which is a large amount of blood loss. The clinical presentation of bleeding in the palliative care setting is variable. It may be visible or invisible; volumes may vary from low-grade oozing to massive and catastrophic, continuous or intermittent. It may be localized or from multiple sites.[2] **Exsanguination** is defined as the blood loss of >150 mL per minute or loss of entire blood volume in 24 hours.[3, 4]

## PREVALENCE

Massive hemorrhage has been estimated to affect less than 2% of patients in the palliative care setting.[3] In cancer patients, the nature of the bleeding depends on type of primary cancer and location of the metastases with tumour erosion of aorta, pulmonary, carotid and femoral arteries being the greatest likelihood.[3, 5, 6] Bleeding also occurs in terminally ill patients with non-cancer diagnoses, e.g., variceal hemorrhage occurs in 25-35% of patients with cirrhosis.[2]

## IMPACT

Catastrophic, massive bleeding warrants special attention because of its dramatic and traumatic clinical presentation and the profound distress it causes to patients, families and caregivers.[2] While a catastrophic bleed is not painful for the patient, it is often described as a terrifying experience for the patient, the family and staff.[7, 8] This affects not only the family's experience at the time of death but runs the risk of affecting the nature of their grief and bereavement.

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources ("Additional Resources for Management of Severe Bleeding" on page 9) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

### Severe bleeding Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[32]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | Has herald or sentinel bleeding occurred, i.e., have you had any bleeding or oozing at this point? When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | Is there any action/movement that provokes bleeding? Is there anything that makes it worse? Or better? |
| **Quality** | If there is bleeding, how would you describe it? Is it gradual and slow? Does it ooze, gush or spurt? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Where is the bleeding located? Is there more than one site of bleeding? |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom (e.g., pain, dyspnea, anxiety)? Approximately how much blood is lost in 24 hours (depending on site ask about soaked bed linen, number of saturated gauzes, color of water in the toilet)? |
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? Have any special dressings been used to absorb bleeding? |
| **Understanding** | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **Values** | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

A comprehensive history and physical examination is required to determine the risk of a severe bleed, potential origins and the potential for multiple sites. Massive bleeding may take place in the lung without the presence of hemoptysis so listening to lung sounds is very important.9 Initial bleeding in the form of hemoptysis or bleeding from a malignant neck wound may signal an impending severe bleed.

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

### Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of severe bleeding in palliative care)

#### Bleeding causes can be classified within six categories

(1) cancer invasion and destruction, (2) treatment-related causes, (3) thrombocytopenia/marrow failure, (4) nutritional deficits, (5) drugs, and (6) coagulation disturbances.[2] See Underlying causes of severe bleeding in palliative care for further specific primary causes.

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?).

- Assess risks and need for anticipatory management
    - Develop an anticipatory care plan (see Severe bleeding extra resources or assessment tools for more detail) where possible and appropriate
    - Make sure all professionals and services involved are aware of the care plan, including out-of-hours services.[7]

- Manage bleed event

  - Keep calm, be present, comfort, reposition, shield visual trauma with dark towels, summon help, be supportive with help of medications and warm blankets. See further details in section 5 and 6.

- Post bleed management [10]
  - Offer de-briefing to family and health care team. This is critical
  - Provide ongoing support as necessary for relatives and staff members.
  - Dispose of clinical waste appropriately.

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological interventions[2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12-14]:

#### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

It may be possible to manage a severe bleed in the home or residential care facility with appropriate planning and support for the patient, family and staff; all of these interventions do not necessarily require additional equipment or admission to acute care.

| ABCD Response | |
|---|---|
| **A - Assure** | **Assure patient** this event has been anticipated. Reassure that you will stay with them throughout. |
| **B - Be Present** | **Stay with patient. Considered the most important intervention.** Ensure that someone is with the patient at all times. |
| **C - Calm, Comfort** | **Employ intensive calmness**.<br>Comfort: verbally soothe, hold, touch or hug them. |
| **D - Dignity** | **Maintain patient dignity.** Minimize visual impact. Cover patient with dark towels or sheets. Use basins, sheets or absorptive dressings with an impermeable backing. Clean patient face with moist cloths often. |
| Management of the Bleed | |
| **REPOSITION** | Adjust body position for blood flow, comfort, minimize sighting of blood:<br>Use recovery position to keep airway clear.<br>For hematemesis - place in left lateral decubitis position.<br>For hemoptysis - position onto the side in which the presumed bleeding lung is in the dependent position, e.g., place a patient whose right lung is bleeding on their right side. |
| **SUMMON HELP** | Call for help. |
| **APPLY PRESSURE** | Assess individual circumstances; use direct pressure cautiously with friable tissue. Local pressure **may** be appropriate for an external wound. |
| **MEDICATIONS** | Midazolam use when required; see below and Medications for management of severe bleeding**.** |
| **WARMTH** | Warm blankets can offset hypothermia from rapid bleed. |
| **SUPPORT** | Goals of care, plan a debrief for all who were present. |
| **NOTIFY** | Inform family, physician, others. |

## Pharmacological Interventions

(see Medications for management of severe bleeding for Medication table)

- Use sedation as quickly as possible to relieve distress, when practical and timely.[13, 14]
- **Midazolam 10 mg dose is most commonly used for major bleeds.**[2, 10, 12-17]
  - Give midazolam IV (preferred) bolus, if IV access is possible.[6, 10]
  - Alternatively give SC, IM (large deltoid or gluteal muscle), or buccal.[7, 12, 14, 18]
  - Repeat dose if needed. IV within 5 minutes, SC, IM, buccal within 5 to 15 minutes.[13]
- Alternatives include: Lorazepam 4 mg IV/SC/sublingual10 and Ketamine 150 to 250 mg IV, or 500 mg IM (large deltoid or gluteal muscle).[13, 16]
- Opioids are indicated for pain or dyspnea.[14] Hemorrhage is usually not painful.[6, 13, 16]

## Patient and family education

- Ask if they want to know about risks, potential developments; ask if they are willing to participate in anticipatory planning for a potential bleed event.
    - As appropriate, involve patient and family in the plan creation.
    - As appropriate, share the supportive anticipatory care plan.
    - Reassure that in the event of a bleed, the person WILL be kept comfortable and will not be left alone; unconsciousness could occur quickly.[3]
    - Remind patient and family that not all anticipated bleeds materialize.
- Anticipatory plan should
    - Provide awareness and supportive information, and enhance patient/ family coping.
    - Include a NO CPR order and/or NO CPR advance directive.
    - Teach calm approach and value of comforting presence to patient.
    - Identify who to call; unprepared caregivers may panic, calling emergency services that are required to institute resuscitative measures. Include after hours nurse phone line if available in your region.
    - Ensure family and caregivers understand intent of medication is solely to relieve distress and anxiety, not to hasten death.[11]
        - Inform that if anti-anxiety drugs help, they will need time to prepare and work, which could be too slow if bleed is large or very rapid.
    - Consider the implications of asking a caregiver and family member to administer prefilled syringes of sedatives in the event of a massive bleed if they are alone when it begins.[2]

**See** Severe bleeding extra resources or assessment tools **for further specifics about anticipatory planning.**

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF SEVERE BLEEDING

**Resources specific to Severe Bleeding:** No additional resources specific to severe bleeding included in this document

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/

palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF SEVERE BLEEDING IN PALLIATIVE CARE[2,6]

| 1. Overall risk factors for bleeding in cancer patients | |
|---|---|
| Thrombocytopenia<20,000/uL | Myelodysplasia |
| Large head and neck cancers | Severe liver disease and metastatic liver disease |
| Large centrally located lung cancers | High-dose radiation therapy |
| Refractory chronic and acute leukemias | Oral anticoagulants |
| **Risk factors for severe hemorrhaging in head and neck cancers** | |
| Radical neck dissection | Fungating tumours with arterial invasion |
| High-dose radiotherapy | Sentinel bleed |
| Postop healing problems | Direct observation during surgery or imaging (e.g. magnetic resonance imaging) of artery wall invasion |
| Visible arterial pulsation | |
| **2. Drug Causes** | ***Using references[2, 6]*** |
| **Drugs - Drug Classes** | **Specific Causative Examples*** |
| Anticoagulants, Antiplatelet drugs | ASA, Apixiban 0.1-2.1% (major), Clopidogrel 0.8-3.7% (major), Dabigatran 0.3-3.3%, Dalteparin up to 13.6% (major), Danaparoid up to 45%, Dipyridamole, Enoxaparin up to 4% (major), Heparin, Rivaroxaban 17.4-28.3% (treatment of deep vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism), Ticagrelor 1.7-3.9% (major), Ticlopidine %, Tinzaparin 0.8% (major), Warfarin |
| Antidepressants | Citalopram, Desvenlafaxine, Doxepin, Duloxetine, Escitalopram, Fluoxetine, Fluvoxamine, Paroxetine, Sertraline <0.1%, Venlafaxine |
| Antiretrovirals | Indinavir 2.7-39%, Ritonavir 2.7-46%, Saquinavir 2.7-14% |

| | |
|---|---|
| Chemotherapy | Bevacizumab 40 % (glioblastoma any grade), Capecitabine, Cyclophosphamide, Gemcitabine 9-17%, Hydroxyurea, Ifosfamide, Imatinib 1-53% (chronic myeloid leuk-emia [CML] all grades), Irinotecan 1-5%, Nilotinib 1.1-1.8% (CML), Paclitaxel 10-14%, Sorafenib 15.3% (renal cell carcinoma [RCC]), 17.4% (thyroid carcinoma), Sunitinib 37% (RCC), 18% (GI stromal tumor) 22% (pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors), Thiotepa 28% (IV high dose) |
| Corticosteroids | Dexamethasone 2.5% (gastrointestinal), Prednisone |
| Non-Steroidal Anti-inflammatory Agents | Celecoxib, Diclofenac, Ibuprofen 4-10%, Indomethacin, Ketorolac, Meloxicam, Naproxen |
| Other | Dexmedetomidine 3%, Everolimus 3% (renal cell carcin-oma), Meropenem 1.2%, Sodium Valproate 1-27% (throm-bocytopenia), Sotalol 2%, Testosterone, Topiramate 4.4% |

* There are many medications that are reported to cause bleeding, thrombocytopenia. If no specific percentage incidence shown for each drug, the known occurrence rate not reported.[6, 10] This table above provides some examples. Consult pharmacist if additional assistance is required.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF SEVERE BLEEDING

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Midazolam*†**<br>(benzodiazepine) | Stat dose:<br>10 mg IV, SC, IM, buccal<br><br>Repeat dose<br>5 min IV<br>5 to 15 min<br>SC, IM, buccal | **Onset:** 1 to 5 min IV,[20] 5 to 10 min SC,[21] 5 to 15 min IM into deltoid muscle[10, 18]<br>**Adverse effects:** IV administration over 2 to 3 minutes suggested to minimize hypotensive effects, reported in up to 30% of patients.[22, 23] However, consider immediacy of bolus administration within clinical context.<br>**Contraindicated** if hypersensitivity to benzodiazepines.<br>**Precautions** in patients with prior paradoxical reaction history to benzodiazepines. Prior or concurrent opioid dosing may increase respiratory depressant effects.<br>**Dosing:** Review dose, 10 mg commonly recommended.[2, 10, 12-17]<br>A single dose in an emergency situation, must be sufficiently adequate for a rapid and predictable effect.[13] Lower doses, such as 2.5 to 5 mg may be appropriate if bleeding is brisk but not rapidly fatal.[2, 13]<br>Weight based dosing of 0.2 mg/Kg dose IV or SC suggested for urgent palliative bleed sedation (where known).[4]<br>Higher doses may be needed; if already on background benzodiazepines, heavy alcohol or substance use.[7, 10, 14] |

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Effectiveness of route of administration**: Peripheral circulation shutdown during hypovolemic shock has some experts suggesting that bioavailability will be especially compromised for IM and SC administration.[2, 10, 16] SC route may be unpredictable.[10] Most references continue to suggest SC use.[2, 4, 14, 17] For buccal administration, place dose between the patient's cheek and gum.[14]<br><br>**Storage of prefilled syringes**: 5 mg/mL undiluted reported stable for 36 days at 25° C when protected from light.[24]<br><br>Sterility assurance beyond 24 hours of preparation unknown, assess importance, duration of storage within clinical context.<br><br>Recently, Health Canada has cautioned regarding storage of medications in disposable plastic syringes citing risk of potency concerns.[25] Replacement every 4 to 7 days has been suggested.[15, 26] |
| **Lorazepam*†**<br>(benzodiazepine) | **4 mg x 1 dose**<br><br>**IV, SL, SC, IM or buccal** | **Onset:** 5 minutes SL.[21, 27] May be as long as 20-30 minutes.[28]<br><br>IV onset faster than SC or SL.[29]<br><br>Sublingual onset similar to IM, SC. [28, 29]<br><br>For buccal administration: in patients with a dry mouth, the tablet should be dissolved in a few drops of warm water, or drop SL tablet into a syringe, add water to dissolve, then place dose between the patient's cheek and gum.[27, 30] |
| **Ketamine*†**<br>(anesthetic) | 150 to 250 mg IV x 1 dose<br><br>500 IM x 1 dose [13, 16] | **Onset:** 1 minute IV,[31] 5 min IM.[21]<br><br>**Adverse effects** include paradoxical excitation.<br><br>IM injection volume large, requiring multiple sites of injection. |

* Dose effect for massive bleed treatment not studied, is expert opinion only.

†Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## SEVERE BLEEDING MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# SEVERE BLEEDING EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

## Anticipatory Planning Review List for Bleed Risk Patients[2, 6, 10, 14, 16, 19]

*Note: use the below checklist as a guide for creating a care plan*

### FOR ALL SETTINGS

### ☐ Discussion

- The discussion should be consistent with the patient's information, needs and preferences; the care plan needs to be compatible with the patient's wishes.[2]
- All patients with a potential bleed need a plan of care created for use by family and health care providers.
- Additionally, some patients may wish to create a Bleeding Plan specific to their situation (e.g., in the event of a bleed, music to be played, dim lights in room, persons to phone or be present, sedation to be initiated or not).
- Store plans and Bleed Kit in accessible, convenient locations. Ensure appropriate awareness of these locations.

### ☐ Contact Lists (individualized for this patient/family and this situation)

- 24 hr access in event of bleed at home, psychosocial counselling, other: Name, Telephone Number.

### ☐ Supportive Resources

- The primary objective in managing a severe bleed is to minimize distress and potential trauma for the patient, family and staff.[6]
- Create a Bleed Kit: Ensure a supply of dark sheets or towels along with other equipment (gloves, aprons, plastic sheet, and clinical waste bags) in one organized container. Keep readily available.
- Explain the rationale for dark towels – to reduce the visible impact and decrease distress anxiety from seeing large volumes of blood.[14, 19]
- Have several face cloths close to bedside to wipe patient's mouth, face.

## ☐ Provide for Emergency On-Demand Medication Care Orders

- Orders written, or initiate pre-printed facility orders.
- Consider route, pre-insertion and management of parenteral access device.
- Medication and doses should reflect pre-existing conditions, benzodiazepine exposure. **See** Medications for management of severe bleeding
- Parameters: When to initiate, sedation target or need for use of sedation scales.
- Review suitability of prefilled syringe of medication to be on-hand, or use of locked storage cabinet.[16]
- Clarify if opioids have an emergency role, usually limited to that of pain or dyspnea.

## ☐ Assess bleeding risk of Current Medications

- Anticoagulants, chemotherapy, corticosteroids, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents, selective serotonin receptor antagonists, sodium valproate. **See others in** Underlying causes of severe bleeding in palliative care.
- Modify risk factors; stop unnecessary drugs; appropriately reduce/stop suspected drug causes; and consider a switch to drug option of lower bleed risk propensity.
- Assess benefits versus burden of continuing prophylactic anticoagulation treatments.
- Consider consultation with a pharmacist for drug-related risk management.
- Assess if specific preventative medication measures could have a role (e.g., proton pump inhibitors, tranexamic acid, topicals). Discuss further with palliative team consultants.

## ☐ Team Planning, Communication

- Ensure there is multidisciplinary team involvement and documentation. Suitably share with other teams and involved care members.
- Confirm team understanding of action priorities. Acknowledge that crisis medications may have little role due to the speed of event, with a duration that last only minutes and insufficient time for therapeutic effect.[2, 19]
- Ensure clarity that medication intent is to relieve patient distress, not to hasten death.[2, 16]
- Reflect current care site in plans, and foresee if site transfers might occur.
- Provide staff education and awareness of patient's own management, goals of care.
- Plan for who will clean up after an event and how to contact them.[10]

## ☐ Other Anticipatory Management

- Acknowledge that any major bleed should be managed the same way, regardless of knowing which will be a terminal event.[16]
- Assess suitability of continuous subcutaneous midazolam infusion for other indications, such that an on-demand bolus dose could be administered.
- Assess need for the addition of an opioid (e.g., if patient has pre-existing pain or dyspnea).

# FOR HOME (COMMUNITY) SETTINGS

## ☐ Discussion

- Ensure family (in home setting) have 24-hour contact number(s) and designate people who will be nearby for support.
- Confirm patient family acceptance and understanding that medications for

distress are planned for and readily available should a severe bleed occur.

- Enquire if caregivers feel able to administer needed medication.
- Establish administration responsibility.
- Pre-plan at home for individual prescriptions or Palliative drug kits as appropriate.

## SEVERE BLEEDING REFERENCES

1. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Bleeding. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

2. Pereira J, Brodeur J. The management of bleeding in palliative care. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. 5th Edition. [1-44]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

3. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Palliative Care Emergencies. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; [1-8]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

4. Von Gunten C, Buckholz G. Palliative care: Overview of cough, stridor, and haemoptysis [cited 2016 Dec 30th]. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

5. Beaulieu I, Beausoleil M, Comtois Y, Corbeil J, Coutu - Lamontagne I, Demers S, et al. Treatment of Bleeding. In: Neron A, editor. Care Beyond Cure: Management of Pain and Other Symptoms. Hospital Pharmacists' Special Interest Group in Palliative Care. 4th ed. Montreal, Quebec: A.P.E.S; 2009. p. 393-401.

6. Exsanguination. Hospice Palliative Care Program Symptom Guidelines [Internet]. 2006 [cited 2017. Available from: www.fraserhealth.ca.

7. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines: Bleeding. NHS Scotland.2015 [cited 2017 Apr 13th]. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/palliative-emergencies/Bleeding.aspx.

8. Black F, Downing GM. Respiratory. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Medical Care of the Dying. 4th ed. Victoria, BC, Canada: Victoria Hospice Society, Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006. p. 363 - 93.

9. Bobb BT. Urgent syndromes at the end of life. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. 4th

Edition. [1-38]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

10. Guidelines on the management of bleeding for palliative care patients with cancer - summary: Yorkshire Palliative Medicine Clinical Guidelines Group; 2009 [Available from: www.palliativedrugs.com.

11. McGrath P, Leahy M. Catastrophic bleeds during end-of-life care in haematology: controversies from Australian research. Support Care Cancer. 2009;17(5):527-37.

12. Palliative and End of Life Care Guidelines. Symptom control for cancer and non-cancer patients: NHS. Northern England Clinical Networks; 2016 [cited 2017 May]. 4th Edition:[Available from: www.necn.nhs.uk.

13. Back I. Palliative Medicine Handbook. Cardiff: BPM Books; 2001. Available from: www.pallmed.net.

14. Ubogagu E, Harris DG. Guideline for the management of terminal haemorrhage in palliative care patients with advanced cancer discharged home for end-of-life care. BMJ Supportive & Palliative Care. 2012;2(4):294-300.

15. Oneschuk D. Subcutaneous midazolam for acute hemorrhage in patients with advanced cancer. Can Fam Physician. 1998;44:1461-2.

16. Harris DG, Noble SI. Management of terminal hemorrhage in patients with advanced cancer: a systematic literature review. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2009;38(6):913-27.

17. EAPC. 2010 Abstracts: Oral, Plenaries and Invited Lectures. Palliative Medicine. 2010;24(4_suppl):S5-S239.

18. Regnard C, Makin W. Management of bleeding in advanced cancer - a flow diagram. Palliative Medicine. 1992;6(1):74-8.

19. Harris DG, Finlay IG, Flowers S, Noble SI. The use of crisis medication in the management of terminal haemorrhage due to incurable cancer: a qualitative study. Palliat Med. 2011;25(7):691-700.

20. Fragen RJ. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of midazolam given via continuous intravenous infusion in intensive care units. Clin Ther. 1997;19(3):405-19; discussion 367-8.

21. Twycross R, Wilcock A, Dean M, Kennedy B. Palliative Care Formulary. Canadian Edition. Nottingham (U.K.): Palliativedrugs.com; 2010.

22. Product Monograph: Midazolam Injection.: Pharmaceutical Partners of Canada Inc.; 2008 [

23. Parenteral Drug Therapy Manual (Adult): Midazolam: Fraser Health; 2009 [cited 2017 May 28th]. Available from: www.fraserhealth.ca.

24. Beaulieu I, Beausoleil M, Comtois Y, Corbeil J, Coutu - Lamontagne I, Demers S, et al. Stability and Compatability of Admixtures. Care Beyond Cure Management of Pain and Other Symptoms. Hospital Pharmacists' Special Interest Group in Palliative Care. 4th ed: A.P.E.S; 2009. p. 514.

25. Health Product InfoWatch: Disposable plastic syringes - clarification of intended use.: Health Canada; 2017 [cited 2017 May]. Available from: http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/.

26. Gagnon B, Mancini I, Pereira J, Bruera E. Palliative management of bleeding events in advanced cancer patients. J Palliat Care. 1998;14(4):50-4.

27. Hypnotics and anxiolytics: Lorazepam. British National Formulary. London, UK.2011.

28. Medical Care of the Dying. 4th ed: Victoria Hospice Society; 2006.

29. Ku C. Comparison of the pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of subcutaneous, sublingual and intravenous administration of lorazepam. University of Toronto.1993.

30. Harlos M. Symptom Management in Comfort End-Of-Life Care Of Pneumonia [Available from: http://palliative.info/resource_material/Pneumonia_EOL.pdf

31. Gabriel MS, Tschanz JA. Artificial nutrition and hydration. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 4th edition. [1-21]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

32. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# CONSTIPATION

# CONSTIPATION

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Constipation** is the difficult passage of stools, less frequent than normal for the individual.[1-3] It includes straining, a sensation of incomplete evacuation, and stool consistency that ranges from small, hard lumps to a large bulky mass. It may cause discomfort or pain.[2, 4-6, 8] **Diarrhea** is the passage of 3 or more loose stools a day, with urgency. Careful clarification is required to determine diagnosis since reports of diarrhea may include: as a single loose stool, frequent small stools, fecal incontinence, or liquid bypassing due to impaction.[9-13]

## PREVALENCE

Constipation is a significant problem in the palliative care population[14, 15] affecting 41% of non-cancer patients,[16] 30-50% of patients with cancer,[17-19] and 35-70%, and as high as 87-90%[6,20] of patients using opioids.[21-27] It is more common in women and affects 24-50% of the elderly.[28-40] Constipation increases as normal overall function decreases and burden of disease increases.[41] **Diarrhea** is not common in palliative care, affecting less than 10% of cancer patients admitted to hospice or hospital.[10]

## IMPACT

Constipation causes significant suffering through physical symptoms such as abdominal distention, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, halitosis, abdominal and rectal pain, as well as psychological distress leading to headaches, agitation[80] and delirium.[1] Up to 1/3 of patients modify opioid use to avoid constipation.[42-45] In older adults, constipation is associated with fecal impaction and/or fecal incontinence,[46] which may be mistaken as diarrhea. This is an embarrassing, distressing and exhausting symptom for both the patient and family, and impacts dignity, mood and relationships.[6, 9, 10] Fecal impaction can also cause urinary retention,[47-49] painful fissures, ulceration, bleeding and anemia.[5]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# STANDARD OF CARE

## Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of constipation) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

### Constipation Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[50]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** [1, 3, 6, 9, 10, 14, 15, 50, 51] *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? When was your last bowel movement? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? What is your appetite like? How is your daily intake of food and fluids? How is your mobility? Do you need help to the bathroom/commode? When toileting? Do you have enough privacy? Do you have pain or any other problems? |
| **Quality** | What is your normal bowel pattern? Are your bowel movements (BM) less frequent than usual? What do the stools look like? Are they smaller or harder than usual? Do you have discomfort or strain when passing stool? Is there controllable urge or sensation, prior to BM? Are you able to empty you bowels completely when desired? Do you have stool leakage or incontinence? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Not applicable |

## Constipation Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V *continued*

| | |
|---|---|
| **S**everity | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? |
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? Do you get any other symptoms: pain, nausea/vomiting, loss of appetite, bloating, gas, blood or mucous in stools, headaches or agitation? Do you have any urinary problems? Do you have any previous trauma which may impact how we manage your bowel movements (e.g., rectal interventions may re-traumatize people with past abuse)? How can we make sure you feel safe and respected? Are you worried about incontinence? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

## Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

Conduct a detailed history and physical examination, including a rectal or stomal exam.[1, 10, 52-54] Review medications, medical/surgical conditions, psychosocial and physical environment.[10, 50, 52] **Differentiate fecal impaction with liquid stool bypass from diarrhea.**[10] Further investigations should be tailored to patient prognosis, goals of care, access to health-care resources, and the potential benefits of a precise diagnosis.[14]

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

- Blood tests are rarely needed but, depending on clinical presentation, CBC, electrolytes, calcium and thyroid function should be evaluated.[10, 55]
- If obstruction is suspected, X-ray to determine if partial or complete, high or low.[10, 52, 56]

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of constipation in palliative care)

Constipation is often multifactorial in persons with advanced disease.[10, 14, 46, 57] Predisposing risk factors are many (see Underlying causes of constipation in palliative care); most common include: older age, reduced intake, immobility, advanced disease, and use of anticholinergic and/or opioid medications.[10, 57, 58] Opioids are a significant, but not exclusive, cause of constipation[41]; therefore, focus should be broader than this single cause.[57]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Prevention of constipation is key when risk factors exist (e.g., opioids, decreased intake, decreased physical activity).
- Increase and monitor fluids, dietary fibre, and physical activity, as tolerated.[6, 10, 50]
- Identify and correct modifiable risk factors.[6, 7, 10, 59]
- Discontinue fiber in debilitated patients if unable to maintain hydration, or when bowel obstruction is suspected.[3, 52]
- Anticipate constipating effects of opioids and ensure a prophylactic laxative[15, 60] unless bowel obstruction or diarrhea.[1, 41, 55, 59-61]
- Oral measures are preferred and reduce need for rectal interventions.[2, 10]
- Regularly monitor bowel pattern and patient satisfaction to adjust to desired effect.[1, 7]
- Use practice tools to improve management: checklists, laxative protocols, audits.[2, 3, 59, 62-64]
- Involve interdisciplinary team.[59] Consider personal, psychosocial and cultural perspectives.[6]
- Constipation is often progressively more challenging over time in end-of-life patients.

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬟ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

It may be possible to manage constipation in the home or residential care facility with appropriate planning and support for the patient, family and staff; all of these interventions do not necessarily require additional equipment or admission to acute care.

⬟ **Encourage** hydration, fibre intake and mobility, **as tolerated**[3, 14, 52, 82]

⬟ **Wheat bran and prunes** improve bowel function,[64] as tolerated.

- Refer to **physiotherapy and/or OT** for appropriate exercise and mobility supports[10] as immobility may be more constipating than opioids.[14, 59, 83]
- **Biofeedback training** with physiotherapist may also benefit.[65]
- **Avoid use of bedpans.**[14, 84] Ensure privacy, personal preference, promote independence and convenience during toileting.[3, 52, 69, 85, 86]
- There is little or no empirical evidence for other complementary approaches.[10]
- Probiotics, have some evidence of benefit in constipation,[80] but may also harm.[87] Avoid use in severely ill or immunocompromised patients.[88]

## Pharmacological interventions

### ORAL LAXATIVES ARE FIRST-LINE THERAPY FOR CONSTIPATION

### Recommended first-line oral laxatives: Sennosides, Lactulose, Polyethylene Glycol

- Effectiveness of each appears similar based on expert opinion[79, 89]; therefore, seek patient preferences.[10, 15, 90, 91] Other factors impacting selection will include: cost, patient performance status, tolerance to effects, and ability to swallow.[2, 3, 58] **See** Medications for management of constipation **for more information about medications for management.**
- Opioid-induced constipation (OIC): the constipating effects of opioids are persistent. When opioids are started, **prophylactic laxatives are usually required**, and should be continued for the duration of opioid use.[15, 60]
- Sennosides may be the most useful single laxative when an opioid is prescribed.[6, 10, 52, 63, 90, 92, 93]
- A combination of a stimulant (e.g., sennosides), plus an osmotic laxative to moisturize and to soften stool (e.g., lactulose or polyethylene glycol (PEG)) may be required, particularly for opioid-induced constipation.[2, 6, 15, 60, 62]
- Use a stepwise approach, starting with simple, economical laxatives.[14] **See the** Constipation and bowel obstruction management algorithm**.**

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## Titration of Oral Laxatives

- Titrate laxative doses **every 1 to 2 days** according to response.[10, 15, 59]
- Once current regimen satisfactory and well tolerated, continue with it, reviewing regularly with the patient; explain importance of preventing constipation.[1]
- As the dose of opioids increases, the dose of laxatives often needs to increase, with dosing twice daily (breakfast/bedtime) or even three times daily,[6, 90] up to the maximum recommended or tolerable.[15, 90, 94, 95]
- The proportional dose of stimulant versus osmotic laxative is guided by stool consistency and tolerance.

  If faecal leakage: reduce the dose of the osmotic laxative.[2, 90] If colic (usually alongside hard stools): increase the osmotic laxative relative to the stimulant,[2] and/or divide the total stimulant daily dose into smaller, more frequent doses.[63]

- Evaluate patient tolerance and adverse effects from laxatives. **Refer to** Constipation and bowel obstruction management algorithm**.**
- Resolve diarrhea from laxatives by holding drugs for 1 to 2 days; restart at a lower dose.[96]
- Stop oral laxatives in the last few days of life when patients are no longer able to receive medication and their level of consciousness diminishes. Rectal care then is rare.[2, 59, 96]

## Use of Rectal Measures: When Standard Oral Laxatives are Unsuccessful

Rectal Interventions (suppository, enema, manual extraction) should be used infrequently.[6] **See** Constipation and bowel obstruction management algorithm **and** Constipation and bowel obstructions extra resources or assessment tools **for further rectal measures information.**

## Refractory Constipation: When Standard Optimum Oral and Rectal Measures are Unsuccessful

- Consult a palliative care specialist for refractory opioid-induced constipation or for specific, complex patient needs including spinal cord compression and cognitive impairment.[2, 59]
- When OIC suspected, and response to other standard measures is inadequate, opioid antagonists (e.g., methylnaltrexone, naloxegol) may be suitable with specialist advice.[2] Use only after failure of standard laxative therapy, to augment, not replace laxatives.[63] **See** Constipation and bowel obstruction management algorithm **for more information.**[97, 98]

## Patient and family education

- Explain normal bowel function; this varies from person to person.[67]
- A daily bowel movement is not necessary. As long as stools are soft and easy to pass,[68, 69] every 2 to 3 days is acceptable.[70,71]
- Don't ignore the urge to have a bowel movement. Try within 30 to 60 minutes following a meal, when the gastro colic reflex commonly occurs.[11, 72-74]
- Avoid excess straining as this may be harmful in some medical conditions.[11, 64, 72]
- Toilet in sitting position with use of a raised toilet seat, foot stool or bedside commode.
- Privacy during toileting[11, 13, 22, 72, 73, 75, 76] helps reduce anxiety/aids relaxation.
- Advance pain control helps improve comfort and mobility.[11, 64, 72]

- Teach how to differentiate between oozing stool and diarrhea.

## Teach constipation prevention

- Increase fluids, dietary fibre, and mobility as tolerated; this is less possible over time.
- Nutritional liquids, milkshakes, cream soups, fruit juices may aid appetite/activity.[67]
- A fruit laxative can be made with prunes, dates, figs and raisins.[70, 72]
- When oral intake and mobility are reduced, avoid extra fibre.[3, 11, 13, 22, 73, 75, 77, 78] A laxative may be needed.
- Patients on opioids for symptom control will need a stimulant laxative from the start of opioids to prevent ongoing constipating effects.[10, 14, 25, 57, 79, 80] (Medications for management of constipation)
- Healthcare providers can help choose the laxative type most suited to individual needs.

## Explain in advanced illness

- Since the body continues to produce 1 to 2 ounces of stool per day, even if no oral intake,[81] a laxative may still be needed. It can be stopped in the last days of life.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF CONSTIPATION

## Resources specific to constipation

- ALS of Canada fact sheet on constipation
  - ➞ https://www.als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/04/ALSCAN-Constipation.pdf
- BC Guidelines: Constipation
  - ➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_constipation.pdf
- BC Cancer Agency: Constipation
  - ➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/3.%20Constipation.pdf
- HealthLink BC: Managing Constipation in Adults with Diet
  - ➞ https://www.healthlinkbc.ca/healthlinkbc-files/constipation-adults
- BC Cancer Agency: Patient handout with suggestions for dealing with constipation
  - ➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/family-oncology-network-site/Documents/SuggestionsforDealingwithConstipation.pdf

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide
  - ➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/
- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease
  - ➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➞ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF CONSTIPATION IN PALLIATIVE CARE[5, 6, 10, 11, 14, 39, 67, 77]

| | |
|---|---|
| **1. Primary** | |
| • Advanced age | • Decreased intake |
| • Inactivity | • Low fiber diet |
| • Depression | • Poor fluid intake |
| • Sedation | • Physical or social impediments |
| **2. Secondary** | |
| *Metabolic disturbances* | |
| • Dehydration | • Uremia |
| • Hyperglycemia | • Hypothyroidism |
| • Hypokalemia or Hypercalcemia | |
| *Concurrent Disease* | |
| • Diabetes | • Anal fissure |
| • Hernia | • Anterior mucosal prolapse |
| • Diverticular disease | • Hemorrhoids |
| • Colitis | • Spinal cord injury |
| • Rectocele | • Multiple Sclerosis, ALS |
| *Neurological disorders* | |
| • Cerebral tumors | • Sacral nerve infiltration |

| | |
|---|---|
| • Autonomic failure | • Spinal cord involvement/compression |
| *Structural abnormalities* | |
| • GI obstruction | • Radiation fibrosis |
| • Pelvic tumor mass | • Painful anorectal conditions (anal fissure, hemorrhoids, perianal abscess) |
| **3. Iatrogenic** | |
| *Drugs - Drug Classes* | **Specific Causative Examples** |
| • 5HT3 Antagonists | • Ondansetron |
| • Antacids | • Aluminum, bismuth, calcium containing |
| • Anticholinergics | • Atropine, Glycopyrrolate, Hyoscine |
| • Anticonvulsants | • Gabapentin, Phenytoin |
| • Antidepressants | • Amitriptyline, Mirtazapine, Nortriptyline, Paroxetine, Sertraline |
| • Anti-diarrheal agents | • Loperamide, Kaolin/Pectin |
| • Antihypertensives | • Clonidine, Diltiazem, Nifedipine, Verapamil |
| • Antiparkinsonian agents | • Levodopa, Pramipexole, Selegiline |
| • Antipsychotics | • Haloperidol, Olanzapine, Quetiapine, Risperidone |
| • Chemotherapy | • Capecitabine, Temozolomide, Vincristine |
| • Diuretics | • Furosemide, Hydrochlorothiazide when result in dehydration |
| Gastrointestinal agents | Cholestyramine, Sodium Polystyrene Sulfonate |
| Hormonal agents | Octreotide |
| Opioids | All. Fentanyl, Methadone may be least constipating |
| Psyllium/Fiber | Occurs if insufficient fluid co-administered |
| Supplements | Iron or calcium |

There are many medications that are reported to cause constipation.[99] This table above provides some examples. Consult pharmacist if additional assistance is required.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF CONSTIPATION

*Avoid laxatives, especially stimulants, if intestine is fully obstructed; seek consult.*

| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Sennosides / Senna**<br><br>stimulant | Starting dose:<br>1 to 2 tablets PO at bedtime<br>or 10 mL syrup.<br>Maximum daily tablet dose:<br>36 mg PO TID[95,100] | **6 to 12 hours**.[6, 90] Intestinal colic is principal adverse effect[92] and may be similar to the cramping of severe constipation. **Contraindicated in abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, intestinal obstruction**.[69] Long term use considered safe.[10, 14] Start at bedtime, if dose increases required, add next dosing time at breakfast. This timing best matches drug onset to natural gastro-colic peristalsis.<br><br>**Irritable bowel syndrome patients may experience painful cramps; osmotic laxatives are often preferred.**[95] |
| **Lactulose**<br><br>osmotic | Starting dose:<br>15 mL PO daily with food.<br>Maximum daily dose:<br>30 mL PO BID[55, 101] | **1 to 2 days.**[52, 69] Abdominal bloating, flatulence (20% for the first few days), nausea (may be reduced if diluted or taken with meals), intestinal colic.[90] Rarely causes serious electrolyte disorders or volume overload.[10, 52, 69] **Contraindicated in galactosemia, intestinal obstruction.**[69] **Avoid in lactose-intolerant patients**.[52] Use with hot tea, hot water or juices to improve unpalatable sweet taste.[6, 10] Lactulose does not affect diabetes mellitus management.[90]<br><br>**Effectiveness requires a sufficiently high fluid intake**.[1] |

| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Polyethylene Glycol**<br>"PEG"<br>osmotic | Starting dose:<br>17 g PO daily.<br>Maximum daily dose: ǂ<br>17 g PO BID[90] to TID[69] ǂ PCF5- BID, OB 139TID | **1 to 3 days**.[69] Nausea, bloating, occasional vomiting, stomach cramps.[69] Requires 125 to 250 mL fluid intake daily per 17 g dose.[69, 102]<br>**Contraindicated in intestinal obstruction or perforation, inflammatory bowel conditions (Crohn's disease, ulcerative colitis).**[69]<br>Adverse effect profile may be better than other oral laxatives.[62, 91] **Use cautiously in patients unable to tolerate the fluid volume needed**, e.g., if nauseated or frail.[1] Used safely up to 6 to 12 months.[51] |
| **Glycerin Suppositories**<br>osmotic, lubricant | Dose:<br>1 supp PR x 1 | **15 to 30 min.**[1, 90] Adverse effects rare but may include mild rectal irritation.[51, 103] **Avoid suppositories in patients with severely reduced white cell or platelet counts due the risk of bleeding or infection**.[6] Suppositories should be retained for 15 minutes.[6, 103, 104] |
| **Bisacodyl Suppositories**<br>stimulant | Dose:<br>1 supp PR x 1 | **20 to 60 min, up to 3 hours**.[90] Side effects rare but can cause occasional abdominal cramps and diarrhea or local rectal inflammation.[90] Can worsen pre-existing rectal tears and anal fissures.[55] Occasionally causes faecal leakage. **Avoid suppositories in patients with severely reduced white cell or platelet counts due the risk of bleeding or infection.**[6] Place suppository against rectal wall, not into faeces, to ensure effectiveness.[90] |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF CONSTIPATION
*CONTINUED*

| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Micro-enema**<br>osmotic, softener | Starting dose:<br>5 mL PR x 1<br>Maximum dose: 10 mL PR daily | **5 to 20 min, up to 60 min.**[1, 90] **Risk of intestinal necrosis: avoid use with sodium polystyrene sulfonate containing products.** Do not use in the presence of abdominal pain, nausea, fever or vomiting.<br>Contents include sodium citrate, sorbitol and sodium lauryl sulfoacetate[114] |
| **Mineral Oil Enema**<br>(stool softener) | Dose:<br>130 mL PR x 1<br>Maximum dose:<br>1 enema PR daily | **2 to 15 minutes**<br>Warm to room temperature before use.[90] |
| **Sodium-phosphate enema**<br>osmotic | Starting dose:<br>130 mL PR x 1<br>Maximum dose:<br>1 enema PR daily | **2 to 5 minutes, up to 30 minutes**.[1, 90] **Elderly patients (over 65) are particularly at risk of serious electrolyte disturbances.**[105] _Fatalities have been reported.[90, 105] **Contraindicated in renal failure**.[100] Avoid multiple applications to minimize risk of adverse effects.[103] If enemas are ever used regularly, must monitor for electrolyte, fluid imbalances, rectal trauma.[96] Warm to room or body temperature before use.[1, 90] |

*Medications for management of constipation continued on next page*

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF CONSTIPATION
*CONTINUED*

| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Methylnaltrexone**<br>peripheral opioid receptor antagonist | Subcutaneous injection every 2 days as needed.<br>Dose is weight based:<br>33-37 kg=6 mg<br>38-61 kg= 8 mg<br>62-114 kg=12 mg<br>115-126 kg=18 mg<br>Outside these ranges, dose 0.15 mg/kg.<br>Reduce doses by 50% when creatinine clearance is less than 30 mL/min. | **24 minutes to 4 hours.**[106, 107] Abdominal pain, diarrhea, nausea, flatulence. Rare: flushing, delirium, severe diarrhea leading to dehydration and subsequent cardiovascular collapse, extrasystoles.[98]<br>**Caution: Gastrointestinal (GI) perforation is a risk of this medication for patients with advanced illness** such as: cancer, GI malignancy, GI ulcer, and Ogilvie›s syndrome and taking medications such as bevacizumab, non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and steroids.[115]<br>To be used in conjunction with ongoing laxative therapy when laxatives alone are insufficient for treatment of opioid-induced constipation for advanced illness palliative care patients.[106, 107] **Stop if response inadequate after four doses.**[107] No drug interactions with cytochrome P450 metabolized drugs.[107]<br>Balance drug cost alongside staffing costs, patient outcomes.[97, 98] |

*Medications for management of constipation continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF CONSTIPATION
*CONTINUED*

| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Naloxegol**<br>peripheral opioid receptor antagonist | Usual dose:<br>12.5 to 25 mg PO daily<br>Maximum daily dose: 25 mg PO daily | **6 to 12 hours.**[108] 50% of people respond within 12 hours.[109]<br>Naloxegol is indicated for the treatment of opioid-induced constipation in adult patients with **non-cancer pain** who have had an inadequate response to laxatives.[109] Usual starting dose is 25 mg daily. Reduce to 12.5 mg daily if moderate to end-stage renal impairment or if used concomitantly with weak CYP3A4 inhibitors (e.g., cimetidine, quinidine). Renal patients can increase dose to 25 mg daily if the 12.5 mg dose is well tolerated.[109] Abdominal pain, flatulence, headache, diarrhea, and nausea[98, 109] |
| | | **Anticipate numerous significant CYP3A4 drug interactions.**<br>**Contraindicated in patients concomitantly receiving strong CYP3A4 inhibitors** (e.g., ketoconazole, voriconazole, clarithromycin, protease inhibitors such as ritonavir). Interactions also occur with P-glycoprotein transporters (P-gp) modulators.[109] **Avoid grapefruit juice**.[109] |
| | | **Contraindicated in known or suspected GI obstruction or patients at risk of recurrent obstruction due to potential for GI perforation**. |

*Medications for management of constipation continued on* next page

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF CONSTIPATION
*CONTINUED*

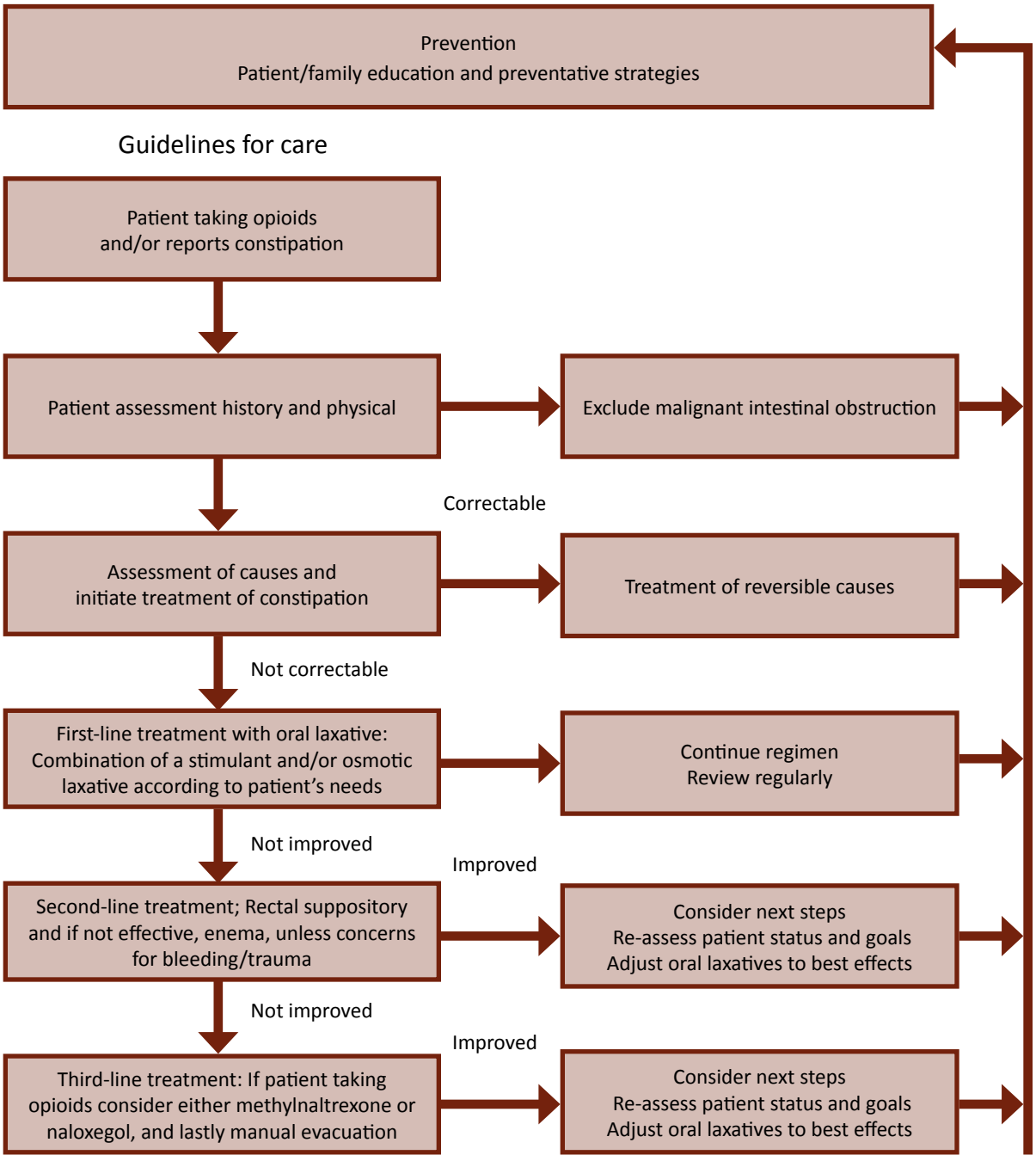
| Drug, Action | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| | | **Caution:** if using in patients with any risk of impaired integrity of the gastrointestinal tract wall (e.g., severe peptic ulcer disease, Crohn's Disease, active or recurrent diverticulitis, infiltrative gastrointestinal tract malignancies or peritoneal metastases), consider the overall benefit/risk profile for a given patient.[109]<br>When started, all current laxative therapy should be stopped until clinical effect of naloxegol is determined.[109] Does not cause systemic opioid withdrawal symptoms. Take in the morning on an empty stomach at least 1 hour prior to the first meal of the day or 2 hours post-meal.[109]<br>Balance drug cost alongside staffing costs, patient outcomes.[97, 98] |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet, CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan (http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdf) provides province-wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications; check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient/family is covering the cost.**

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## CONSTIPATION AND BOWEL MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM[3,4,7]




Refer to Medications for management of constipation for further drug details including precautions and contraindications. Refer to guideline sections for specifics for prevention and patient/family education and preventative strategies

Algorithm adapted from Cancer Care Ontario – algorithm.[74]

## CONSTIPATION AND BOWEL OBSTRUCTIONS EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

- Victoria Bowel Performance Scale:[110]

➡ http://www.victoriahospice.org/sites/default/files/2bbbowelperformancescale.pdf

## CONSTIPATION AND BOWEL OBSTRUCTION REFERENCES


1. Scotland N. Constipation in palliative care: NHS Scotland; 2014.
2. Larkin PJ, Sykes NP, Centeno C, Ellershaw JE, Elsner F, Eugene B, et al. The management of constipation in palliative care: clinical practice recommendations. Palliat Med. 2008;22(7):796-807.
3. Librach SL, Bouvette M, De Angelis C, Farley J, Oneschuk D, Pereira JL, et al. Consensus recommendations for the management of constipation in patients with advanced, progressive illness. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2010;40(5):761-73.
4. Longstreth GF, Thompson WG, Chey WD, Houghton LA, Mearin F, Spiller RC. Functional bowel disorders. Gastroenterology. 2006;130(5):1480-91.
5. Rao S. Constipation in the older adult: UpToDate; 2015 [
6. Caraccia Economou D. Bowel management: Constipation, diarrhea, obstruction, and ascites: Oxford University Press; 2015.
7. Algorithm WPCPCAM. WRHA Palliative Care Program Constipation Assessment & Management Algorithm. In: Algorithm WPC, editor.: Victoria Hospice Society; 2009.
8. Goodman M, Low J, Wilkinson S. Constipation management in palliative care: a survey of practices in the United kingdom. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2005;29(3):238-44.
9. Scotland HI. Diarrhoea 2014.
10. Sykes NP. Constipation and diarrhoea: Oxford University Press; 2015.
11. Carter B, Black F, Downing G. Bowel Care - Constipation and Diarrhea. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Medical Care of the Dying. Victoria, B.C. Canada:

Victoria Hospice Society Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006.

12. Waller A, Caroline N. Diarrhea. Boston, MA2000.

13. Waller A, Caroline N. Constipation. 2000. In: Handbook of Palliative Care in Cancer [Internet]. Woburn, MA: Butterworth-Heinemann. 2nd ed.

14. Prichard D, Bharucha A. Management of opioid-induced constipation for people in palliative care. Int J Palliat Nurs. 2015;21(6):272, 4-80.

15. Cheng CW, Kwok AO, Bian ZX, Tse DM. A cross-sectional study of constipation and laxative use in advanced cancer patients: insights for revision of current practice. Support Care Cancer. 2013;21(1):149-56.

16. Kalso E, Edwards JE, Moore RA, McQuay HJ. Opioids in chronic non-cancer pain: systematic review of efficacy and safety. Pain. 2004;112(3):372-80.

17. de Groot JW, Peters FT, Reyners AK. [Treatment of constipation in the palliative care phase]. Ned Tijdschr Geneeskd. 2010;154:A2224.

18. Walsh D, Donnelly S, Rybicki L. The symptoms of advanced cancer: relationship to age, gender, and performance status in 1,000 patients. Support Care Cancer. 2000;8(3):175-9.

19. Noguera A, Centeno C, Librada S, Nabal M. Screening for constipation in palliative care patients. J Palliat Med. 2009;12(10):915-20.

20. Sykes NP. The relationship between opioid use and laxative use in terminally ill cancer patients. Palliat Med. 1998;12(5):375-82.

21. Hellwig TR, Pottebaum AA. The role of methylnaltrexone in opioid-induced constipation. S D Med. 2013;66(10):425, 7.

22. Tamayo AC, Diaz-Zuluaga PA. Management of opioid-induced bowel dysfunction in cancer patients. Support Care Cancer. 2004;12(9):613-8.

23. Choi YS, Billings JA. Opioid antagonists: a review of their role in palliative care, focusing on use in opioid-related constipation. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2002;24(1):71-90.

24. Panchal SJ, Müller-Schwefe P, Wurzelmann JI. Opioid-induced bowel dysfunction: prevalence, pathophysiology and burden. Int J Clin Pract. 2007;61(7):1181-7.

25. Pappagallo M. Incidence, prevalence, and management of opioid bowel dysfunction. Am J Surg. 2001;182(5A Suppl):11S-8S.

26. Klepstad P, Borchgrevink PC, Kaasa S. Effects on cancer patients' health-related quality of life after the start of morphine therapy. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2000;20(1):19-26.

27. Reid CM, Martin RM, Sterne JA, Davies AN, Hanks GW. Oxycodone for cancer-related pain: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Arch Intern Med. 2006;166(8):837-43.

28. Talley NJ, O'Keefe EA, Zinsmeister AR, Melton LJ. Prevalence of gastrointestinal symptoms in the elderly: a population-based study. Gastroenterology. 1992;102(3):895-901.

29. Talley NJ, Fleming KC, Evans JM, O'Keefe EA, Weaver AL, Zinsmeister AR, et al. Constipation in an elderly community: a study of prevalence and potential risk factors. Am J Gastroenterol. 1996;91(1):19-25.

30. Wald A, Scarpignato C, Mueller-Lissner S, Kamm MA, Hinkel U, Helfrich I, et al. A multinational survey of prevalence and patterns of laxative use among adults with self-defined constipation. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2008;28(7):917-30.

31. Sandler RS, Jordan MC, Shelton BJ. Demographic and dietary determinants of constipation in the US population. Am J Public Health. 1990;80(2):185-9.

32. Everhart JE, Go VL, Johannes RS, Fitzsimmons SC, Roth HP, White LR. A longitudinal survey of self-reported bowel habits in the United States. Dig Dis Sci. 1989;34(8):1153-62.

33. Whitehead WE, Drinkwater D, Cheskin LJ, Heller BR, Schuster MM. Constipation in the elderly living at home. Definition, prevalence, and relationship to lifestyle and health status. J Am Geriatr Soc. 1989;37(5):423-9.

34. Donald IP, Smith RG, Cruikshank JG, Elton RA, Stoddart ME. A study of constipation in the elderly living at home. Gerontology. 1985;31(2):112-8.

35. Harari D, Gurwitz JH, Avorn J, Bohn R, Minaker KL. Bowel habit in relation to age and gender. Findings from the National Health Interview Survey and clinical implications. Arch Intern Med. 1996;156(3):315-20.

36. Choung RS, Locke GR, Schleck CD, Zinsmeister AR, Talley NJ. Cumulative incidence of chronic constipation: a population-based study 1988-2003. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2007;26(11-12):1521-8.

37. Rosti G, Gatti A, Costantini A, Sabato AF, Zucco F. Opioid-related bowel dysfunction: prevalence and identification of predictive factors in a large sample of Italian patients on chronic treatment. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci. 2010;14(12):1045-50.

38. Ishihara M, Ikesue H, Matsunaga H, Suemaru K, Kitaichi K, Suetsugu K, et al. A multi-institutional study analyzing effect of prophylactic medication for prevention of opioid-induced gastrointestinal dysfunction. Clin J Pain. 2012;28(5):373-81.

39. Sykes NP. An investigation of the ability of oral naloxone to correct opioid-related constipation in patients with advanced cancer. Palliat Med. 1996;10(2):135-44.

40. McCrea GL, Miaskowski C, Stotts NA, Macera L, Paul SM, Varma MG. Gender differences in self-reported constipation characteristics, symptoms, and bowel and dietary habits among patients attending a specialty clinic for constipation. Gend Med. 2009;6(1):259-71.

41. Mellar DP. Cancer constipation: are opioids really the culprit? Supportive Care in Cancer [Internet]. 2008; 16(5):[427-9 pp.].

42. Bell TJ, Panchal SJ, Miaskowski C, Bolge SC, Milanova T, Williamson R. The prevalence, severity, and impact of opioid-induced bowel dysfunction: results of a US and European Patient Survey (PROBE 1). Pain Med. 2009;10(1):35-42.

43. Thomas JR, Cooney GA, Slatkin NE. Palliative care and pain: new strategies for managing opioid bowel dysfunction. J Palliat Med. 2008;11 Suppl 1:S1-19; quiz S21-2.

44. Candrilli SD, Davis KL, Iyer S. Impact of constipation on opioid use patterns, health care resource utilization, and costs in cancer patients on opioid therapy. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother. 2009;23(3):231-41.

45. Bell T, Annunziata K, Leslie JB. Opioid-induced constipation negatively impacts pain management, productivity, and health-related quality of life: findings from the National Health and Wellness Survey. J Opioid Manag. 2009;5(3):137-44.

46. Candy B, Jones L, Goodman ML, Drake R, Tookman A. Laxatives or methylnaltrexone for the management of constipation in palliative care patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2011(1):CD003448.

47. Rao SS. Constipation: evaluation and treatment of colonic and anorectal motility disorders. Gastroenterol Clin North Am. 2007;36(3):687-711, x.

48. Sykes NP. The pathogenesis of constipation. J Support Oncol. 2006;4(5):213-8.

49. Twycross R, Sykes N, Mihalyo M, Wilcock A. Stimulant laxatives and opioid-induced constipation. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2012;43(2):306-13.

50. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

51. Fritz D, Pitlick M. Evidence about the prevention and management of constipation: implications for comfort part 1. Home Healthc Nurse. 2012;30(9):533-40; quiz 40-2.

52. Portenoy R, Mehta Z, Ahmed E. Cancer pain management with opioids: Prevention and management of side effects: UptoDate; 2017 [

53. Wald A. Etiology and evaluation of chronic constipation in adults: UpToDate; 2016 [

54. Bharucha AE, Pemberton JH, Locke GR. American Gastroenterological Association technical review on constipation. Gastroenterology. 2013;144(1):218-38.

55. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Constipation: Oxford University Press; 2014.

56. Jashed N, Lee ZE, W. OK. Diagnostic approach to chronic constipation in adults; 84:[299-306 pp.].

57. Clark K, Lam LT, Agar M, Chye R, Currow DC. The impact of opioids, anticholinergic medications and disease progression on the prescription of laxatives in hospitalized palliative care patients: a retrospective analysis. Palliat Med. 2010;24(4):410-8.

58. Cayley WE. Management of constipation in patients receiving palliative care. Am Fam Physician. 2011;84(11):1227-8.

59. Committee NCE. Management of Constipation in Adult Patients Receiving Palliative Care. National Clinical Guideline: An Roinn Slainte Department of Health No. 10; 2015.

60. Clemens KE, Faust M, Jaspers B, Mikus G. Pharmacological treatment of constipation in palliative care. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2013;7(2):183-91.

61. DeRegil ML, PenaRosas PJ, FernandezGaxiola AC, RaycoSolon P. Effects and safety of periconceptional oral folate supplementation for preventing birth defects. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews [Internet]. 2015.

62. Caresearch. Constipation2017. Available from: https://www.caresearch.com.au/caresearch/tabid/744/Default.aspx.

63. Twycross R, Wilcock A. Palliative Care Formulary. In: Twycross R, Wilcock A, editors. Palliative Care Formulary. 4th ed ed: Palliativedrugs.com Ltd; 2011.

64. Clark K, Byfieldt N, Dawe M, Currow DC. Treating constipation in palliative care: the impact of other factors aside from opioids. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2012;29(2):122-5.

65. Staff MC. Constipation: Mayo Clinic; 1998-2017 [Available from: http://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/constipation/diagnosis-treatment/treatment/txc-20252759?p=1.

66. Ontario CC. Bowel Care. Symptom Management Guide-to-Practice2012.

67. Nursing BCAPP. Telephone Consultation Protocol: Constipation. 2006.

68. Scotland N. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines2014 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/symptom-control/Nausea-and-Vomiting.aspx.

69. Connolly M, Larkin P. Managing constipation: a focus on care and treatment in the palliative setting. Br J Community Nurs. 2012;17(2):60, 2-4, 6-7.

70. Agency BCC. Management of Constipation - draft. Suggestions for dealing with constipation - draft: British Columbia Cancer Agency.

71. Ontario CC. How to manage your constipation. Cancer Care Ontario; 2016.

72. Paolini CA, Family Medicine DvoG. Symptoms management at the end of life. J Am Osteopath Assoc. 2001;101(10):609-15.

73. Beckwith C. Evidence Based Symptom Control in Palliative Care: Constipation in Palliative Care Patients. 2000.

74. Ontario CC. Constipation Symptoms in Adults with Cancer Algorithm. In: (Algorithm) BC-C, editor. 2012.

75. Esper P, Heidrich D. Symptom clusters in advanced illness. Semin Oncol Nurs. 2005;21(1):20-8.

76. Dean M, Harris J-D, Regnard C. Symptom Relief in Palliative Care. 2nd ed. Seattle: Radcliffe Publishing; 2006.

77. Fallon M, O'Neill B. ABC of palliative care. Constipation and diarrhoea. BMJ. 1997;315(7118):1293-6.

78. Cadd A, Keatinge D, Henssen M, O'Brien L, Parker D, Rohr Y, et al. Assessment and documentation of bowel care management in palliative care: incorporating patient

preferences into the care regimen. J Clin Nurs. 2000;9(2):228-35.

79. Candy B, Jones L, Larkin PJ, Vickerstaff V, Tookman A, Stone P. Laxatives for the management of constipation in people receiving palliative care. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015(5):CD003448.

80. Pitlick M, Fritz D. Evidence about the pharmacological management of constipation, part 2: implications for palliative care. Home Healthc Nurse. 2013;31(4):207-18.

81. Program CHRPC. Bowel Care Protocol for Palliative Care Patients. 2003.

82. Santucci G, Battista V. Methylnaltrexone for opioid-induced constipation in patients at the end of life. Int J Palliat Nurs. 2015;21(4):162, 4.

83. Fallon M. Constipation in cancer patients: prevalence, pathogenesis, and cost-related issues. Journal of Pain [Internet]. 1999; 3(1):[3-7 pp.].

84. Su Y, Zhang X, Zeng J, Pei Z, Cheung RT, Zhou QP, et al. New-onset constipation at acute stage after first stroke: incidence, risk factors, and impact on the stroke outcome. Stroke. 2009;40(4):1304-9.

85. Bouras EP, Tangalos EG. Chronic constipation in the elderly. Gastroenterol Clin North Am. 2009;38(3):463-80.

86. Iovino P, Chiarioni G, Bilancio G, Cirillo M, Mekjavic IB, Pisot R, et al. New onset of constipation during long-term physical inactivity: a proof-of-concept study on the immobility-induced bowel changes. PLoS One. 2013;8(8):e72608.

87. Doron S, Snydman DR. Risk and safety of probiotics. Clin Infect Dis. 2015;60 Suppl 2:S129-34.

88. Pham M, Lemberg DA, Day AS. Probiotics: sorting the evidence from the myths. Med J Aust. 2008;188(5):304-8.

89. Caresearch. Bowel Management2017. Available from: https://www.caresearch.com.au/caresearch/tabid/1738/Default.aspx.

90. palliativedrugs.com. Palliative Care Formulary 2014 [5th ed:[Available from: www.palliativedrugs.com.

91. Carsearch. Laxatives2017. Available from: https://www.caresearch.com.au/caresearch/tabid/744/Default.aspx.

92. Sykes N. Emerging evidence on docusate: commentary on Tarumi et al. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;45(1):1.

93. Committee NCE. Management of Constipation in Adult Patients Receiving Palliative Care: An Roinn Slainte Department of Health; Nov 2015 [10:[Available from: http://health.gov.ie/wp-content/uploads/2016/01/ConstipationV9forweb.pdf.

94. Droney J, Ross J, Gretton S, Welsh K, Sato H, Riley J. Constipation in cancer patients on morphine. Support Care Cancer. 2008;16(5):453-9.

95. Committee A. Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease. Guidelines & Protocols [Internet]. 2011.

96. Neron A. Constipation and Fecal Impaction: Apes; 2009.

97. Wee B, Adams A, Thompson K, Percival F, Burslem K, Jobanputra M. How much does it cost a specialist palliative care unit to manage constipation in patients receiving opioid therapy? J Pain Symptom Manage. 2010;39(4):644-54.

98. Siemens W, Gaertner J, Becker G. Advances in pharmacotherapy for opioid-induced constipation - a systematic review. Expert Opin Pharmacother. 2015;16(4):515-32.

99. Micromedex. Drugs that cause constipation. Truven Health Analytics Inc; 2017.

100. Committee GPA. Part 2: Pain and Symptom Management Constipation2017.

101. Drugdex. Lactulose. Truven Health Analytics; 2016.

102. Phendopharm. LAX-A-Day (polyethylene glycol 3350 powder for oral solution). 2011.

103. Ahmedzai SH, Boland J. Constipation in people prescribed opioids. BMJ Clin Evid. 2010;2010.

104. Clark K, Currow DC. Response to “A cross-sectional study of constipation and laxative use in advanced cancer patients: insights for revision of current practise”. Support Care Cancer. 2012;20(12):3027-8; author reply 31.

105. Mendoza J, Legido J, Rubio S, Gisbert JP. Systematic review: the adverse effects of sodium phosphate enema. Aliment Pharmacol Ther. 2007;26(1):9-20.

106. Mehta N, O’Connell K, Giambrone GP, Baqai A, Diwan S. Efficacy of methylnaltrexone for the treatment of opiod-induced constipation: a meta-analysis and systematic review. Postgrad Med. 2016;128(3):282-9.

107. Pharmaceuticals S. Relistor2012:[66 p.].

108. Mehta S, Cook D, Devlin JW, Skrobik Y, Meade M, Fergusson D, et al. Prevalence, risk factors, and outcomes of delirium in mechanically ventilated adults. Crit Care Med. 2015;43(3):557-66.

109. AB A. Movantik2014:[29 p.].

110. Hospice V. Bowel Management Guide. In: Scale VBP, editor.: Victoria Hospice Society; 2006.

111. health NIo. Bristol Stool Form Scale. Informa Healthcare; 1997.

112. Health NIo. Stool Diary. Informa Health; 1997.

113. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

114. Microlax product information. Available from: https://www.microlax.ca/products/microlax#active-ingredients-each-5ml-tube-contains

115. Health Canada: Recalls and safety alerts. Available at: http://www.healthycanadians.gc.ca/recall-alert-rappel-avis/hc-sc/2010/14087a-eng.php

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# NAUSEA & VOMITING

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Nausea** is the unpleasant subjective sensation of being about to vomit. It may occur in isolation or in conjunction with other gastrointestinal symptoms (e.g., vomiting)[1] and/or autonomic symptoms (e.g., pallor, cold sweat, salivation).[2] **Vomiting** is the forceful expulsion of the gastric contents through the mouth or nose.[2]

## PREVALENCE

Nausea and vomiting affects 40-60% of those receiving palliative care.[2-5]

## IMPACT

Nausea and vomiting can be profoundly distressing for both patients and families, decreasing their quality of life.[2-5] They may also delay active treatments such as chemotherapy.

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of nausea and vomiting) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Nausea and Vomiting Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[32]

| **M**nemonic Letter | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **O**nset | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **P**rovoking /Palliating | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Q**uality | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? Do you vomit or just feel nauseated? Does it change when you change position? |
| **R**egion/Radiation | Not applicable |
| **S**everity | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? |
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

### Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

- Assess for signs of dehydration, jaundice, infection (e.g., fever) or drug toxicity.
- Neurological exam: assess for signs of a cranial lesion or raised intracranial pressure.
- Abdominal examination: assess for tenderness, organomegaly, ascites.
- +/- Rectal examination.

### Diagnostics: consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

#### Possible investigations are guided by the findings from the history and examination

- Blood work: CBC and differential, calcium, glucose, renal and liver function.
- Urine culture.
- Abdominal imaging: X-ray, ultrasound, CT/MRI.
- Endoscopy.

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of nausea and vomiting in palliative care)

Nausea and vomiting (NV) are separate but related symptoms present in many life-limiting conditions. Gastric stasis and chemical disturbance are the most common causes but the etiology is often multifactorial and may be difficult to establish.[9]

Underlying causes can be classified into 6 broad groups.[2, 8, 9] (**See** Underlying causes of nausea and vomiting in palliative care **for more detailed causes.**)

- **C**hemical
- **C**ortical
- **C**ranial
- **V**estibular
- **V**isceral or serosal
- **G**astric Stasis (impaired gastric emptying)

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Use cause determination, knowledge of emetogenic pathways, and a structured approach to guide antiemetic selection.[10, 11]
- Use the first line drug recommended for the most likely cause of the symptom. **Refer to** Underlying causes of nausea and vomiting in palliative care **for drug selection and dosages.**
- A single antiemetic is sufficient in the majority of patients.[13]
- Monitor for symptom resolution and adverse effects for 48 hours. **Use** Management of nausea and vomiting titration algorithm **to guide further steps.**
- If symptoms persist, prescribe a regular antiemetic with different antiemetic to be given as needed.[2, 8, 9, 14]

## Step 4 | Interventions

### Legend for use of bullets

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬟ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological interventions

Non-pharmacological interventions provide their best relief for mild and moderate nausea and vomiting. In severe symptoms, their role is adjunctive to medications.

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

- ⬟ Meticulous attention to **oral care**; watch for signs of oral thrush. **Prevent constipation**.[15, 16]
- ⬟ **Keep air and room fresh**; eliminate strong odors. [17]
- ⬟ **Increase oral intake** from ice chips, to clear fluids, to full fluids then to solid food as tolerated; Involve Clinical Dietician and/or other health disciplines as required.

- **Aromatherapy**: peppermint or ginger oils reduce cancer related NV in small studies.[2]

### Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

- Use of **acupuncture or acupressure** wrist bands. [15]
- Offer **clinically assisted hydration** (IV or SC) if there is overall benefit or if functional status is high. Watch for fluid overload. Dying patients require lower volumes for hydration.[9]

## Pharmacological interventions (refer to Medications for management of nausea and vomiting, Nausea and vomiting management algorithm and Nausea and vomiting extra resources or assessment tools for more detailed information)

### Routes of Administration

- Oral administration is preferred.[2, 15] Rectal may be considered.
- Parenteral medication (IV/SC) may be considered if the patient has vomiting, suspected malabsorption or gastric stasis.[2, 15] After 3 days, consider converting to oral administration except in cases of mechanical intestinal obstruction.[14]
- When switching routes of administration (such as oral to SC or IV) consider a bioavailability dosing adjustment. **See** Nausea and vomiting management algorithm, and monitor response and adverse effects.

### Low levels of distress (patient rating of 1 to 3/10)

- Mild levels may respond to non-pharmacological actions.
- Use the first-line drug for the most likely symptom cause. **Refer to** Underlying causes of nausea and vomiting in palliative care **for first, second and third line drug selection.**
- Treat regularly for 48 hours, providing an additional PRN antiemetic drug.[9, 10, 12]

## Moderate level of distress (patient rating of 4 to 6/10)

- Select the drug based on presumed etiology.
- If cause is unknown (10-25% of patients)[10, 18] or due to multiple factors (25-62%),[3, 10, 18, 19] initial antiemetic choices are:

    a) Metoclopramide: treats common causes of nausea, e.g., gastric stasis, partial bowel obstruction.[9] **Avoid use in *complete* bowel obstruction.**

    b) Haloperidol: treats chemical disturbances, another common cause of nausea.

    c) Methotrimeprazine: a broad acting receptor antagonist.[7]

## Severe distress (patient rating of 7 to 9/10)

- Urgently assess cause and initiate appropriate drug treatment/interventions.
- If inadequate control of severe nausea and vomiting within the first 48 hours, consider further management including:

    a) Hospitalization, if required.

    b) Consultation with palliative care physician.

        - Further antiemetic titration drugs or options, including the combining of antiemetics which have a different or broader action, may be considered.

## Refractory Nausea and Vomiting[15]

- May requires a consultation with a palliative care specialist.
- Prior to referral, professionals may wish to review if:
  - An appropriate antiemetic has been chosen, at optimal dose, and given by the appropriate route (often non-oral due to compromised oral absorption) for an adequate time period.[15]
  - Continued vomiting is an obstruction; duodenal/gastric outflow or high small bowel.[15]

## Practice Points for Antiemetic Pharmacological Management

- Antiemetics tend to suppress vomiting more readily than nausea; an increase of the antiemetic dose may improve nausea control.[18]
- Haloperidol and methotrimeprazine have long elimination half-lives (13-35, 15-30 hours),[11] reaching steady state in about 5 days. Once or twice daily dosing frequency may then be possible to improve dosing convenience and to minimize adverse effects from accumulation.
- Combining antiemetics aims to block several, but not overlapping, emetic pathways:
  - Initially, use of a single antiemetic drug up to maximum tolerated dose is preferable.
  - Single broader spectrum drugs such as methotrimeprazine and olanzapine have affinity at many receptors and may be as effective as, and easier for patients to handle than, multiple simultaneous antiemetics; may also minimize drug interactions.[11, 19]
  - When combining antiemetics, polypharmacy risks are greater, as are adverse effects such as sedation and anti-cholinergic effects; monitor for overlapping toxicities.[20, 21]
  - Avoid combinations with antagonistic actions as effectiveness of either is at risk:
    - Prokinetic agents such as metoclopramide are potentially antagonized by anticholinergics (e.g., dimenhydrinate, scopolamine, hyoscine).[2, 8, 9, 11, 12]
    - Use combinations with different receptor affinities, e.g., dimenhydrinate and haloperidol,[11] or haloperidol with a 5HT3 receptor antagonist such as ondansetron.[19]

- Corticosteroids may improve nausea caused by increased ICP (related to intracranial tumors), hypercalcemia of malignancy, malignant pyloric stenosis[2] or visceral causes (**see** Underlying causes of nausea and vomiting in palliative care); may also reverse partial bowel obstructions.
- Marijuana lacks controlled clinical efficacy studies; nabilone is an antiemetic alternative.[1]
- Opioid-induced nausea lacks evidence of a preferred antiemetic choice.[22] However, use of an antiemetic may help, thus increasing compliance with analgesic especially for patients sensitive to many drugs.
- Nausea might be minimized by switching opioids or route of administration.[22]

## Patient and family education

- Explain that a combination of strategies may be needed, often due to multiple triggers.[1, 8]
- Teach how to use non-oral medications and non-pharmacological methods.[2]
- Encourage patients to continue analgesic medication as pain can make nausea worse.[15]
- Offer tools to keep track of symptoms, medications taken and effectiveness.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF NAUSEA AND VOMITING

## Resources specific to nausea and vomiting

- BC Cancer Agency Symptom Management Guidelines: Nausea

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/11.%20Nausea%20and%20Vomiting.pdf

- BC Guidelines: Nausea and vomiting

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_nausea.pdf

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Nausea and vomiting

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/wp-content/uploads/downloads/2015/01/Nausea-Vomiting-Jan-2015.pdf

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-

program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

*Additional resources for management of nausea and vomiting continued on next page*

➡ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

### Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➡ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➡ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➡ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)

- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## MEDICATIONS FOR NAUSEA AND VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE[6, 9,23-25]

| Chemical Cause | Key Features[2, 6, 7, 13, 20] | Antiemetic of Choice | Adverse Effects‡ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Drugs**<br>e.g., steroids, opioids<br>**Chemotherapy**<br>**Metabolic**<br>e.g., hypercalcemia<br>**Toxins**<br>e.g., infection | Symptoms of drug toxicity or underlying disease.<br>Nausea as predominant symptom.<br>Nausea not relieved by vomiting.<br>Delirium (suggests primary metabolic cause or metabolic derangement secondary to vomiting).<br>Polydipsia and polyuria (suggests hypercalcemia or hyperglycemia). | 1st line: Haloperidol<br>0.5 to 1.5 mg PO/SC Q8H or<br>1.5 to 5 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br>2nd line: Methotrimeprazine<br>3.125 to 6.25 mg PO/SC Q8H or<br>6.25 to 25 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br>3rd line: Ondansetron<br>4 to 8 mg PO/SC/IV or<br>16 to 24 mg CSCI per 24 hours | QTc prolongation risk.<br>Extrapyramidal symptoms (uncommon).<br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Sedating at 12.5 mg per day and above.[26]<br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Constipation 11%[27] (refer to Constipation guideline)<br>Avoid IV ondansetron when using IV metoclopramide.[23,24] |
| **Cortical Cause** | **Key Features** | **Antiemetic of Choice** | **Adverse Effects‡** |

*Medications...vomiting related to underlying cause continued on continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS...VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE *CONTINUED*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Anxiety**<br>**Pain**<br>**Previous nausea experience**<br>**Emotional factors** | Psychological or physical distress.<br>Anticipatory nausea and vomiting.[13] | 1st line: Lorazepam<br>0.5 to 1mg sublingual QID PRN<br>2nd line: Methotrimeprazine<br>3.125 to 6.25 mg PO/SC Q8H or<br>6.25 to 25 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br>3rd line: Cannabinoids<br>Nabilone 0.25 to 2 mg PO BID<br>Medicinal cannabis[25] | Sedation.<br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Sedating at 12.5 mg per day and above.[26] |
| **Cranial Cause** | **Key Features** | **Antiemetic of Choice** | **Adverse Effects‡** |

*Medications...vomiting related to underlying cause continued on continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS...VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE *CONTINUED*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Raised intracranial pressure (ICP)**<br>**Meningeal infiltration**<br>**Whole brain radiotherapy** | Headache +/- cranial nerve signs, especially in the morning.<br><br>Vomiting without nausea.<br><br>Changes to vision and/or personality.<br><br>Depressed consciousness (raised ICP).<br><br>N&V in response to sensory stimulation (sights/sounds/ smells) | 1st line: Dimenhydrinate<br>50 mg PO/SC/PR Q4H to Q8H or<br>150 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br><br>1st line: Add Dexamethasone 8 mg daily up to 8 mg bid PO/ SC if raised ICP<br><br>2nd line: Haloperidol<br>0.5 to 1.5 mg PO/SC Q8H or<br>1.5 to 5 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br>3rd line: Methotrimeprazine<br>3.125 to 6.25 mg PO/SC Q8H or<br>6.25 to 25 mg CSCI per 24 hours | Sedation.<br><br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Extrapyramidal symptoms (uncommon).<br><br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Sedating at 12.5 mg per day and above. |
| **Vestibular Cause** | **Key Features** | **Antiemetic of Choice** | **Adverse Effects‡** |

*Medications...vomiting related to underlying cause continued on continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS...VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE *CONTINUED*

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Drugs<br>e.g., opioids<br><br>Motion sickness<br><br>Tumor<br>e.g., cerebellar, acoustic neuroma, cranial metastasis | Symptoms are movement related.<br><br>Less common cause of nausea and vomiting. | 1st line: Dimenhydrinate<br>50 mg PO/SC/PR Q8H or 150mg CSCI per 24 hours<br><br>2nd line: Scopolamine Transdermal<br>1 to 2 patches applied to skin every 72 hours<br><br>3rd line: Methotrimeprazine<br>3.125 to 6.25 mg PO/SC Q8H<br>6.25 to 25 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br><br>Prochlorperazine 5-10 mg PO Q8H | Sedation.<br><br>Anticholinergic effects, e.g., dry mouth.<br><br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Sedating at 12.5 mg per day and above.[26] |

*Medications...vomiting related to underlying cause continued on continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS...VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE *CONTINUED*

| Visceral or Serosal Cause | Key Features | Antiemetic of Choice | Adverse Effects‡ |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Bowel obstruction**<br>**Severe constipation**<br>**Liver capsule stretch**<br>**Ureteric distention**<br>**Mesenteric metastases**<br>**Pharyngeal stimulation** (difficult expectoration) | Vomiting undigested food hours after ingestion (gastric outlet obstruction).<br>Abdominal pain and altered bowel habit (intestinal obstruction).<br>Pain may occur with oral intake.<br>Vomitus may be large volume progressing from stomach contents, to bile to fecal matter (intestinal obstruction). | 1st line: Dimenhydrinate<br>50 mg PO/SC Q8H or<br>150 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br>2nd line: Methotrimeprazine<br>3.125 to 6.25 mg PO/SC Q8H<br>6.25 to 25 mg CSCI per 24 hours | Sedation.<br>QTc prolongation risk.<br>Sedating at 12.5 mg per day and above.[26] |

*Medications...vomiting related to underlying cause continued on continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS...VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE *CONTINUED*

| Gastric Stasis Cause | Key Features | Antiemetic of Choice | Adverse Effects‡ |
|---|---|---|---|
| Drugs<br>e.g., opioids, tricyclics<br><br>**Tumor ascites**<br>**Hepatomegaly**<br>**Autonomic dysfunction**<br>**Tumor infiltration** | Impaired gastric emptying.<br>Epigastric pain, fullness, acid reflux, early satiety, flatulence, hiccup.<br>Intermittent nausea relieved by vomiting. | 1st line: Metoclopramide*<br>10 mg PO TID or QID before meals or<br>30 to 40 mg CSCI per 24 hours<br>Higher doses should usually not be exceeded.[24]<br>2nd line: Domperidone*<br>10 mg PO TID<br>Health Canada recommends a maximum of 30 mg daily.[23] | QTc prolongation risk.<br>Extrapyramidal symptoms.[28]<br><br>QTc prolongation risk.[28] |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

*Adjust/monitor dosing in patients with renal dysfunction, avoid in complete bowel obstruction

‡QTc prolongation risk known to occur for domperidone, haloperidol, ondansetron, methotrimeprazine and is a conditional risk for metoclopramide use. Per crediblemeds.org/

Drug coverage and cost information available from: https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2.pdf

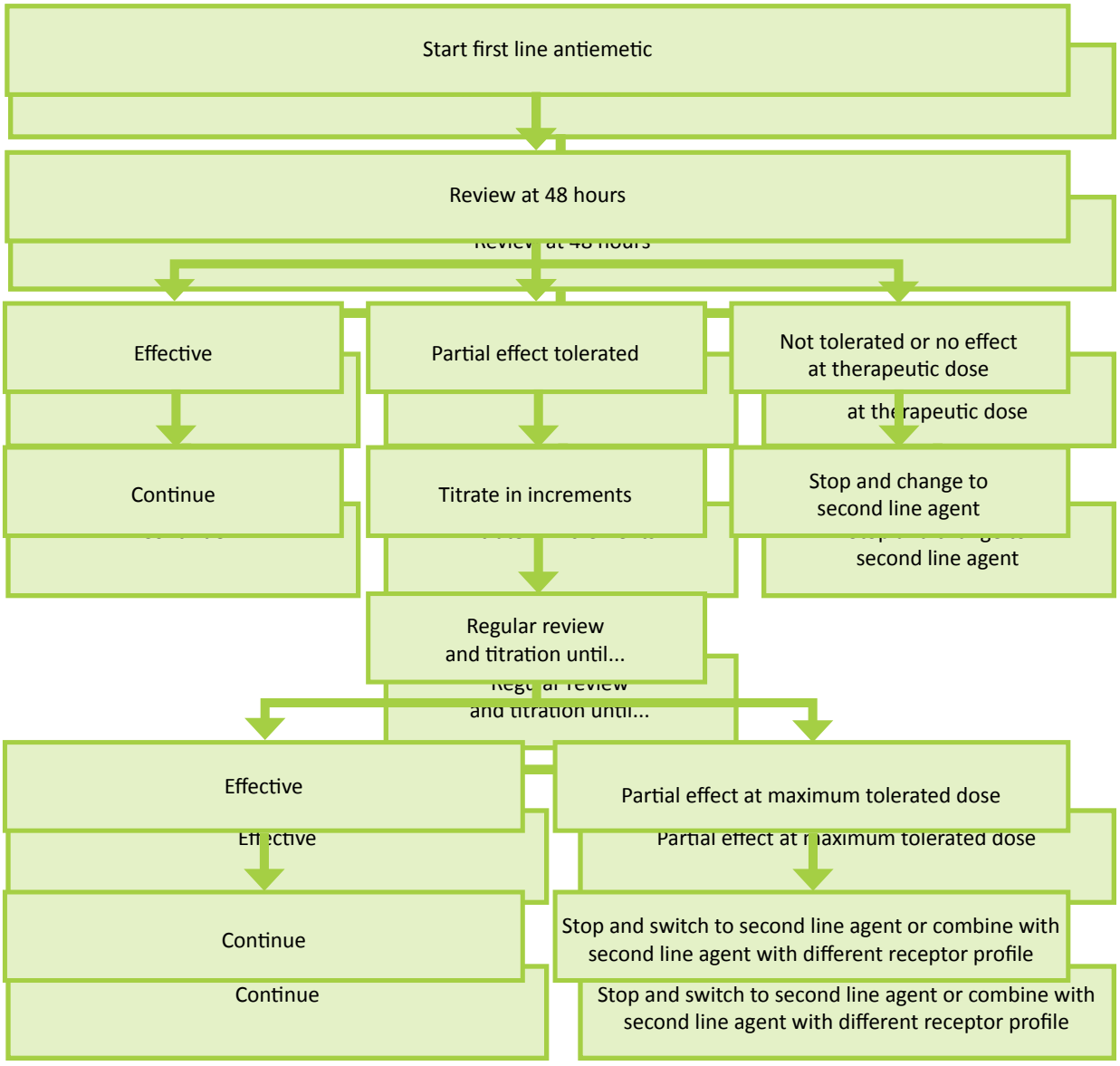
Consult most current product monograph for full drug information and adverse effects: https://health-products.canada.ca/dpd-bdpp/index-eng.jsp

## MEDICATIONS...VOMITING RELATED TO UNDERLYING CAUSE *CONTINUED*

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## NAUSEA AND VOMITING MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM - TITRATION[9]



BC Centre for Palliative Care

# NAUSEA AND VOMITING EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

## Antiemetics Oral Bioavailability's, Parenteral Dosing Adjustment[14, 21, 23,30]

| Drug | Oral (PO) Bioavailability | Possible/Suggested Dosing Adjustment when switching from Oral to Subcutaneous or IV route of Administration‡ |
|---|---|---|
| Dimenhydrinate | Not available* | Unknown, possibly by 50-100% |
| Haloperidol | 60 - 70 % | Reduce by 50-100 % |
| Lorazepam | 93 % | None |
| Metoclopramide | 50 - 80 % | Possibly reduce by 50-100 % |
| Methotrimeprazine | 20 - 40% | Reduce by 50% |
| Ondansetron | 56 - 71 % | None |
| Olanzapine | 60 % | Possibly reduce by 50-100 % |

*Dimenhydrinate is a 53 to 56% component of diphenhydramine[30] and the latter has a 42% oral bioavailability.[14]

‡The need to adjust dosing is poorly studied for these antiemetics, while use of small doses may partially preclude dosing adjustments for oral to parenteral dosing.[31] Studies to guide rationale dosage reduction when changing between oral and parenteral routes with antiemetics are lacking, however known oral bioavailability data and some expert opinion suggest that dose adjustments may need to be considered and therapy individualized.

## NAUSEA & VOMITING REFERENCES


1. Fabbro ED, Bruera E, Savarese D, M,F. Palliative Care: Assessment and management of nausea and vomiting. 2016 [cited 2016 Dec 15th]. Available from: https://www.uptodate.com/contents/palliative-care-assessment-and-management-of-nausea-and-vomiting?source=search_result&search=Palliative%20Care:%20assessment%20and%20management%20of%20nausea%20and%20vomiting&selectedTitle=1~150.

2. Chow K, Cogan D, Mun S. Nausea and Vomiting. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. 4th edition. [1-31]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

3. Ferrell B, Coyle N. Textbook of Palliative Nursing. 2nd ed. Oxford University Press I, editor. New York2006.

4. Glare P, Miller J, Nikolova T, Tickoo R. Treating nausea and vomiting in palliative care: a review. Clin Interv Aging. 2011;6:243-59.

5. Naeim A, Dy SM, Lorenz KA, Sanati H, Walling A, Asch SM. Evidence-based recommendations for cancer nausea and vomiting. J Clin Oncol. 2008;26(23):3903-10.

6. Collis E, Mather H. Nausea and vomiting in palliative care. BMJ: British Medical Journal. 2015;351:1-11.

7. Fraser Health. Hospice Palliative Care Program. Symptom Guidelines. Nausea and Vomiting. 2006 [Available from: www.fraserhealth.ca/media/14FHSymptomGuidelinesNausea.pdf.

8. Harris DG. Nausea and vomiting in advanced cancer. Br Med Bull. 2010;96:175-85.

9. Glare PA, Dunwoodie D, Clark K, Ward A, Yates P, Ryan S, et al. Treatment of Nausea and Vomiting in Terminally Ill Cancer Patients. Drugs. 2008;68(18):2575-90.

10. Dean M, Harris JD, Regnard C, Hockley J. Fatigue, drowsiness, lethargy and weakness. Symptom Relief in Palliative Care. Oxford, United Kingdom: Radcliffe Publishing; 2006. p. 101-8.

11. Twycross R, Wilcock A, Dean M, Kennedy B. Canadian Palliative Care Formulary. Canadian Edition ed: palliativedrugs.com; 2010.

12. NHS Scotland: Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines. Nausea and Vomiting.2014 [cited

2017 Dec 15th]:[1-14 pp.]. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/symptom-control/Nausea-and-Vomiting.aspx.

13. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Nausea and Vomiting. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; [1-6]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

14. Twycross R, Wilcock A. Palliative Care Formulary. PCF4. 4th ed2011.

15. Hardy JR, O'Shea A, White C, Gilshenan K, Welch L, Douglas C. The efficacy of haloperidol in the management of nausea and vomiting in patients with cancer. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2010;40(1):111-6.

16. Stephenson J, Davies A. An assessment of aetiology-based guidelines for the management of nausea and vomiting in patients with advanced cancer. Support Care Cancer. 2006;14(4):348-53.

17. Hardy JR, Glare P, Yates P, Mannix K. Palliation of nausea and vomiting. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 5th Edition.

18. Lichter I. Nausea and Vomiting in Patients with Cancer. Pain and Palliative Care. 1996;10(1):207-20.

19. Ang SK, Shoemaker LK, Davis MP. Nausea and vomiting in advanced cancer. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2010;27(3):219-25.

20. Downing G, M. Wainwright, W. Victoria Hospice Society. Learning Centre for Palliative Care. Medical Care of the Dying. 4th ed. Downing G, M. Wainwright, W., editor2006.

21. Ladd L. Nausea in Palliative Care. Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing. 1999:67-70.

22. Laugsand EA, Kaasa S, Klepstad P. Management of opioid-induced nausea and vomiting in cancer patients: systematic review and evidence-based recommendations. Palliat Med. 2011;25(5):442-53.

23. Domperidone Maleate - Association with Serious Abnormal Heart Rhythms and Sudden Death (Cardiac Arrest) - For Health Professionals: Health Canada; 2015 [Available from: http://healthycanadians.gc.ca/recall-alert-rappel-avis/hc-sc/2015/43423a-eng.php

24. Product Monograph: APO-METOCLOP. Metoclopramide Hydrochloride Tablets Apotex Ontario: APOTEX INC; 2014 [cited 2017 June 15th].

25. BC Guidelines: Part 2: Pain and Symptom Management. Nausea and Vomiting 2017 [cited 2017 Feb 22nd]. Available from: http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines.

26. Black I. Nausea and Vomiting. 2016 [cited 2016 Nov 13th]. 4th edition: Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=2.

27. Drugdex evaluations: Ondansetron [cited 2017 June 17]. Available from: www.micromedex.com (subscription required).

28. Credible Meds. A Trusted Partner Providing Reliable Information On Medicines. [cited 2017 June 14th]. Available from: www.crediblemeds.org.

29. Knott L, Henderson R. Nausea and vomiting in palliative care. 2016 [Available from: https://patient.info/doctor/nausea-and-vomiting-in-palliative-care.

30. Vella-Brincat J, Macleod AD. Palliative Medicine. 2004;18(3):195-201 Haloperidol in palliative care. [cited 2017 June 27]. Available from https://evidencebasedpractice.osumc.edu/Documents/Guidelines/HaloperidolPalliativeCare.pdf

31. Waitemata District Health Board. Medication and administration practices. 1D Palliative Care Protocols. 2006. [cited 2017 June 27] Available from http://www.waitematadhb.govt.nz/assets/Documents/health-professionals/palliative-care/Haloperidol-PalliativeCareJun16.pdf 31. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care]

32. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# DYSPHAGIA

# DYSPHAGIA

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Dysphagia** is defined as difficult swallowing and is typically classified as **oropharyngeal** or **esophageal**[1-3]; both may result in coughing, choking, or a sensation of choking, regurgitation and aspiration.

Oropharyngeal or transfer dysphagia is characterized by difficulty initiating a swallow. This may be accompanied by a sensation of residual food remaining in the pharynx.[2]

Esophageal dysphagia is difficulty swallowing several seconds after initiating a swallow followed by a sensation of food getting stuck in the esophagus when the food bolus fails to easily transverse the esophagus.[2, 3]

## PREVALENCE

Swallowing disorders are part of the natural process at the end of life, irrespective of the etiology.[4] Dysphagia in the geriatric population is estimated at 10-15%.[1] Oropharyngeal dysphagia in patients with dementia may be as high as 93%.[5] High-risk groups include: persons who have suffered a cardiovascular accident (25-40%); persons with Parkinson's disease (50-80%),[3] and advanced multiple sclerosis (34%).[5] More than 70% of esophageal cancer patients have experienced dysphagia at time of diagnosis.[3]

## IMPACT

Dysphagia carries a high risk of aspiration and respiratory complications, malnourishment and dehydration and, as a result, poorer survival than people without dysphagia.[3, 6] Chronic dysphagia can be both frustrating and frightening for patients. Aspiration may cause pneumonia, fevers, malaise, shortness of breath and, in rare cases, death[2, 5]; choking causes distress for both patient and care providers alike. Dysphagia may lead to social isolation and fear of choking to death in public. Dysphagia is a pivotal symptom that can prompt goals of care to become more focused on palliation.[5]

# STANDARD OF CARE

## Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of dysphagia) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

### Dysphagia Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[35]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What foods or fluids are more difficult to swallow? Which ones are easier? What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? Does changing position help? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Not applicable |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom (e.g. nausea, cough, dyspnea)? |

## Dysphagia Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V *continued*

| | |
|---|---|
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? How is this affecting your intake of food and fluid? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? What is the cultural or spiritual significance of food in your family? |

## Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

- Investigations include taking a history and examining the oral cavity, head, neck, and supraclavicular region.
- Check for oropharyngeal thrush which can predispose to candida esophagitis.
- Neurologic examination includes testing of all cranial nerves involved in swallowing (V, VII, IX, XI, and XII).[9]

## Diagnostics: consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

- Investigations are conducted in alignment with prognosis, patient condition and goals of care conversations[2, 7, 8] . Focused instrumental evaluation can involve videofluoroscopic or endoscopic evaluation of swallowing or barium swallow conducted by a qualified professional.

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care

Dysphagia etiologies are multifactorial. Many progressive diseases lead to unsafe and inefficient swallowing: see below. Further, there are 160 known medications with dysphagia specified as a potential adverse effect.[5] **(See** Possible pharmacological causes or contributors to dysphagia in palliative care **for a list of medication causes.)**

### Other causes of dysphagia[3]

### Oropharyngeal

- **Structural:** malignancy, enlarged thyroid, Zenker's diverticulum
- **Neurological:** CVA, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, brainstem tumours, bulbar poliomyelitis, multiple sclerosis, Parkinsonism, neuropathy (diabetes, alcohol, cachexia), dementias
- **Myopathic:** dermatophytosis, muscular dystrophy, polymyositis, myasthenia gravis, thyroid disease,
- **Iatrogenic:** medications that result in a myopathy or that inhibit saliva (**See** Possible pharmacological causes or contributors to dysphagia in palliative care **for examples**), radiotherapy to the head and neck, surgical procedures of the head and neck
- Poor dentition
- Anxiety

### Esophageal

- **Neuromuscular:** achalasia, oesophageal spasm, scleroderma, systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel diseases
- **Vascular:** ischaemic esophagus
- **Structural:** stricture secondary to reflux, diverticula, malignancy (esophageal, gastric), benign tumours, external vascular compression, mediastinal masses, foreign body, mucosal injury secondary to infections, allergic disorders (eosinophilic oesophagitis), mucosal injury secondary to skin disorders (pemphigus vulgaris, pemphigoid, epidermolysis bullosa dystrophica)

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Management strategies differ depending upon whether the problem is localized to the oropharynx or the esophagus, the chronicity of the underlying disease, and the overall prognosis.[3]
- The goals of therapy are to mitigate risk and discomfort, and to maximize quality of life, for the patient.[1]
- Anticipate swallowing difficulty with approaching end of life. Lessen the swallowing burden by stopping medications where possible, temporarily or permanently
- Review medication profile for those drugs that may cause or contribute to impaired swallowing; eliminate any that are unnecessary.
  See (Possible pharmacological causes or contributors to dysphagia)
- Ensure alternate administration routes available to maintain symptom control
- Minimize dysphagia difficulties using medication administration strategies
- Optimize care by involvement of an interdisciplinary team:
  - A qualified dysphagia professional which may be an SLP, OT, RD to provide expert assessment and management of communication and swallowing disorders [10]
  - A dietician to provide expert food and fluids selection and consistency modification. [4, 11]

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological interventions

#### Interventions which may be available in the home and residential care facilities

- **Consultation** with a qualified dysphagia professional, if available
- **Safe swallowing** methods
- **Environmental** adaptations
- **Medication** administration adaptations
- Positioning
- Consistent **oral care**
- Oral **feeding** modifications
- Compensatory **postural changes**

## Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

- **Malignant esophageal strictures** can be palliated with a combination of dilatation, stent placement, and adjuvant radiotherapy or brachytherapy. Patient prognosis and goals of care determines selection.[3] Consult with an oncologist.

## Pharmacological interventions

No pharmacological agents have evidence to directly benefit oropharyngeal swallowing function.[4, 5, 13]
Medications can contribute to or cause dysphagia by affecting all stages of swallowing[14] and are one of the most readily corrected causes of dysphagia.[15]

- Drugs may induce adverse effects that include: dry mouth, impaired muscle function, loss of sensory control, taste and smell impairment, sedation/ confusion, immunosuppression (predisposing to fungal, viral bacterial infections), and gastric reflux from a lowered esophageal sphincter tone or sialorrhea.
- Avoid polypharmacy.[13]
- Avoid drugs that may contribute to impaired swallowing. ( Possible pharmacological causes or contributors to dysphagia in palliative care)
- Modify medication route to use alternate routes. Can be required in up to 50% of patients,[16] e.g., options include changing to:
    - Commercially available liquids, orodispersible tablets, or specialty compounded suspensions.
    - Transdermal, parenteral, sublingual, buccal, rectal and intranasal routes.
- Consult pharmacist for assistance with changes, product suitability, availability, costs.[11]
- Improve oral medication administration strategies.

- Support use of drugs for symptoms frequently occurring in dysphagia patients:
  - Gastric reflux may benefit from the use of proton pump inhibitors, antacids, prokinetics for dismotility, or barrier therapy with sulcralfate.[3, 5]
  - Use opioids or NSAIDs for temporary pain from esophageal stent insertion.[17, 18]

### Patient and family education

- Describe benefits and risks of various feeding options in order to make informed decisions.[5]
- Explain risks and consequences of aspiration pneumonia while recognizing some will choose to eat at risk.
- Describe any specific diet, rationale, manner of food modification and positioning techniques that best serve the patient.[5]
- Promote slow, small bolus sizes to prevent choking.
- Emphasize the importance of allowing patients to enjoy their intake with minimal restrictions in last days of life.[12]
- Continue to include the patient in the social and spiritual aspect of gatherings around food, especially culturally significant feasts or spiritual practices.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF DYSPHAGIA

### Resources specific to dysphagia

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians: Dysphagia

➡ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- BC Cancer Agency Nutritional Guidelines for Symptom Management - Dysphagia

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nutrition-site/Documents/Symptom%20management%20guidelines/Dysphagia.pdf

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➡ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- Canadian Thoracic Society - Canadian Respiratory Guidelines

➡ https://cts-sct.ca/guideline-library/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## POSSIBLE PHARMACOLOGICAL CAUSES OR CONTRIBUTORS TO DYSPHAGIA IN PALLIATIVE CARE[1, 5, 14, 19-27]

As there is only *an association* of risk of contributing to swallowing impairment, and no evidence from randomized placebo-controlled studies, often consider stopping drugs temporarily or permanently. Consult other healthcare professionals, such as pharmacists, for review and information assistance.

| **Medication-Induced Esophageal Mucosa Injury** | **Drug Induced Adverse Effects** | |
|---|---|---|
| • Alendronate | Dry Mouth | Loss of Sensory Control |
| • Alcohol | • Anticholinergics (e.g., atropine) | • Local anesthetics |
| • Aripiprazole | • Antidepressants | Peristalsis, Motility Reduction |
| • ASA | • Antiemetics | • Anticholinergics |

*Possible pharmacological causes or contributors to dysphagia in palliative care continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## POSSIBLE PHARMACOLOGICAL CAUSES OR CONTRIBUTORS TO DYSPHAGIA IN PALLIATIVE CARE

*CONTINUED*

| **Medication-Induced Esophageal Mucosa Injury** | **Drug Induced Adverse Effects** | |
|---|---|---|
| • Carbamazepine | • Antihistamines | • Antihistamines |
| • Clindamycin | • Bronchodilators | • Antipsychotics |
| • Chemotherapy (e.g., vincristine) | • Diuretics | Sedation or Confusion |
| • Corticosteroids (e.g., prednisone) | • Supplemental oxygen | • Antiepileptics |
| • Dantrolene | Esophageal Sphincter Tone Lowered (increases reflux) | • Anxiolytics (e.g., lorazepam) |
| • Digoxin | | • Benzodiazepines |
| • Doxycycline | • Anticholinergics | • Opioids |
| • Everolimus | • Benzodiazepines | • Skeletal muscle relaxants |
| • Iron containing products | • Calcium channel blockers | Sialorrhea (Saliva Excess) |
| • Macrolide antibiotics | • Isosorbide dinitrate | • Ketamine[23] |
| • Morphine | • Opioids | • Olanzapine (6%) |
| • NSAIDs e.g., ibuprofen | • Theophylline | • Risperidone (1-10%) |
| • Olanzapine | Immunosuppression | • Ziprasidone (4%) |
| • Oxybutynin | • Azathioprine | Taste or Smell Impairment |
| • Phenobarbital | • Chemotherapy (e.g., paclitaxel) | • Oxybutynin (1-5%) |
| • Potassium chloride | • Corticosteroids, oral inhaled (increased risk of candidiasis) | • Phenytoin |
| • Selegiline | | • Sunitinib (21%) |
| • Tetracycline (pH of 1.6-3.2) | • Cyclosporine | • Testosterone (5.8% smell) |
| • Trimethoprim-Sulfamethoxazole | Impaired Muscle Function | • Topiramate (2-8%) |
| • Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) | • Anticholinergics | • Zopiclone |

| Medication-Induced Esophageal Mucosa Injury | Drug Induced Adverse Effects | |
|---|---|---|
| | • Antipsychotics | • Phenobarbital |
| | • Corticosteroids (muscle wasting) | |
| | • Skeletal muscle relaxants | |
| | • Neuromuscular blocking agents | |
| | • Statins | |

This table provides examples; up to 160 medications may contribute to swallowing disorders.[14, 20]

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF DYSPHAGIA

Information on medications in included within this document.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering**

**the cost.**

## DYSPHAGIA MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## DYSPHAGIA EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

### Oral Medication Administration Strategies for Dysphagia Patients

| Strategy | Comment |
|---|---|
| **Formulation Assessment** | |
| Switch from an oral capsule formulation to a tablet. | Gelatin capsules are more likely to stick to esophageal mucosa causing ulcerogenic harm (e.g., doxycycline).[27] |
| Pick a suitable tablet size. | 7 to 9 mm reported as the easiest size of tablet to swallow.[28] |
| Switch to multiple, smaller doses of tablets or capsules. | Change from a larger bulky strength to an equal multiple of smaller doses. |
| Switch to a lighter oral formulation (e.g., immediate release). | Sustained release formulations tend to be bulky and prone to harmful lodging in the esophagus.[27] |
| Consider shape of tablet or capsule. | Oval (versus round) may help. Not certain; one study found no difference comparing versus oblong and capsule.[15, 29] |
| Faster dissolving/ disintegrating. | New formulations dissolve or disintegrate in mouth.[27] |
| **Timing of Administration** | |
| Take in the morning. | When you are more likely upright than near bedtime.[15] |
| Take when functioning best. | Best swallowing functioning could be later in the day.[4] |
| Reduce dosing frequency. | Assess if can be given less frequently (e.g., once daily).[27] |
| At least 30 minutes before HS. | Suggested safer taking 30 minutes prior to sleeping.[15] |
| Avoid oral tablet and capsule doses when sleeping. | Less saliva production, esophageal motility when sleeping. Greater risk of immediately lying back down.[15, 27] |

*Oral medication administration strategies for dysphagia patients continued on* next page

## Oral Medication Administration Strategies for Dysphagia Patients *continued*

| | |
|---|---|
| **Positioning** | |
| Sit up when taking the medication. | Sit upright, 45 to 90 degrees for intake, and head upright.[15] |
| Take **at least 10 minutes** before lying down (reclining). | Avoid recumbent position for at least 10 minutes, **safer still 30 minutes**. Improves esophageal medication clearance.[15, 27] |
| Reposition head when swallowing. | For example, chin tuck posture, head tilt. Ask SLP for assistance.[4, 5, 9] |
| **Pre-dose Preparation** | Use a preliminary lubricating swallow/sip of water pre-dose.[27] |
| **At time of administration** | |
| Take with sufficient water. | Give 100 mL (to 250 mL) post-dose. Wet swallows have greater amplitude and duration of contraction than dry.[19, 27] |
| **Other Strategies** | |
| Avoid medication errors. | Medication error rate is much higher (21.1%) in dysphagia patients than others (5.9%). Administer using great care.[30] |
| Switch to a liquid formulation. | To stomach quicker, spares esophagus mucosa from prolonged tablet contact. Ensure consistency not "too thin".[27] |
| Change to a drug with a lower side effect risk, or lower dose. | For example, consider a trial switch to a neuroleptic with a lower anticholinergic effect. Or try lower dose.[27, 31] |
| Shorten length of therapy. | To minimize causation risk. [27] |
| Avoid rushing to crush. | Assess if drug is classified "hazardous" or suitable to crush.[11, 32] |
| Thickeners. | Medication compatibility, absorption effects unknown.[11, 33] |
| Mixing into food (e.g., apple sauce or ice-cream). | Drug-food compatibilities are unknown so when combining with crushed medications, mix and administer immediately.[4] |
| Proactive medication availability planning in event of inability to swallow. | Plan for future non-oral medication options; may need suddenly. At home, palliative drugs kits are helpful, where available.[34] |

*Dysphagia references continued on next page*

## DYSPHAGIA REFERENCES


1. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Dysphagia. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; [1-7].

2. Fass R. Overview of dysphagia in adults 2017 [updated May 23, 2016. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

3. Clark K. Dysphagia, dyspepsia, and hiccup. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 5th edition. [1-16].

4. Goldsmith T, Cohen A. Swallowing disorders and aspiration in palliative care: Assessment and strategies for management. 2016 [updated Jan 06, 2016. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

5. Dahlin CM, Cohen AK. Dysphagia, xerostomia, and hiccups. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 4th edition. [1-51].

6. Parker M, Power D. Management of swallowing difficulties in people with advanced dementia. Nursing Older People. 2013;25(2):26-31 6p.

7. Galmiche JP, Clouse RE, Balint A, Cook IJ, Kahrilas PJ, Paterson WG, et al. Functional esophageal disorders. Gastroenterology. 2006;130(5):1459-65.

8. Trate DM, Parkman HP, Fisher RS. Dysphagia. Evaluation, diagnosis, and treatment. Primary care. 1996;23(3):417-32.

9. Lembo AJ. oropharyngeal dysphagia: Clinical features, diagnosis, and management.: UpToDate; 2015 [Available from: www.uptodate.com.

10. Langmore SE, Grillone G, Elackattu A, Walsh M. Disorders of swallowing: palliative care. Otolaryngologic clinics of North America. 2009;42(1):87-105 19p.

11. Kelly J, D'Cruz G, Wright D. A qualitative study of the problems surrounding medicine administration to patients with dysphagia. Dysphagia. 2009;24(1):49-56.

12. Puntil-Sheltman J. Clinical Decisions Regarding Patients With Dysphagia and Palliative Care. Perspectives on Swallowing & Swallowing Disorders (Dysphagia). 2013;22(3):118-23 6p.

13. Miarons M, Campins L, Palomera E, Serra-Prat M, Cabre M, Rofes L. Drugs Related to Oropharyngeal Dysphagia in Older People. Dysphagia. 2016;31(5):697-705.

14. Goldsmith SR, Cohen AK. Swallowing disorders and aspiration in palliative care: Definition, consequences, pathophysiology, and etiology.: UpToDate; 2016 [updated Jun 14th, 2016; cited 2017 Feb 15th]. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

15. Balzer KM. Drug-Induced Dysphagia. International Journal of MS Care. 2000;2(1):40-50.

16. Mercadante S, Aielli F, Adile C, Ferrera P, Valle A, Fusco F, et al. Prevalence of oral mucositis, dry mouth, and dysphagia in advanced cancer patients. Supportive Care in Cancer. 2015;23(11):3249-55 7p.

17. Kujawski K, Stasiak M, Rysz J. The evaluation of esophageal stenting complications in palliative treatment of dysphagia related to esophageal cancer. Med Sci Monit. 2012.

18. Uthappa MC, Ho SM, Boardman P. Role of Metallic Stents in Palliative Care. Progress in Palliative Care. 2003;11(1):3-9.

19. Tutuian R. Adverse effects of drugs on the esophagus. Best practice & research Clinical gastroenterology. 2010;24(2):91-7.

20. Fusco S, Cariati D, Schepisi R, Ganzetti R, Sestili M, David S, et al. Management of oral drug therapy in elderly patients with dysphagia. Journal of Gerontology and Geriatrics. 2016;64:9-20.

21. Gallagher L, Naidoo P. Prescription drugs and their effects on swallowing. Dysphagia. 2009;24(2):159-66.

22. Drugs That Cause Dysphagia [cited 2017 Feb 12th]. Available from: www.micromedex.com (subscription required for access).

23. Drugs That Cause Sialorrhea. [cited 2017 Feb 18th]. Available from: www.micromedex.com (subscription required for access).

24. Drugs That Cause Taste sense altered.: Micromedex - subscription needed.; [Available from: www.micromedex.com.

25. Drugs That Cause Sense of smell altered. [cited 2017 Feb 18th]. Available from: www.micromedex.com (subscription required for access).

26. Geagea A, Cellier C. Scope of drug-induced, infectious and allergic esophageal injury. Current Opinion in Gastroenterology. 2008;24(4):496-501.

27. O'Neill JL, Remington TL. Drug-induced esophageal injuries and dysphagia. Ann Pharmacother. 2003;37(11):1675-84.

28. Hirani JJ, Rathod DA, Vadalia KR. Orally Disintegrating Tablets: A Review. Tropical Journal of Pharmaceutical Research. 2009;8(2):161-72.

29. Schiele JT, Penner H, Schneider H, Quinzler R, Reich G, Wezler N, et al. Swallowing Tablets and Capsules Increases the Risk of Penetration and Aspiration in Patients with Stroke-Induced Dysphagia. Dysphagia. 2015;30(5):571-82.

30. Kelly J, Wright D, Wood J. Medicine administration errors in patients with dysphagia in secondary care: a multi-centre observational study. Journal of Advanced Nursing. 2011;67(12):2615-27.

31. Dziewas R, Warnecke T, Schnabel M, Ritter M, Nabavi DG, Schilling M, et al. Neuroleptic-induced dysphagia: case report and literature review. Dysphagia. 2007;22(1):63-7.

32. Implications of altering oral solid-dose formulations. Keele University [Available from: http://www.dysphagia-medicine.com/splitting-and-crushing-tablets.html.

33. Appropriate prescibing of thickeners for dysphagia in adults. NHS PrescQIPP [Internet]. May 2015 2017; Bulletin 100:[1-9 pp.]. Available from: https://www.prescqipp.info/thickeners-for-dysphagia/send/169-thickeners-for-dysphagia/1939-bulletin-100-thickeners-for-dysphagia.

34. Yap R, Akhileswaran R, Heng CP, Tan A, Hui D. Comfort care kit: use of nonoral and nonparenteral rescue medications at home for terminally ill patients with swallowing difficulty. J Palliat Med. 2014;17(5):575-8.

35. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# ANOREXIA

# ANOREXIA

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Anorexia** is the loss or absence of appetite[1, 2] leading to reduced caloric intake,[3, 4] resulting in loss of weight and fat tissue.[5, 6] **Cachexia** is the involuntary loss of more than 10% of pre-morbid weight,[1, 7] resulting in loss of muscle, with or without loss of fat.[4, 6, 8-11] It is a chronic hypercatabolic, inflammatory state and cannot be entirely attributed to poor caloric intake.[2, 12] Cachexia is not reversible and may not correlate with anorexia.[1, 8, 13] Anorexia and cachexia are different clinical syndromes and do not always co-exist; however, they often occur together in advanced cancer and serious chronic illness.[6] **Anorexia-cachexia syndrome** (ACS) is a complex, multi-factorial metabolic syndrome[11] characterised by anorexia, cachexia,[14] asthenia, fatigue,[15] functional decline and change in body image.[7]

## PREVALENCE

Anorexia is common among patients with advanced cancer and other life-limiting chronic diseases.[16-18] It occurs in 26% of palliative patients,[19] 66% of cancer patients,[20] and is more common in the elderly. Cachexia occurs in more than 80% of patients with cancer before death[15] and in 12-85% of patients with other conditions.[21-24] It is the main cause of death in more than 20% of patients.[7, 25, 26] Anorexia-cachexia syndrome occurs in up to 86% of cancer patients[27] (particularly lung, pancreas and gastric) and in a variety of chronic diseases, including 10-60% in acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 16-36% in congestive heart failure (CHF), 30-70% in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD),[28, 29] and 30-60% in chronic kidney disease (CKD),[30] rheumatoid arthritis (RA), and dementia.[4, 7, 17, 25, 31-38]

## IMPACT

Anorexia can lead to poor caloric intake and protein-calorie malnutrition; it is reversible when causes are corrected.[6, 39, 40] People assume that anorexia causes cachexia but, in many cases, it is the reverse.[41] Anorexia-cachexia syndrome (ACS) leads to serious physical and functional deficits, increased dependency, and impaired quality of life (QOL).[14, 42] ACS increases risk of hospitalization,[43, 44] may prevent further interventions such as surgery or chemotherapy,[1] and is an indicator of poor prognosis.[7, 18, 45]

The stigma of "wasting" and the symbolism of "feeding as caring" create significant emotional and social distress for both ACS patients and family.[46-48] Patients suffer devastating loss of body image and self-esteem,[15] anxiety and depression,[46] and can withdraw socially. Caregivers become anxious and distressed, feeling helpless and guilty as they perceive their loved one as "starving to death".[1, 49] Well-meaning pressure to eat creates tension and conflict with the person who is unable.[15, 50-54] Forcing food when the body can't handle it creates discomfort and can make other symptoms more difficult to manage.[41]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of anorexia) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

### Step 2 | Assessment

#### Anorexia Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[1]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did your appetite loss begin? How long does it last? How often does it happen? Have you lost weight? |

| | |
|---|---|
| **P**rovoking /Palliating | Have you noticed anything that brings on a loss of appetite? What makes your appetite better? What makes it worse? How have you adjusted the types of food you eat? |
| **Q**uality | How much weight have you lost? Do you have any fatigue, weakness or loss of abilities? Can you describe how you feel when you think about eating? |
| **R**egion/Radiation | Not applicable |
| **S**everity | How severe is your appetite loss? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by your appetite loss? How much weight have you lost over what period of time? Are there other symptoms that accompany your lack of appetite (e.g., nausea, dysphagia, or fatigue)? |
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using to improve your appetite? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing your decreased appetite and/or weight loss? How does this impact your daily activities, ability to function, sleep, your sense of well-being? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What are your expectations? Given that it may not be possible to improve your appetite or reverse weight loss, what is most important to your quality of life? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

Identify risk factors that compromise nutrition access or intake.[18, 71] Disease progression tends to continue with functional decline, increasing fatigue, anorexia, and cachexia.[70] Tests may reduce patient's quality of life.[6] Not necessary to weight patients routinely in last stages of illness.

- Lab tests: CBC, electrolytes, glucose, TSH and serum albumin.[4, 40, 72]

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of anorexia in palliative care)

Anorexia has numerous causes, many of which are reversible**;** anorexia doesn't cause cachexia. Cachexia causes anorexia, which then worsens cachexia.[41]

- Primary causes relate to changes (metabolic and neuroendocrine) directly associated with underlying disease and inflammatory state.
- Secondary contributing factors (fatigue, pain, dyspnea, infection, etc.) lead to weight loss.[33-35, 38, 55-57, 73-76] (**See** Underlying causes of anorexia in palliative care)

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Determine food intake, impact on patient performance, and potential for reversal.[11]
- Identify, and where appropriate with goals of care, treat reversible causes of anorexia.[14, 77] (**See** Underlying causes of anorexia in palliative care) Cachexia is not reversible.[2]
- Offer information and practical advice about nutrition, diet and managing anorexia.[14, 77]
- In early stages, aim to restore or maintain nutritional and functional status.[14, 78]
- In later stages, focus on patient comfort and reducing patient and family anxiety.[77]
- Involve interdisciplinary team including dietician, physiotherapist, occupational therapist, pharmacist, speech and language pathologist, cultural and spiritual care.[6, 77]
- Acknowledge distress about body image, fatigue and functional decline.[14, 77]
- Establish realistic goals.[4]

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬠ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

⬠ **Consultation with dietician (811 HealthLink)** for education and recommended supplements[6]

⬠ **Oral nutrition support** may be helpful early in the disease process.[6] Evidence of effect in COPD patients.[79] No benefit shown in cancer patients.[15, 17, 25, 80, 81]. Consider the cost of nutritional supplements as a potential barrier.

⚠ **Physical exercise** may prevent or slow loss of lean body mass to help patients maintain independence longer.[82] Evidence is insufficient to determine safety or effectiveness in the cancer population. Studies are in progress.[83]

**EPA fish oils** containing omega3 fatty acid. Some studies suggest role to stabilize weight loss and promote weight gain. Poor palatability.[42]

### Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

**Enteral (tube) feeding** may benefit a sub-set of patients when reduced intake is due to structural/functional causes if appetite is intact and if reasonable quality of life. Gastrostomy tubes are preferred to NG tubes; also helps drainage in complete bowel obstruction.[6, 33, 34, 76, 84-89]

**Enteral (tube) feeding** is NOT recommended to manage weight loss in advanced progressive illnesses such as cancer, heart failure, lung failure, cystic fibrosis, multiple sclerosis, motor neuron disease, Parkinson's disease, dementia and AIDS.[90] Evidence does not show improved quality of life, healing, reduced pressure ulcers, enhanced functional capacity, or increased survival[88] in this patient population.

**Total parental nutrition** NOT recommended: small benefit, increased risk of infection, reduced survival.[7]

## Pharmacological interventions

(Refer to Medications for management of anorexia)

### Review causative drugs, objectives

Assess if drugs could be a cause of anorexia, taste or smell alteration.

Stop unnecessary drugs; appropriately consider trial dose reduction/stoppage of suspected drug causes or a switch to drug option of lower anorexic propensity.

Before starting drugs for anorexia, align appetite stimulants with goals of care as they have minimal or no demonstrated influence on quality of life[38, 40, 91-93] and often do not reverse cachexia.[94] Cachexia improvement, even if treated, has limited improvement impact on quality of life,[92] no effect on lean body mass,[38, 40] modest effect on weight gain,[93, 95] does not improve survival.[4, 38, 91, 95]

## Pharmacological management appropriate for secondary contributing symptoms

- Medications can be useful to treat secondary causes of anorexia[5, 6, 40, 96, 97] including: metoclopramide or domperidone for early satiety, nausea/vomiting, gastroparesis; mirtazapine or antidepressants for depression; antifungals for oral or esophageal candidiasis. Refer to Medications for management of anorexia fvor doses.
- Anorexia may also be improved with drug treatment of other secondary symptomatic causes including pain. Refer to other guidelines for management.

## Anorexia Treatment Management

- **Megestrol acetate** - start with 160 mg PO daily; is as effective as higher doses for anorexia.[40, 91, 98] Larger doses may benefit cachexia, up to 800 mg daily.
    - Appetite stimulation demonstrated in advanced cancer and AIDs patients; some effectiveness for COPD, ESRD, and other pathologies.[11, 40, 94]
    - Usually well-tolerated, edema occasionally.[11, 93] Thromboembolism, such as deep vein thrombosis, is infrequent but concerning as has resulted in death.[93, 94, 96] This risk may be greater in elderly with impaired mobility.[99]
- **Corticosteroids** stimulate appetite in 60-80% of patients.[97, 100] Studies show a similar effectiveness to megestrol.[38, 91, 101] Effect can occur within a few days,[97] with a significant effect from 2 up to 8 weeks,[102, 103] but may disappear after 3 to 4 weeks.[102, 104]
- **Stop dexamethasone** trial if up to 4 mg daily dose fails to improve appetite within 7 to 10 days.97, [104, 105] Use beyond 6 to 8 weeks is not recommended as adverse effects dramatically increase with duration of use.[103, 106] Consider megestrol as an alternative.[94, 107]

## Other appetite stimulants

**Cannabinoids** have not shown consistent appetite improvement in studies.[91, 94] Central nervous system side effects limit patient use acceptability.[6]

**Marijuana** stimulates appetite according to anecdotal reports.[40, 91, 108] Review current use regulations as appropriate, such as for medicinal marijuana.[109]

**Mirtazapine**, an antidepressant, may improve appetite and weight in cancer-associated anorexia and is well tolerated; results are limited and use awaits further study.[40, 91, 110]

**Not recommended:** hydrazine sulfate,[91, 94] Eicosapentaenoic acid (or fish oil supplementation),[40, 42, 91, 111] thalidomide[40, 91, 112, 113] combinations of drugs.[11, 40, 91]

## Patient and family education

Teach patients and families about the natural progression of disease[4, 6, 14]:

Explain metabolic abnormalities are causing the anorexia.[1]

Give early nutritional counselling.[1] Some patients may benefit from nutritional supplementation or appetite stimulation but this does not reverse the underlying process.

Gradual reduction in oral intake is a natural part of the illness; it is not starvation.[14, 40]

Give patient permission to eat less and educate family to reduce focus on food.[77] Encourage alternate forms of caring (massage, oral care, reading, presence)

Focus on enjoyment of food within limits of patient ability; encourage social interaction.[14] Include the patient in social gatherings even if they do not feel like eating.

Offer small frequent meals high in calories, attractively presented; favorite foods and rest before meals may be helpful.[40] Tasting can be enjoyable.

Previous dietary restrictions, except those for allergy, may be relaxed.[14]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF ANOREXIA

## Resources specific to Anorexia

- BC Cancer Agency Symptom management guidelines: Anorexia and Cachexia

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/2.%20Anorexia%20and%20Cachexia.pdf

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management: Anorexia and cachexia

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/wp-content/uploads/downloads/2015/01/Anorexia-and-Cachexia-Jan-20151.pdf

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➡ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➡ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-

program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➞ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF ANOREXIA IN PALLIATIVE CARE[4, 11, 77, 90, 114]

| 1. Primary | |
|---|---|
| *Metabolic disturbances* | |
| • Dehydration | • Uremia |
| • Hyperglycemia | • Hypothyroidism |
| • Hypokalemia hypercalcemia | • Cancer by-products (cytokines, tnf, interleukin 1, leptin) |
| *Inflammatory processes* | |
| • Hypercatabolism | • Cachexia |
| • Infection | |
| *Neuro-hormonal effects* | |
| • Gastric stasis | • Early satiety, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, constipation |
| • Malabsorption | |
| *Co-morbid conditions* | |
| • CHF | • Chronic renal failure |
| • COPD | • HIV/AIDS |
| *Concurrent disease* | |
| • Diabetes | • Anal fissure |
| • Hernia | • Anterior mucosal prolapse |
| • Diverticular disease | • Hemorrhoids |
| • Colitis | • Spinal cord injury |
| • Rectocele | • Multiple Sclerosis, ALS |
| *Neurological disorders* | |
| • Cerebral tumors | • Sacral nerve infiltration |
| • Autonomic failure | • Spinal cord involvement/compression |
| Structural /Functional abnormalities | |
| • GI obstruction | • Radiation fibrosis |
| • Dental problems | • Dysphagia (stroke, tumour, dementia) |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF ANOREXIA IN PALLIATIVE CARE *CONTINUED*

| **2. Secondary** | |
|---|---|
| *Uncontrolled symptoms* | |
| • Pain | • Dyspnea |
| • Nausea/vomiting | • Altered taste/ xerostomia |
| • Constipation | • Treatment toxicities (mucositis) |
| *General* | |
| • Advanced age | • Decreased intake |
| • Inactivity | • Low fiber diet |
| • Need for assistance | • Delirium/dementia/memory problems |
| • Depression | • Poor fluid intake |
| • Sedation | • Physical or social impediments |
| • Pelvic tumor mass | • Painful anorectal conditions (anal fissure, hemorrhoids, perianal abscess) |
| **3. Iatrogenic** | |
| **Drugs - drug classes** | **Specific causative examples*** |
| • Antibiotics | Cefazolin, Dactinomycin, Doxycycline, Erythromycin, Metronidazole (1%), Nitrofurantoin, Rifampin, Sulfamethoxazole/Trimethoprim |
| • Anticonvulsants | Clobazam (up to 7%), Clonazepam, Divalproex Sodium (4 to 12%), Levetiracetam (3- 8%), Topiramate (10- 24%), Valproic acid (4- 12%) |
| • Antidepressants | Citalopram (4%), Bupropion (3 to 5%), Doxepin, Fluvoxamine (6%), Fluoxetine (3.8-17%), Nortriptyline, Paroxetine (2-9%), Sertraline (3-11%), Venlafaxine (8-22%) |
| • Antiretrovirals | Abacavir/Lamivudine/Zidovudine, Indinavir (0.5-5.4%), Nelfinavir (<2%), Tenofovir (3-4%) |
| • Antihypertensives | Amlodipine (0.1-1%), Clonidine, Hydralazine, Nadolol (<1%), Sotalol (1.6-2%) |
| • Antiparkinsonian agents | Bromocriptine, (4-5% in Acromegaly, type 2 diabetes), Levodopa/carbidopa (1.2%), Selegiline |
| • Antipsychotics | Haloperidol |
| • Antivirals | Acyclovir (<1%), Ganciclovir (15-19 %) |

*Underlying causes of anorexia in palliative care continued on* next page

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF ANOREXIA IN PALLIATIVE CARE *CONTINUED*

| | |
|---|---|
| • Chemotherapy | Anastrozole (5-7%), Bevacizumab (34 to 43%), Busulfan(IV:85%), Capecitabine (9-26%), Cyclophosphamide, Cytarabine, Dacarbazine, Erlotinib (52%), Etoposide (10-13%), Fludarabine (0 up to 34%), Hydroxyurea, Letrozole (3-5%), Mitomycin (14%), Paclitaxel, Sorafenib (16-29%), Temozolomide (up to 40%), Vincristine |
| • Diuretics | Amiloride (3-8%), Ethacrynic acid, Furosemide, Hydrochlorothiazide (reported at doses of 25 mg or greater) |
| • Gastrointestinal agents | Aprepitant (5%-pediatric), Nabilone (8%) |
| • Hormonal agents | Flutamide (4%) |
| • Opioids | Fentanyl (Transdermal 3-10%, sublingual 1%), Hydromorphone (1-6%), Morphine (5-10%), Tramadol (0.7-5.9 %) |
| • Other | Allopurinol, Amantadine (1-5%), Amiodarone (4-9%), Amphetamine (33%), Colestipol, Cyclobenzaprine (<1 %), Cyclosporine (2% or less), Dextroamphetamine, Donepezil (2-8%), Ethambutol, Famotidine, Flecanide (1-3%), Ketamine, Lithium, Memantine, Metformin, Methylphenidate (5%), Modafinil (4%), Pamidronate (1-12% in malignant hypercalcemia), Pancrelipase (6%), Polystyrene Sulfonate, Rivastigmine (1-6%), Sulfasalazine (33%), Trazodone (up to 3.5%), Zoledronic acid (hypercalcemia of malignancy, 9%; bone metastasis, 22%). |
| • Supplements | Folic acid, Iron (6%) |

If no specific percentage incidence shown for each drug, the known occurrence rate not reported.[114] There are many medications that are reported to cause anorexia.[114] This table above provides some examples. Consult pharmacist if additional assistance is required.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF ANOREXIA

| Drug, Action (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Dexamethasone**† (corticosteroid) | Starting dose: 2 to 4 mg PO or IV/SC daily in AM<br>Maximum dose: 4 to 8 mg PO or IV/SC daily in AM[77, 101] | Onset of appetite stimulation within a few days.[115]<br>**Adverse effects:** candidiasis, fluid retention, gastritis, hypokalemia, hyperglycemia, myopathy, insomnia, impaired wound healing, psychosis.[14, 70, 105] After six weeks of use greater risk of steroid-induced diabetes, proximal myopathy, lipodystrophy (moon face, buffalo hump); after 3 months, of osteoporosis, glaucoma.105 For symptomatic gastroprotection while on corticosteroids, when if medical history suggests need, use a proton pump inhibitor such as pantoprazole or rabeprazole.<br>**Contraindicated** when systemic infection, unless considered to be life-saving and specific anti-infective therapy is employed.[105]<br>**Precautions:** use in patients with psychotic illness (lower dose below 6 mg daily), seizure disorders, hypertension, diabetes.[70]<br>**Dosing:** most expert guidelines suggest up to a daily dose of 4 mg for anorexia with 8 mg daily dose typically only for anorexia with cachexia.[77, 101, 116] Assess for potential drug interactions, particularly anticoagulants, anticonvulsants and anticoagulants. Avoid NSAIDs, as increases peptic ulceration risk 15-fold together.[105]<br>Reduce dose to the minimum effective dose to avoid side effects.[115] |

*Medications for management of anorexia continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF ANOREXIA
*CONTINUED*

| Drug, Action (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Megestrol Acetate**† (progesterone) | Starting dose: 160 mg PO daily<br>Maximum daily dose: 800 mg daily[40, 117] | Onset of appetite stimulation may be up to 2 weeks.[115]<br>**Adverse effects:** Edema, nausea, thromboembolic events, hypertension, breakthrough uterine bleeding, skin photosensitivity, insomnia, hypogonadism.[11, 115, 116] After 3 months of use, cushingoid changes and muscle catabolism.98 Megestrol may cause symptomatic suppression of the hypothalamic pituitary adrenal axis; in the presence of serious infection, surgery, or trauma, this complication may be life-threatening if not anticipated and treated.[91]<br>Avoid during the first four months of pregnancy and while nursing infants.[118, 119]<br>**Precautions:** use with caution if a history of thrombophlebitis in patients over 65 years of age who may have impaired renal function (as megestrol is substantially excreted via kidney).[118, 119] Monitor for possible adrenal cortical suppression if used continuously for prolonged periods.[118, 119]<br>**Dosing:** 160 mg daily for anorexia. For anorexia-cachexia in cancer patients, optimal dose is 400 to 800 mg.[11] Higher doses have no additional benefit.116 Reduce dose gradually if used for more than 3 weeks to minimize risk of adrenal suppression.[14, 100] Liquid is indicated at 400 to 800 mg daily for the treatment of anorexia, cachexia, or an unexplained significant weight loss in patients with AIDS.[118] |

*Medications for management of anorexia continued on next page*

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF ANOREXIA
*CONTINUED*

| Drug, Action (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Metoclopramide** (prokinetic) | 5 to 10 mg PO TID to QID or IV/SC[14] | Can help early satiety, delayed gastric emptying, gastroparesis or nausea.<br>Give 30 minutes prior to meals.[14]<br>Adjust appropriately for reduced renal function, drug clearance.<br>Metoclopramide itself has no appetite stimulating properties.[101, 111]<br>Not shown to improve caloric intake.[91] |
| **Domperidone** (prokinetic) | 10 mg PO TID to QID | Can help early satiety, delayed gastric emptying, gastroparesis or nausea.<br>Give 30 minutes prior to meals.[14]<br>Adjust appropriately for reduced renal function, drug clearance.<br>Prokinetics not shown to directly stimulating appetite. |
| **Mirtazapine** (antidepressant) | 7.5 to 30 mg PO daily at bedtime[5, 120] | Adjust appropriately for reduced renal function, drug clearance.<br>Well tolerated,[120, 121] causes sedation (give dose at bedtime)<br>Use for anorexia is an off-label indication. When studied for anorexia, dose increased after 3 to 7 days, patients responded in the first few weeks.[121] |
| **Nystatin** (antifungal) | 5 mL PO QID x 14 days | For treatment of oral candidiasis. Swish and swallow. Avoid food and water for a while after dose is given to improve contact effectiveness. |

†Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily, ODT = oral dissolving tablet, CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

*Additional resources for management of anorexia continued on* next page

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF ANOREXIA
*CONTINUED*

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan (http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdf) provides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## ANOREXIA MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## ANOREXIA EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

No extra resources or assessment tools Included in this document.

## ANOREXIA REFERENCES


1. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]
2. Alexander K, Goldberg J, Korc-Grodzicki B. Palliative Care and Symptom Management in Older Patients with Cancer. Clin Geriatr Med. 2016;32(1):45-62.
3. Bruera E. ABC of palliative care. Anorexia, cachexia, and nutrition. BMJ. 1997;315(7117):1219-22.
4. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Anorexia/ Cachexia. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2014.
5. Buduhan V, Cashman R, Cooper E, Levy K, Sherriff C, Syme A. Anorexia and Cachexia. Symptom Management Guidelines: BC Cancer Agency; 2010.
6. Wholihan D. Anorexia and cachexia. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2015.
7. Del Fabbro E, Dalal S, Bruera E. Symptom control in palliative care--Part II: cachexia/anorexia and fatigue. J Palliat Med. 2006;9(2):409-21.
8. Fearon K, Strasser F, Anker SD, Bosaeus I, Bruera E, Fainsinger RL, et al. Definition and classification of cancer cachexia: an international consensus. Lancet Oncol. 2011;12(5):489-95.
9. Blum D, Strasser F. Cachexia assessment tools. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2011;5(4):350-5.
10. Evans WJ, Morley JE, Argilés J, Bales C, Baracos V, Guttridge D, et al. Cachexia: a new definition. Clin Nutr. 2008;27(6):793-9.
11. Baracos V, Watanabe S, Fearon K. Aetiology, classification, assessment, and treatment of the anorexia-cachexia syndrome. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2015.
12. McGeer AJ, Detsky AS, O'Rourke K. Parenteral nutrition in cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy: a meta-analysis. Nutrition. 1990;6(3):233-40.
13. Davis MP, Dickerson D. Cachexia and anorexia: cancer's covert killer. Support Care Cancer. 2000;8(3):180-7.

14. Scotland N. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines2014 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/symptom-control/Nausea-and-Vomiting.aspx.

15. Reid J, McKenna H, Fitzsimons D, McCance T. The experience of cancer cachexia: a qualitative study of advanced cancer patients and their family members. Int J Nurs Stud. 2009;46(5):606-16.

16. Molfino A, Laviano A, Rossi Fanelli F. Contribution of anorexia to tissue wasting in cachexia. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2010;4(4):249-53.

17. Tsiompanou E. Treatments for anorexia and cachexia in chronic disease and palliative care. 2010.

18. Kittelson SM, Elie MC, Pennypacker L. Palliative Care Symptom Management. Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am. 2015;27(3):315-39.

19. Laugsand EA, Kaasa S, de Conno F, Hanks G, Klepstad P, EAPC RSCot. Intensity and treatment of symptoms in 3,030 palliative care patients: a cross-sectional survey of the EAPC Research Network. J Opioid Manag. 2009;5(1):11-21.

20. Tran H-P. Palliative Care: Anorexia & Cachexia.

21. Wallengren O, Lundholm K, Bosaeus I. Diagnostic criteria of cancer cachexia: relation to quality of life, exercise capacity and survival in unselected palliative care patients. Support Care Cancer. 2013;21(6):1569-77.

22. von Haehling S, Anker SD. Cachexia as a major underestimated and unmet medical need: facts and numbers. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle. 2010;1(1):1-5.

23. Ebner N, Springer J, Kalantar-Zadeh K, Lainscak M, Doehner W, Anker SD, et al. Mechanism and novel therapeutic approaches to wasting in chronic disease. Maturitas. 2013;75(3):199-206.

24. von Haehling S, Lainscak M, Springer J, Anker SD. Cardiac cachexia: a systematic overview. Pharmacol Ther. 2009;121(3):227-52.

25. Bennani-Baiti N, Davis MP. Cytokines and cancer anorexia cachexia syndrome. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2008;25(5):407-11.

26. Baracos V. What medications are effective in improving anorexia and weight loss

in cancer? In: Goldstein N, Morrison S (eds). 2013. In: Evidence-Based Practice in Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Philadelphia: Elsevier Press; [153-7].

27. Tuca A, Jimenez-Fonseca P, Gascón P. Clinical evaluation and optimal management of cancer cachexia. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2013;88(3):625-36.

28. Bruera E, Dev R. Overview of managing common non-pain symptoms in palliative care UpToDate2017 [Available from: https://www.uptodate.com/contents/overview-of-managing-common-non-pain-symptoms-in-palliative-care?source=search_result&search=Overview%20of%20managing%20common%20non-pain%20symptoms%20in%20palliative&selectedTitle=1~150.

29. Kotler DP. Cachexia. Ann Intern Med. 2000;133(8):622-34.

30. Kalantar-Zadeh K, Norris KC. Is the malnutrition-inflammation complex the secret behind greater survival of African-American dialysis patients? J Am Soc Nephrol. 2011;22(12):2150-2.

31. Freeman LM. The pathophysiology of cardiac cachexia. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2009;3(4):276-81.

32. Watson M, Lucas L, Hoy A, Wells J. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Care. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2009.

33. Syme A, Fimrite A. Gastrointestinal. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Medical Care if the Dying. Victoria, B.C. Canada: Victoria Hospice Society Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006.

34. Walker P, Bruera E. Cachexia Syndrome. In: MacDonald N, Oneschuk D, Hagen N, Doyle D, editors. Palliative Medicine - A care based manual. New York: Oxford University Press Inc; 2005.

35. Fainsinger RL PJ. Clinical assessment and decision-making in cachexia and anorexia. In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. New York, New York: Oxford University Press Inc.; 2005.

36. Lissoni P, Paolorossi F, Tancini G, Barni S, Ardizzoia A, Brivio F, et al. Is there a role for melatonin in the treatment of neoplastic cachexia? Eur J Cancer. 1996;32A(8):1340-3.

37. Bruera E, Roca E, Cedaro L, Carraro S, Chacon R. Action of oral methylprednisolone in terminal cancer patients: a prospective randomized double-blind study. Cancer Treat Rep. 1985;69(7-8):751-4.

38. Salacz M. Megestrol Acetate for Cancer Anorexia Cachexia 2003 [Available from: http://www.aahpm.org/cgi-bin/wkcgi/view?status=A%20&search=256&id=504&offset=0&limit=25.

39. Del Ferraro C, Grant M, Koczywas M, Dorr-Uyemura LA. Management of Anorexia-Cachexia in Late Stage Lung Cancer Patients. J Hosp Palliat Nurs. 2012;14(6).

40. Bruera E, Dev R. Palliative Care: Assessment and management of anorexia and cachexia: UpToDate; 2017 [

41. Murray K, Shadd J. Anorexia and Cachexia at End of Life. Room 217 Foundation; 2011.

42. Dewey A, Baughan C, Dean T, Higgins B, Johnson I. Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA, an omega-3 fatty acid from fish oils) for the treatment of cancer cachexia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007(1):CD004597.

43. Morishita S, Kaida K, Tanaka T, Itani Y, Ikegame K, Okada M, et al. Prevalence of sarcopenia and relevance of body composition, physiological function, fatigue, and health-related quality of life in patients before allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Support Care Cancer. 2012;20(12):3161-8.

44. Capuano G, Gentile PC, Bianciardi F, Tosti M, Palladino A, Di Palma M. Prevalence and influence of malnutrition on quality of life and performance status in patients with locally advanced head and neck cancer before treatment. Support Care Cancer. 2010;18(4):433-7.

45. Reuben DB, Mor V, Hiris J. Clinical symptoms and length of survival in patients with terminal cancer. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148(7):1586-91.

46. Rhondali W, Chisholm GB, Daneshmand M, Allo J, Kang DH, Filbet M, et al. Association between body image dissatisfaction and weight loss among patients with advanced cancer and their caregivers: a preliminary report. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;45(6):1039-49.

47. Oberholzer R, Hopkinson JB, Baumann K, Omlin A, Kaasa S, Fearon KC, et al. Psychosocial effects of cancer cachexia: a systematic literature search and qualitative analysis. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;46(1):77-95.

48. Del Río MI, Shand B, Bonati P, Palma A, Maldonado A, Taboada P, et al. Hydration

and nutrition at the end of life: a systematic review of emotional impact, perceptions, and decision-making among patients, family, and health care staff. Psychooncology. 2012;21(9):913-21.

49. Raijmakers NJ, Clark JB, van Zuylen L, Allan SG, van der Heide A. Bereaved relatives' perspectives of the patient's oral intake towards the end of life: a qualitative study. Palliat Med. 2013;27(7):665-72.

50. (NCI) NCI. Nutrition in Cancer Care (PDQ) 2011 [Available from: http://www.concer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/supportivecare/nutrition/Patient/page1.

51. Radbruch L, Elsner F, Trottenberg P, Strasser F, Fearon K. Clinical practice guidelines on cancer cachexia in advanced cancer patients. Aachen: Department of Palliative Medicine/European Palliative Care Research Collaborative; 2010.

52. Wilkes G, Smallcomb K. Nutritional Issues Facing Lung Cancer Individuals. In: Haas, ML., editor. 2nd ed ed. Sudburry, Massachuesetts: Jones and Bartlett; 2010.

53. Network NCC. Guidelines 2012 [cited 2017 May 2017]. Available from: http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/categories_of_consensus.asp.

54. Ferrell BR, Coyle N. The nature of suffering and the goals of nursing. Oncol Nurs Forum. 2008;35(2):241-7.

55. Tomíska M, Tomisková M, Salajka F, Adam Z, Vorlícek J. Palliative treatment of cancer anorexia with oral suspension of megestrol acetate. Neoplasma. 2003;50(3):227-33.

56. Syme A. Cachexia - Anorexia Syndrome. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Victoria, BC Canada: Victoria Hospice Society Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006.

57. ONS. Measuring Oncology Nursing-Sensitive Patient Outcomes: Evidence Based Summary: Nutritional Status 2005. Available from: http://www.ons.org/outcomes/Clinical/pdf/NutritionOverview.pdfAvailable from: https://www.ons.org/search?search_api_views_fulltext=outcomes%20Clinical%20pdf%20NutritionSummary.pdf.

58. Bruera E, Sweeney C. Pharmacological interventions in cachexia and anorexia. In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. New York, New York: Oxford University Press Inc.; 2005.

59. Milne AC, Potter J, Avenell A. Protein and energy supplementation in elderly people at risk from malnutrition. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2002(3):CD003288.

60. Home Parenteral Nutrition and Cancer - Selection Criteria for Patients with Advanced Cancer 2002 [Available from: http://www.palliative.org/PC/ClinicalInfo/Clinical%20Practice%20Guidelines/PDF%20files/Home%20Parenteral.pdf.

61. M E. Artificial Nutrition and Hydration: Clinical Issues: Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing; 2003.

62. Del Fabbro E, Hui D, Dalal S, Dev R, Nooruddin ZI, Noorhuddin Z, et al. Clinical outcomes and contributors to weight loss in a cancer cachexia clinic. J Palliat Med. 2011;14(9):1004-8.

63. Kwang AY, Kandiah M. Objective and subjective nutritional assessment of patients with cancer in palliative care. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2010;27(2):117-26.

64. von Gruenigen VE, Courneya KS, Gibbons HE, Kavanagh MB, Waggoner SE, Lerner E. Feasibility and effectiveness of a lifestyle intervention program in obese endometrial cancer patients: a randomized trial. Gynecol Oncol. 2008;109(1):19-26.

65. Bruera E, Chadwick S, Cowan L, Drebit D, Hanson J, MacDonald N, et al. Caloric intake assessment in advanced cancer patients: comparison of three methods. Cancer Treat Rep. 1986;70(8):981-3.

66. Hoekstra J, Vernooij-Dassen MJ, de Vos R, Bindels PJ. The added value of assessing the 'most troublesome' symptom among patients with cancer in the palliative phase. Patient Educ Couns. 2007;65(2):223-9.

67. Sze FK, Chung TK, Wong E, Lam KK, Lo R, Woo J. Pain in Chinese cancer patients under palliative care. Palliat Med. 1998;12(4):271-7.

68. Lunney JR, Lynn J, Foley DJ, Lipson S, Guralnik JM. Patterns of functional decline at the end of life. JAMA. 2003;289(18):2387-92.

69. Ma C, Bandukwala S, Burman D, Bryson J, Seccareccia D, Banerjee S, et al. Interconversion of three measures of performance status: an empirical analysis. Eur J Cancer. 2010;46(18):3175-83.

70. Seow H, Barbera L, Sutradhar R, Howell D, Dudgeon D, Atzema C, et al. Trajectory of performance status and symptom scores for patients with cancer during the last six months of life. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(9):1151-8.

71. Del Fabbro E, Jatoi A, Davis M, Fearon K, di Tomasso J, Vigano A. Health professionals' attitudes toward the detection and management of cancer-related anorexia-cachexia syndrome, and a proposal for standardized assessment. J Community Support Oncol. 2015;13(5):181-7.

72. Leuenberger M, Kurmann S, Stanga Z. Nutritional screening tools in daily clinical practice: the focus on cancer. Support Care Cancer. 2010;18 Suppl 2:S17-27.

73. Strasser F. Nutrition. In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. New York, New York: Oxford University Press Inc.; 2005.

74. McMillian D, Wigmore S, Fearon K, O'Gorman P, Wright C, McArdie C. A prospective randomized study of megestrol acetate and ibuprofen in gastrointestional cancer patients with weight loss.: British Journal of Cancer; 1999.

75. Paolini CA, Family Medicine DvoG. Symptoms management at the end of life. J Am Osteopath Assoc. 2001;101(10):609-15.

76. Yeomans W. Hydration and Nutrition in Palliative Care. The Canadian Journal of CME. 1997:111-5.

77. Board NF. Guideline for the Management of Anorexia/ Cachexia Syndrome in Palliative Care. Fife Palliative Care Guidelines: Fife Area Drug and Theraprutics Committee; 2009.

78. Holder H. Nursing management of nutrition in cancer and palliative care. Br J Nurs. 2003;12(11):667-8, 70, 72-4.

79. Baracos V. What therapeutic strategies are effective in improving anorexia weight loss in non-malignant disease? In: Goldstein N, Morrison S (eds). Philadelphia: Elsevier Press; 2013.

80. Baldwin C. Nutritional support for malnourished patients with cancer. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2011;5(1):29-36.

81. Löbbe VA. Nutrition in the last days of life. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2009;3(3):195-202.

82. Maddocks M, Murton AJ, Wilcock A. Therapeutic exercise in cancer cachexia. Crit Rev Oncog. 2012;17(3):285-92.

83. Grande AJ, Silva V, Riera R, Medeiros A, Vitoriano SG, Peccin MS, et al. Exercise for

cancer cachexia in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014(11):CD010804.

84. Skelly RH. Are we using percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy appropriately in the elderly? Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2002;5(1):35-42.

85. Cline D. Nutrition issues and tools for palliative care. Home Healthc Nurse. 2006;24(1):54-7.

86. Hoda D, Jatoi A, Burnes J, Loprinzi C, Kelly D. Should patients with advanced, incurable cancers ever be sent home with total parenteral nutrition? A single institution's 20-year experience. Cancer. 2005;103(4):863-8.

87. Brard L, Weitzen S, Strubel-Lagan SL, Swamy N, Gordinier ME, Moore RG, et al. The effect of total parenteral nutrition on the survival of terminally ill ovarian cancer patients. Gynecol Oncol. 2006;103(1):176-80.

88. Locher JL, Bonner JA, Carroll WR, Caudell JJ, Keith JN, Kilgore ML, et al. Prophylactic percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube placement in treatment of head and neck cancer: a comprehensive review and call for evidence-based medicine. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2011;35(3):365-74.

89. Miller RG, Jackson CE, Kasarskis EJ, England JD, Forshew D, Johnston W, et al. Practice parameter update: the care of the patient with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis: drug, nutritional, and respiratory therapies (an evidence-based review): report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2009;73(15):1218-26.

90. Payne C, Wiffen PJ, Martin S. Interventions for fatigue and weight loss in adults with advanced progressive illness. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;1:CD008427.

91. Loprinzi C, Jatoi A. Pharmacologic management of cancer anorexia/cachexia: UpToDate; 2017 [

92. Maltoni M, Nanni O, Scarpi E, Rossi D, Serra P, Amadori D. High-dose progestins for the treatment of cancer anorexia-cachexia syndrome: a systematic review of randomised clinical trials. Ann Oncol. 2001;12(3):289-300.

93. Ruiz Garcia V, López-Briz E, Carbonell Sanchis R, Gonzalvez Perales JL, Bort-Marti S. Megestrol acetate for treatment of anorexia-cachexia syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013(3):CD004310.

94. Network CPCK. Appetite Stimulants. 2017.

95. Bruera E, Dev R. Overview of managing common non-pain symptoms in palliative care: UpToDate; 2017 [

96. Palliative Care. In: Oncology NCPGi, editor.: National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2017.

97. Black I. Cough 2016 [4th ed:[Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=9&searchstring=anorexia.

98. Twycross R, Wilcock A. Progestogens. 2011. In: Palliative Care Formulary [Internet]. UK 4th ed.

99. Marshall LL. Megestrol acetate therapy in geriatric patients: case reviews and associated deep vein thrombosis. Consult Pharm. 2003;18(9):764-73.

100. Loprinzi CL, Kugler JW, Sloan JA, Mailliard JA, Krook JE, Wilwerding MB, et al. Randomized comparison of megestrol acetate versus dexamethasone versus fluoxymesterone for the treatment of cancer anorexia/cachexia. J Clin Oncol. 1999;17(10):3299-306.

101. Yavuzsen T, Davis MP, Walsh D, LeGrand S, Lagman R. Systematic review of the treatment of cancer-associated anorexia and weight loss. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(33):8500-11.

102. Navari RM, Brenner MC. Treatment of cancer-related anorexia with olanzapine and megestrol acetate: a randomized trial. Support Care Cancer. 2010;18(8):951-6.

103. Miller S, McNutt L, McCann MA, McCorry N. Use of corticosteroids for anorexia in palliative medicine: a systematic review. J Palliat Med. 2014;17(4):482-5.

104. Scotland HI. Anorexia/ Cachexia. In: Guidelines SPC, editor.: NHS Scotland; 2014.

105. Twycross R, Wilcock A. Systemic corticosteroids. 2011. In: Palliative Care Formulary [Internet]. UK 4th ed.

106. Lundström SH, Fürst CJ. The use of corticosteroids in Swedish palliative care. Acta Oncol. 2006;45(4):430-7.

107. Bruera E, Dev R. Overview of managing common non-pain symptoms in palliative care: UpToDate; 2016

108. Appetite Loss - HIV/AIDS [Available from: http://www.cannabis-med.org/studies/study.php?search=&sort=diagnosis.

109. Wazny LD, Nadurak S, Orsulak C, Giles-Smith L, Tangri N. The Efficacy and Safety of Megestrol Acetate in Protein-Energy Wasting due to Chronic Kidney Disease: A Systematic Review. J Ren Nutr. 2016;26(3):168-76.

110. Abstracts of the 8th World Research Congress of the European Association for Palliative Care (EAPC): Lleida, Spain 5-7 June 2014. Palliat Med. 2014;28(6):538-913.

111. Ontario CC. Symptom Management Pocket Guides: Loss of Appetite: Action Cancer Ontario; 2012.

112. Reid J, Mills M, Cantwell M, Cardwell CR, Murray LJ, Donnelly M. Thalidomide for managing cancer cachexia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012(4):CD008664.

113. Yennurajalingam S, Willey JS, Palmer JL, Allo J, Del Fabbro E, Cohen EN, et al. The role of thalidomide and placebo for the treatment of cancer-related anorexia-cachexia symptoms: results of a double-blind placebo-controlled randomized study. J Palliat Med. 2012;15(10):1059-64.

114. Drugs That Cause Cough. Truven Health Analytics Inc.; 2017.

115. Black I. Palliative Care Guidelines Anorexia, Cachexia & Asthenia2016 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=2.

116. Salacz M. Megestrol Acetate for Cancer Anorexia/Cachexia: Palliative Care Network of Wisconsin; 2016 [Available from: https://www.mypcnow.org/blank-bn2th.

117. Loprinzi CL, Michalak JC, Schaid DJ, Mailliard JA, Athmann LM, Goldberg RM, et al. Phase III evaluation of four doses of megestrol acetate as therapy for patients with cancer anorexia and/or cachexia. J Clin Oncol. 1993;11(4):762-7.

118. Megace suspension approved. AIDS Patient Care STDS. 2005;19(9):618-9.

119. Megace OS. Montreal, Canada: Bristol-Myers Squibb Canada; 2016.

120. Shibahara H, Ito T, Uematsu N, Imai E, Nishimura D. [Low-dose mirtazapine improved nausea and appetite loss during S-1 therapy]. Gan To Kagaku Ryoho. 2012;39(1):143-5.

121. Riechelmann RP, Burman D, Tannock IF, Rodin G, Zimmermann C. Phase II trial of mirtazapine for cancer-related cachexia and anorexia. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2010;27(2):106-10.

122. Anorexia-Cachexia FAACT (Version 4). 2007.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# DEHYDRATION

# DEHYDRATION

## DEFINITION

**Dehydration** is intracellular water depletion with hypernatremia (hyperosmolality); it usually presents with symptoms of thirst, anorexia, nausea/vomiting, fatigue and irritability. Physical findings may include lethargy, confusion, muscle twitching and hyperreflexia. **Volume depletion** is the loss of intravascular water (with varying sodium levels) and presents with diminished skin turgor/capillary refill and orthostatic hypotension and dizziness.[1] **Artificial hydration** (AH) involves the provision of water or electrolyte solutions by any route other than the mouth. This can be achieved by intravenous, subcutaneous (hypodermoclysis)[2] and dermal (dermoclysis).[3] **Overhydration** related symptoms include: bronchial secretions, respiratory congestion, pleural effusion, nausea/vomiting, ascites, peripheral edema.[4]

## PREVALENCE

In older adults, dehydration is one of the 10 most frequent diagnoses for hospitalization. In frail elderly people, it is the most common fluid and electrolyte disorder.[5] In one study of palliative patients with cancer diagnosis, hypernatremia was present in 55% of clients; hypercalcemia was present in 23%.[6]

## IMPACT

In the clinical setting, it is not uncommon for distressed patients who are unable to eat or drink (and their families) to emotionally plead with healthcare providers to intervene.[7, 8] When patients with a life-limiting illness are unable to adequately take in nutrition and fluids, the issue of perceived starvation and eventual death rises to the forefront, resulting in stress on both health providers and families. Dehydration causes few symptoms for patients who are comatose and comfortable, but can contribute to a delirium.[9] During the dying process, patients may have diminished awareness, which may decrease their perception of thirst and hunger as they naturally progress toward coma and death.[3]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of dehydration) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

### Step 2 | Assessment

#### Dehydration Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[22]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did you start to feel dehydrated? Have you experienced it before? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like (dry mouth / skin, thirst)? Can you describe it? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Not applicable |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **Understanding** | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **Values** | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

## Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

It is often difficult to assess hydration in people with advanced illness; therefore, findings from a variety of observations and assessments are most reliable.[10] **History** – assess appetite, oral intake, associated symptoms (e.g., nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, drowsiness, fatigue, and confusion). **Physical Examination** – assess skin and oral cavity, dry mucous membranes, jugular venous pressure, blood pressure, pulse, temperature, ascites, muscle weakness. Urine may be darker in colour due to dehydration or other factors, such as jaundice.

Note: In severe cachexia, the skin turgor is hard to assess and is often not reliable. Similarly, thirst and edema are not good indicators of hydration status.[10]

## Diagnostics: consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

- May include serum urea, creatinine, sodium, hematocrit, albumin and glucose.

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care

Fluid deficits in terminally ill patients are frequently multifactorial. Regardless of the cause, the end result is total body water depletion and decreased renal function. There are 2 broad categories of fluid deficit disorders which may present separately or together:

- **Dehydration**, which results from total body water depletion.
- **Hypovolemia or volume depletion**, which results from loss of both salt and water, mainly from the extracellular (intravascular) space.[3]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Capable adults have the right to decide for themselves whether to stop eating and drinking and whether or not they would like to withdraw or withhold artificial nutrition and hydration.
- Decisions for patients who lack decision-making capacity should be made in accordance with advance directives and/or persons legally designated by the patient or the Temporary Substitute Decision Maker.[3]
- If the effort to eat and drink becomes too burdensome or is not welcome, the patient should not be pressured to make this effort.[3]
- Dehydration in dying persons is associated with some benefits: reduced urine output with reduced need to void or use catheters; less gastro-intestinal fluid with decreased frequency and severity of edema and ascites; may act as a natural anesthetic for the central nervous system.[8]
- When deciding to initiate or stop hydration, discuss goals of care, risks and benefits along with the patient's preferences.[1]
- In case of uncertainty of the benefits and risks of parenteral hydration in a particular patient, a brief trial with clearly defined goals may be appropriate to initiate, followed by re-assessments of its clinical benefits and harm.[7]

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬠ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

⬠ **Oral intake** is the preferred route as long as it is well tolerated. Popsicles, frozen yogurt, ice chips made from water or fruit juice, and commercial instant breakfast drinks or milkshakes can be offered. Bendable straws and sports bottles can be helpful.[10]

⬠ Dry mouth can be treated with an intensive, every-2-hour **schedule of mouth care**, including hygiene, lip lubrication, artificial saliva and ice chips.[3]

## Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

**Artificial hydration** (AH) - **see** Dyhydration extra resources or assessment tools **for burdens and benefits**

Research does not support that parenteral hydration improves signs of dehydration, survival or quality of life; in temporary, short-term situations, it may alleviate symptoms related to dehydration and decreased mental cognition.[1]

Mixed evidence to support hydration and possible opioid rotation to improve delirium symptoms related to opioid toxicity.

Parenteral AH can be administered through hypodermoclysis (fluid infused into the subcutaneous tissue) or Intravenous. Hypodermoclysis lacks firm evidence of benefit. Trial only for symptomatic dehydration.[15] Refer to your local policies and pre-printed orders if trialing hypodermoclysis.

### Questions re AH decisions include

- Will it prolong survival?
- Will it alleviate symptoms?  Improve quality of life?
- If so, what method of AH is best?[14]
- What are the implications for the patient remaining in their place of choice?

Refer to Dyhydration extra resources or assessment tools for further decision support.

## Pharmacological interventions

**Reduce or remove any drugs, if possible, that may cause or contribute to dehydration** such as diuretics, alcohol, excessive laxative use or lithium which also pose a risk.[16, 17]

**Consider consultation with a pharmacist** when drug-related dehydration problems are suspected such as: Dry mouth (antidepressants, antihistamines, anticholinergics), reduced thirst sensation (antipsychotics), greater sweating (venlafaxine, opioids), or sedation and reduction in judgement (benzodiazepines).[1, 17]

- **Assess risk of drug toxicity** due to fluid loss, or if renal function reduces elimination of drugs or their metabolites.[3]
- Adjust dose to accommodate reduced drug clearance, discontinue/taper drugs or switch to drugs more suitable for poorer renal function.
- If reduced renal function review analgesics, psychoactive drugs, antibiotics, metoclopramide, gabapentin, digoxin, ACE inhibitors, and others.
- Opioids such as morphine and its metabolite, codeine, should be avoided in presence of kidney disease as they risk inducing toxicity appearing as myoclonus.[18]
- There is mixed evidence supporting hydration and possible opioid rotation to improve myoclonus or delirium symptoms related to opioid toxicity.[1, 18]
- **Monitor patient performance status in dysphagia** as medication routes capacity; routes and options may be actively changing when dehydration exists.
- **Update drug management** to best control new or existing symptoms according to goals of care including:
    - Delirium, sedation, cognition – often distressing to families.[1, 3]
    - Nausea, fatigue, anorexia, dry mouth and thirst – as may occur often.
    - Hypotension, dizziness, diarrhea, sweating, constipation, fever (including neoplastic), infection, respiratory congestion, neuromuscular irritability, diabetes, heat-related illness.[19]
    - Overhydration contributes to edema, ascites, respiratory congestion.
    - Electrolyte management.

Utilize other symptom guidelines and seek consultation with interdisciplinary professionals as appropriate.

### Patient and family education

- Families need explanation, support and recognition that this is a difficult transition.[9]
- Communicate clearly with patients and family about the limited evidence of beneficial effects of AH.[1]
- Help the family to understand that artificial hydration is often not indicated when the patient is dying and will not improve the patient's condition.[3]
- Explain that the body no longer needs large amounts of energy and the patient's digestive system is progressively slowing down.[12] Help the patient and family understand that the loss of appetite and reduced fluid intake is a normal part of the dying process.
- Explain that attempts to counteract this process could create unpleasant symptoms from fluid the body cannot process such as bloating, swelling, cramps, diarrhea, and shortness of breath, without improving the outcome.[13]
- Encourage the family to do mouth care, if appropriate, as a way to contribute to their loved one's comfort.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF DEHYDRATION

### Resources specific to dehydration

- BC Cancer Agency: Xerostomia

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/18.%20Xerostomia.pdf

### General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision

making.

- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-

services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288

- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF DEHYDRATION IN PALLIATIVE CARE

Information is included in the body of this document

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF DEHYDRATION

Medication information is included in the body of this document

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## DEHYDRATION MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEHYDRATION EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

Artificial hydration (IV/SC fluids) during the dying phase: to use or not to use?[1,4,7,8,20, 21]

| Global Benefits of Artificial hydration (AH) | Global Burdens of Artificial Hydration (AH) |
|---|---|
| No strong evidence exists supporting the use of parenteral hydration for the majority of terminally ill patients; however, a **subset of patients** may derive some benefit.[7] | |
| May improve:<br>• Circulation of drugs to relieve symptoms.<br>• Skin turgor and reduce pressure sores (or not)<br>• Alertness and fatigue. | May make death less 'natural', i.e., medicalized.<br>Family may be less able to cuddle and get close with the pump/drip stand. Family may feel inhibited re closeness due to equipment. |
| May improve cognitive function if related to terminal agitation secondary to neurotoxicity. May prolong survival in specific, reversible causes such as hypercalcemia or opioid neurotoxicity. | May cause iatrogenic overhydration, leading to exacerbation of physical symptoms such as: pulmonary edema, ascites, vomiting, peripheral edema, respiratory congestion, restlessness from full bladder. |
| May reduce thirst in some patients (note: good mouth care usually does as good a job). Focus on managing dry mouth. | May deter patients from being at home. |
| Seems less like care providers are just letting the patient die (but remember, he or she is dying from the disease, not dehydration). Ask: who are we treating really—us, the relatives, or the patient? | Infusion set getting in the way of human touch. May encumber the patient's movement, mobility and closeness. |
| **Specific to hypodermoclysis – subcutaneous (S/C) delivery** | |
| S/C usage may avoid need for IV insertion or transfers to acute care setting. Can sometimes be administered in the home or residential care settings. | IV tubing, bags, fluid and S/C needles required. |
| No venipuncture skills required | |

*Dehydration extra resources or assessment tools continued on* next page

## DEHYDRATION EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS *CONTINUED*

| | |
|---|---|
| May enhance effectiveness of pain medication. | Potential for overhydration remains. |
| Can be administered slowly overnight; can administer low fluid volumes. Lower potential for iatrogenic overhydration than with IV hydration. | Not all residential care settings or community care services have capacity to administer. |
| **Specific to Intravenous delivery** | |
| May improve clinical conditions secondary to medication toxicities. | Venipuncture skills and equipment required. IV catheters/needles are painful and infusion sets are constraining. IVs are invasive and intrusive and can contribute to patient and family discomfort. |
| Can be administered in acute care and ER settings. | Transfer to acute care or ER may cause patient distress, discomfort and disruption to personal goals and wishes. |
| Most rapid response to dehydration: monitor closely. | May cause iatrogenic overhydration leading to exacerbation of physical symptoms such as: pulmonary edema, ascites, vomiting, peripheral edema, respiratory congestion, restlessness from full bladder. |
| While relatively large hydration volumes can worsen or lead to pleural effusion and/or excess bronchial secretions, low volumes (<1000 mL daily) appear to be safely tolerated.[3] | |

## DEHYDRATION REFERENCES


1. Gabriel MS, Tschanz JA. Artificial nutrition and hydration. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 4th edition. [1-21]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

2. Vidal M, Hui D, Williams J, Bruera E. A Prospective Study of Hypodermoclysis Performed by Caregivers in the Home Setting. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2016;52(4):570-4.e9.

3. Danis M. Stopping artificial nutrition and hydration at the end of life. 2017. Available from: www.uptodate.com.

4. Nakajima N, Satake N, Nakaho T. Indications and practice of artificial hydration for terminally ill cancer patients. wwwsupportiveandpalliativecarecom. 2014;8(4).

5. Remington R, Hultman T. Hypodermoclysis to treat dehydration: A review of the evidence. Journal of the American Geriatrics Society. 2007;55(12):2051-5.

6. Alsirafy SA, Al-Shahri MZ, Hassan AA, Hidayatullah M, Ghanem HM. Pattern of electrolyte abnormalities among cancer patients referred to palliative care: A review of 750 patients. Progress in Palliative Care. 2007;15(4):182-6.

7. Dev R, Dalal S, Bruera E. Is there a role for parenteral nutrition or hydration at the end of life? Current Opinion in Supportive and Palliative Care. 2012;6(3):365-70.

8. Cohen MZ, Torres-Vigil I, Burbach BE, de la Rosa A, Bruera E. The meaning of parenteral hydration to family caregivers and patients with advanced cancer receiving hospice care. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2012;43(5):855-65.

9. Dean M, Harris J, D, Regnard C. Nutrition and hydration problems. Symptom Relief in Palliative Care. 2nd edition ed. UK: Radcliffe Publishing Ltd; 2011.

10. 99 Common Questions (and more) About Hospice Palliative Care. A nurse's handbook. 4th edition ed. Canada: Edmonton Zone Palliative Care Program; 2013.

11. Raijmakers NJH, van Zuylen L, Costantini M, Caraceni A, Clark J, Lundquist G, et al. Artificial nutrition and hydration in the last week of life in cancer patients. A systematic literature review of practices and effects. Annals of Oncology. 2011;22(7):1478-86.

12. Gross DM, Clifton-Hawkins N, Gallo M. Redefining Comfort Measures: Communicating About Life Support, Artificial Hydration, and Nutrition. 2015. In: Textbook of Palliative Care Communication [Internet]. Oxford University Press; [1-17]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

13. Ko DN, Blinderman CD. Withholding and withdrawing life-sustaining treatment (including artificial nutrition and hydration). 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 5th edition. [1-28]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

14. Boland E, Johnson M, Boland J. Artificial hydration in the terminally ill patient. British Journal of Hospital Medicine 2013;74(7):397-402.

15. Black F, Downing GM. Artificial Hydration and Hypodermoclysis Guideline. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Medical Care of the Dying. Victoria, British Columbia: Victoria Hospice Society Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006. p. 311-7.

16. Konings FJCM, Mathijssen JJP, Schellingerhout JM, Kroesbergen IHT, Goede de J, Goor de IAM. Prevention of dehydration in independently living elderly people at risk: A study protocol of a randomized controlled trial. International Journal of Preventive Medicine. 2015;2015(OCTOBER) (pagination):ate of Pubaton: 19 Ot 2015.

17. Drugs that Cause Dehydration [Available from: www.micromedex.com.

18. Dalal S, Del Fabbro E, Bruera E. Is there a role for hydration at the end of life? Current Opinion in Supportive & Palliative Care. 2009;3:72-8.

19. Westaway K, Frank O, Husband A, McClure A, Shute R, Edwards S, et al. Medicines can affect thermoregulation and accentuate the risk of dehydration and heat-related illness during hot weather. J Clin Pharm Ther. 2015;40(4):363-7.

20. Faull C, Blankley K. Decisions and care around the end of life. 2015. In: Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 2nd edition. [1-21]. Available from: www.oxfordmedicine.com.

21. Gastrointestinal. Medical Care of the Dying. 4th edition ed: Victoria Hospice Society; 2006. p. 301-62.

22. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care.]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# RESPIRATORY CONGESTION

# RESPIRATORY CONGESTION

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Respiratory congestion** -- also called 'noisy respirations', 'noisy breathing', 'respiratory tract secretions' (RTS) and 'death rattle' -- is the noise produced by the turbulent movements of secretions in the upper airways that occur during respiration in patients who are dying.[1] This guideline does not support the term 'death rattle', especially with families, encouraging instead use of term **respiratory congestion**. It may be classified as either Type 1 or Type 2:

Type 1: The noise that ensues when excessive secretions are produced by the salivary glands when the patient is unable to swallow due to reduced level of consciousness or profound weakness. Is reported to predict death for 75% of dying patients, often within 48 hours of onset.[1, 2]

Type 2: The presence of mostly bronchial secretions caused by respiratory pathology such as pulmonary infection, aspiration, and/or edema. Type 2 is much more difficult to treat and may be unaffected by standard palliation treatment.[3]

## PREVALENCE

Respiratory congestion in the dying patient is a common and expected symptom[4] although reported prevalence varies considerably, from 23-92%.[5, 6.] Respiratory congestion may cluster alongside dyspnea; see dyspnea guidelines for management.

## IMPACT

If the person is alert, respiratory secretions can cause him or her to feel agitated and fearful of suffocating.[1] Family may interpret the sound as an indication that the patient is 'drowning in secretions' so it is not surprising that it has been reported as upsetting at the time of dying and even several years after the death.[2] Some professionals may also find the sound distressing.[5] **However, there is no evidence that the sound is associated with respiratory distress.[4]**

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of respiratory congestion) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

### Step 2 | Assessment

#### Respiratory congestion assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V [5,7, 32]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient. At the onset of congestion, most patients are at a reduced consciousness level[8]; therefore, assessment is usually dependent on family or care provider observations.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? Can the secretions be cleared by coughing or swallowing? |
| **Quality** | What does it sound like? Can you describe it? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Does it seem to be in the chest? Or throat? |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## Respiratory congestion assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V *continued*

| | |
|---|---|
| **S**everity | Does the patient appear comfortable? Are the sounds louder or quieter with change of positions?[7] How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? |
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments?<br>Could other treatments be worsening this symptom (e.g., artificial hydration)? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? Does the patient appear distressed?[7] |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

### Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care

- The cause of noisy breathing remains unproven but is presumed to be due to an

accumulation of secretions in the airways.[6]

- Factors associated with an increased risk, particularly of Type 2, include: a prolonged dying phase, cerebral or pulmonary malignancy, pneumonia, dysphagia, and head injury.[1, 2, 9].
- Excessive oropharyngeal secretions, coupled with a weakening gag and/or cough reflex, cause pooling of the secretions and saliva.[10]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Although the sound of respiratory congestion can be disturbing to hear, determine if the patient is distressed by observing other indicators (such as wincing) and reassure family.
- If the patient seems distressed, start medication early for best effect.
- Positioning is the most effective non-pharmacological intervention.
- Suctioning may cause more harm and not relieve the congestion

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬟ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

- ⬟ **Limit or discontinue use** of IV fluids or artificial nutrition to decrease burden of secretions.[1, 10, 11.]
- ⬟ **Sips of fluids only** if patient is alert and able to swallow.
- ⬟ Provide **frequent mouth care**; **humidify room** (fill a bathtub with water, keep plants, use a humidifier machine if available).[10]
- ⬟ **Reposition** the patient in a side-lying position with the head of the bed elevated.
- ⬟ **Position** onto alternate side to encourage postural drainage.[2]

## Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

- **Avoid suction** when possible. It can cause agitation and distress, is ineffective below the oropharynx, and does not correct underlying problem.[1, 11.]
- In the event of copious secretions in the oropharynx, gentle anterior suction may be useful.[3, 5, 12] **However, consider goals of care, equipment availability, and your organization's policies.**
- Patients with a tracheotomy who have previously required suction as part of their ongoing management, may continue to require it.
- With active bleeding from oral, esophageal or pulmonary areas, suction may be required (see severe bleeding guideline).

## Pharmacological interventions

Evidence of superiority not established for any specific medication or benefit over placebo.[5, 6, 14, 15.]

- Use of anticholinergic drugs remains high in clinical practice, up to 80-88%,[8, 16] despite the lack of evidence.[8 17] They are also recommended in the UK national guidelines.[18] Routine or standard use of anticholinergics has been increasingly questioned.[4, 5, 18, 19]
- When drugs are used, combine with non-pharmacological interventions. (See non-pharmacological interventions section.[20])

In BC, drug choices used are primarily either glycopyrrolate, atropine or scopolamine.

**Starting therapy** (**for further drug dosing and precautions, see** Medications for management of respiratory congestion):

- When started, begin at the first audible sign of congestion, as drugs do not dry up secretions that are already present.[7]
- Anticholinergics may be more effective when started early, or in patients with a lower intensity of congestion.[8, 21, 22]
- Onset of effect for subcutaneous route reported within 30 to 60 minutes from anticholinergics.[21]

## Alternative routes

- Subcutaneous administration of anticholinergics is most commonly used; however, consider alternative routes in the community due to the need for equipment and training for administration.
- Other routes of administration include transdermal (scopolamine patch) or sublingual (atropine 1% ophthalmic drops). The use of atropine sublingually, 1 to 3 drops every two to four hours, has been suggested while patients are starting on scopolamine patch as patch can take 6 to 8 hours to be effective; steady state levels reached in 24 hours.[23]

## Monitoring of beneficial effects and undesirable adverse effects

- Oropharyngeal secretions (Type 1 respiratory congestion) is most likely to respond to drug therapy, while treatment success for bronchial secretions (Type 2) is poor, if at all.[20, 24]
- Common adverse effects are dry mouth, urinary retention, visual disturbances and occasionally confusion.[6, 18] A significant difference in the incidence of adverse effects amongst each of the anticholinergics has not been established.[21] Provide good mouth care and lubricate eyes with drops if necessary as mucous membranes often become dry.
- Patients are commonly unable to report benefit or adverse effects due to reduced level of consciousness.[8]
- Consider stopping anticholinergics if congestion is not helped. Often treatment may be initiated for the benefit of relatives and others.[6, 25]
  Do not continue use merely as a drive to “do something” if ineffective or if distress levels are unaltered.[26] Monitor symptoms regularly after drug discontinuation.
- Octreotide had no anti-secretory benefit on respiratory congestion intensity when compared with scopolamine in a 10-patient randomized trial.[27] Higher cost precludes use.
- Although perceived benefit of oxygen administration or measurement of oxygen saturation remains high at 83%, oxygen has no known patient benefit for respiratory congestion.[13]

### Patient and family education

- Use plain language such as 'moist or noisy breathing'. Avoid the term 'death rattle' when talking with families or other clinicians.[1]
- Inform families in advance that noisy breathing may occur as a normal part of the dying process. [2, 9-11]
- Inform families that oxygen does not change the noisy breathing and is not beneficial.[13] If in community, a family decision to seek oxygen may lead to unnecessary emergency department visits.
- Family distress with noisy breathing decreases when they see patient is comfortable.[5] Point out non-verbal indicators of comfort such as facial expression. If the patient appears comfortable, reassure the family; if patient has laboured breathing or appears uncomfortable, treat the dyspnea and/or pain.[11]
- If appropriate, encourage family involvement in providing mouth care as a way to care for their loved one.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF RESPIRATORY CONGESTION

### Resources Specific to Respiratory Congestion

- ALS Society of Canada: A guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians. Sections on sialorrhea (drooling due to decreased ability to manage saliva), dyspnea and palliative care

➡ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

### General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by

Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.

- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF RESPIRATORY CONGESTION *CONTINUED*

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF RESPIRATORY CONGESTION IN PALLIATIVE CARE

Information is included in the body of the document.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF RESPIRATORY CONGESTION

| Subcutaneous Drug | Stat and PRN Subcutaneous dose | CSCI dose per 24 hours | Adverse effects information | Precautions |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Glycopyrrolate** | 0.2 mg-0.4mg Q4-6H | 0.6 to 1.2 mg | Does not cross BBB. CNS adverse effects may be minimized | Half dose in end-stage renal failure |
| **Atropine** | 0.4 to 0.6 mg Q4-6H | 1.2 to 2 mg | May be stimulating, rather than sedating. Use IV may have risk of tachycardia. | Cardiac effects, at higher doses. |
| **Scopolamine (hyoscine HYDRObromide)** | 0.4 mg to 0.6mg Q4-6H | 1.2 to 2 mg | May be more sedating | Avoid in end-stage renal failure due increased risk of delirium |
| **Hyoscine BUTYLbromide (e.g. Buscopan)** | 20 mg Repeat doses every 4 to 6 hours | 20 to 120 mg | Does not cross BBB. CNS adverse effects may be minimized | Use may be confused with scopolamine due to similar name. Use TALLman lettering to differentiate. |
| **Transdermal and Sublingual Drugs** | | | | |
| **Scopolamine Transdermal**<br>Apply one patch every 72 hours (allow for 6-8 hrs onset of action, steady levels at 24 hrs)<br>Each 1.5 mg patch release approximately 1 mg of scopolamine base over 72 hours. Multiple (e.g. two) concurrent patches have been used. | | | | Locate behind ear(s) for optimal absorption. |

*Medications for management of respiratory congestion continued on* next page

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF RESPIRATORY CONGESTION *CONTINUED*

| | |
|---|---|
| **Atropine 1% ophthalmic drops for SUBLINGUAL use**<br>1 to 4 drops (providing approximately 0.5 mg per drop) sublingual every two to four hours. | Avoid inadvertent and unintended administration into eyes.<br>Effectiveness not established.<br>Off-label indication |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## RESPIRATORY CONGESTION MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## RESPIRATORY CONGESTION EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

No extra resources or assessment tools included in this document.

## RESPIRATORY CONGESTION REFERENCES


1. Dudgeon D. Dyspnea, Death Rattle and Cough. 2016. In: Care of the Imminently Dying [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; [1-15].
2. Twomey S, Dowling M. Management of death rattle at end of life. British Journal of Nursing. 2013;22(2):81-5 5p.
3. Chan KS, Tse DMW, Sham MMK. Dyspnoea and other respiratory symptoms in palliative care. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. 5th edition. [1-44].
4. Campbell ML, Yarandi HN. Death rattle is not associated with patient respiratory distress: Is pharmacologic treatment indicated? Journal of Palliative Medicine. 2013;16(10):1255-9.
5. Lokker ME, Van Zuylen L, Van Der Rijt CCD, Van Der Heide A. Prevalence, impact, and treatment of death rattle: A systematic review. Journal of Pain and Symptom Management. 2014;47(1):105-22.
6. Wee B, Hillier R. Interventions for noisy breathing in patients near to death. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2012;3.
7. Fraser Health. Hospital Palliative Care Program. Symptom Guidelines. Terminal Secretions/Congestion 2006 [cited 2016. Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/media/18FHSymptomGuidelinesTerminalSecretions.pdf.
8. Mercadamte S. Death rattle: Critical review and research agenda. Supportive Care in Cancer. 2014;22(2):571-5.

9. Heisler M, Hamilton G, Abbott A, Chengalaram A, Koceja T, Gerkin R. Randomized Double-Blind Trial of Sublingual Atropine vs. Placebo for the Management of Death Rattle. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2013;45(1):14-22.

10. Chai E MJ, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Cough and secretions. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford University Press; [1-11].

11. Hipp B, Letizia M. Understanding and responding to the death rattle in dying patients. MEDSURG Nursing. 2009;18(1):17-32 7p.

12. Clary PL, Lawson P. Pharmacologic pearls for end-of-life care. American Family Physician. 2009;79(12):1059-65 7p.

13. Shimizu Y, Miyashita M, Morita T, Sato K, Tsuneto S, Shima Y. Care strategy for death rattle in terminally ill cancer patients and their family members: recommendations from a cross-sectional nationwide survey of bereaved family members' perceptions. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2014;48(1):2-12 1p.

14. Abstracts of the 7th World Research Congress of the European Association for Palliative Care (EAPC). Palliative Medicine. 2012;26(4):384-674.

15. De Simone GG, Eisenchlas JH, Junin M, Pereyra F, Brizuela R. Atropine drops for drooling: a randomized controlled trial. Palliative Medicine. 2006;20(7):665-71.

16. Lundquist G, Rasmussen B, Axelsson B. Information of Imminent Death or Not: Does It Make a Difference? Journal of Clinical Oncology. 2011;29(29):3927-31.

17. Palliative Care Formulary. PCF5. 5th ed. Twycross RW, A. Howard, P., editor. UK2014.

18. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Care of dying adults in the last days of life 2015 [1-26]. Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng31/resources/care-of-dying-adults-in-the-last-days-of-life-1837387324357.

19. Fielding F, Long CO. The Death Rattle Dilemma. Journal of Hospice & Palliative Nursing. 2014;16(8):466-73 8p.

20. Bennett M, Lucas V, Brennan M, Hughes A, O'Donnell V, Wee B. Using anti-muscarinic drugs in the management of death rattle: evidence-based guidelines for palliative care. Palliat Med. 2002;16(5):369-74.

21. Wildiers H, Dhaenekint C, Demeulenaere P, Clement PM, Desmet M, Van Nuffelen R, et al. Atropine, hyoscine butylbromide, or scopolamine are equally effective for the treatment of death rattle in terminal care. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2009;38(1):124-33 10p.

22. Mercadante S, Villari P, Ferrera P. Refractory death rattle: deep aspiration facilitates the effects of antisecretory agents. Journal of Pain & Symptom Management. 2011;41(3):637-9 3p.

23. Bailey FA HS. Palliative care: The last hours and days of life. 2016 [Available from: http://www.uptodate.com/contents/palliative-care-the-last-hours-and-days-of-life.

24. Lacey J. Management of the actively dying patient. In: Cherny N FM, Kaasa S, Portenoy RK, Currow DC., editor. Oxford textbook of Palliative Medicine. 5th ed: Oxford University Press; 2015.

25. Palliative Care Formulary. PCF4. 4th ed. Twycross RW, A, editor2011.

26. Bradley K, Wee B, Aoun S. Management of death rattle: what influences the decision making of palliative medicine doctors and clinical nurse specialists? Progress in Palliative Care. 2010;18(5):270-4 5p.

27. Clark K, Currow DC, Agar M, Fazekas BS, Abernethy AP. A pilot phase II randomized, cross-over, double-blinded, controlled efficacy study of octreotide versus hyoscine hydrobromide for control of noisy breathing at the end-of-life. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother. 2008;22(2):131-8.

28. Prommer E. Anticholinergics in Palliative Medicine: An Update. American Journal of Hospice and Palliative Medicine. 2013;30(5):490-8.

29. Kintzel PE, Chase SL, Thomas W, Vancamp DM, Clements EA. Anticholinergic medications for managing noisy respirations in adult hospice patients. American Journal of Health-System Pharmacy. 2009;66(5):458-64.

30. Bascom PB. Inadvertent Ophthalmic Administration of Atropine Drops in a Hospice Patient. American Journal of Hospice and Palliative Medicine®. 2013;30(8):793-4.

31. Victoria Hospice Society. Learning Centre for Palliative Care. Medical Care of the Dying. 4th ed. Downing GM WW, editor2006.

32. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# DYSPNEA

# DYSPNEA

## DEFINITION

**Dyspnea** is the uncomfortable feeling of being short of breath. It may or may not be associated with hypoxia.

## PREVALENCE

Prevalence is high in palliative patients, e.g., in cancer (10-70%), COPD (90-95%), and CHF (60-88%).[1] Intensity tends to worsen towards end of life.[2]

## IMPACT

Results in multidimensional distress to patients and caregivers.[3] Quality of life and daily functions can be profoundly negatively impacted. Psychological effects include: anxiety, panic, hopelessness, loss of enjoyment of life, and social isolation.[1, 4] Survival may be shortened in dyspnea patients, averaging as little as 30 days.[5]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of dyspnea) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

### Dyspnea Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[47]

| **M**nemonic Letter | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **O**nset | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **P**rovoking /Palliating | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Q**uality | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? Is it worse lying down or sitting? |
| **R**egion/Radiation | Not applicable. |
| **S**everity | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? When you are walking? Or climbing stairs? Or doing activities of daily living?[1] How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom (e.g., pain in your chest, anxiety, fatigue)? |
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? What are you having trouble doing because of this symptom that you would like to do? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

- If indicated, complete: blood count, electrolytes, renal function, oxygen saturation by oximetry, and chest x-ray.
- The choice of appropriate diagnostic tests should be guided by the stage of disease, the prognosis, the balance of the benefits and burdens, treatment goals, and patient preferences. Tests are exhausting for people in a palliative care setting and may be of limited usefulness.[1, 2, 6, 7] Specialized investigations may be less readily available depending on setting, the choice of which should also be made in light of these same factors.[6, 8]

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care

**Pulmonary:** Airway obstruction, COPD/asthma, damage from chemotherapy, radiation or surgery, emboli, fibrosis, effusion, primary or metastatic tumour.

**Cardiac:** CHF, CAD, arrhythmias, pericardial effusion.

**Neuromuscular:** ALS, CVA, poliomyelitis, myasthenia gravis.

**Other:** Anxiety, fatigue/deconditioning, weakness, pain, severe anemia, infection, carcinomatosis, hepatomegaly, phrenic nerve lesion, peritoneal effusion.

**Superior Vena Cava (SVC) obstruction (This is an emergency and requires prompt intervention.)**

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Dyspnea may not be due to hypoxia. Use other methods to provide fresh air when O2 levels are satisfactory
- Utilize anticipatory planning to promote self-care for respiratory distress
- Focus on relaxation and other non-pharmacological techniques
- Opioids are first line of pharmacological treatment

### Step 4 | Interventions

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

- Develop **activity pacing** with techniques to provide energy conservation.[14, 15]
- **Learn breath control** methods, e.g., pursed lip and diaphragmatic breathing.[1, 6, 19]
- **Small, frequent meals** will reduce abdominal pressure on the diaphragm.[16]

### Positioning

- Sit upright, supported by pillow, or forward leaning with arms on table when standing.[6] When lying on side, position poor lung side down.[16]
- Stabilization of ribcage may help accessory muscles to engage and improve breathing.[29]
- Avoid compression of chest and abdomen; position for optimal lung expansion.[30]
- Elevate head of bed to a comfortable 15 to 45 degrees, and elevate arms with pillows.[30, 31]

### Support

- Provide a comprehensive multi-disciplinary care approach when resources are available.[15, 24, 32, 33]
- COPD patients, use exercise and pulmonary rehabilitation.[24] Tai Chi[20] and inspiratory muscle training,[21] if appropriate and available.
- Provide supportive presence when dyspnea distressing; do not leave alone.[6, 16]
- Phone-based coaching may be beneficial to patients and their care-givers.[34]
- Ask YES and NO questions, rather than open-ended, if talking increases dyspnea.[16]

- Relaxation techniques of guided imagery and therapeutic touch.[6]
- Anxiety management and relaxation. Problem solve to avoid panic.[6, 14, 15]

### Environment

- Maintain a calm environment.[16]
- Strive for an air source that is fresh, cool, humidified and free of irritants.[17]
- Identify and avoid provoking exertion triggers.[13]

### Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

- **Airflow** with room air is sometimes as effective as oxygen[17] such as medical air via mask or nasal prongs.[22, 23]
- **Oxygen** is generally only helpful for hypoxic patients.[36]
- Fans to provide airflow,[1, 6, 15, 16, 24-27] either a hand-held or electric fan for a minimum of five minutes. (This equipment could very likely be obtained in community for minimal cost.)
- Walking aids.[28] Forward leaning on wheeled walkers may help ventilation.[1, 28]
- Neuromuscular electric stimulation whenever no practical barriers and if trained provider available.[1, 15, 28]
- COPD and motor neuron disease patients, use chest wall vibration only if tolerated and if trained provider avaialble.[1, 28]

## Pharmacological interventions

- Oral or parenteral opioids are first line pharmacological treatment.[35]
- For home oxygen, see program criteria for required oxygen saturation. Consider practical concerns if oxygen is used in the community.
- For non-hypoxic patients, limit trial of oxygen, e.g., 72 hours.[39]

## Mild level of distress (patient rating of 1 to 3/10 -- mild dyspnea)

- **Bronchodilators** such as salbutamol, ipratropium for asthma, COPD.[43, 45]
- Provide PRN oral or parenteral opioids if dyspnea is only episodic, and provide for breakthrough dyspnea when already on regular opioids.
- The size of opioid dose should reflect the patient's severity of dyspnea and opioid tolerance. If no prior opioids and mild dyspnea; use **morphine** 2.5 mg immediate release orally every 4 hours PRN or **HYDROmorphone** 0.5 mg immediate release orally every 4 hours PRN.

## Moderate level of distress

(patient rating of 4 to 6/10 -- moderate dyspnea)

- **Bronchodilators** such as salbutamol, ipratropium for asthma, COPD.[43, 45]
- For ongoing dyspnea, begin a regular opioid dose with concurrent PRN:
    - **Morphine** orally: 2.5 mg immediate release every 4 hours. **Morphine** parenterally: 1 to 1.5 mg SC or IV every 4 hours.
    - Alternatively: **HYDROmorphone** 0.5 mg orally every 4 hours, OR **HYDROmorphone** 0.25 mg SC or IV every 4 hours.
    - Titrate opioid dose incrementally by about 25% according to effectiveness and PRN usage in prior 24 hours. Goal is patient comfort, determined by subjective, objective effect and tolerance.
- Provide preventative anti-emetic and bowel management to prevent, and to immediately manage, opioid adverse effects of nausea, vomiting and constipation. Incidence may triple with opioid use.[37]
- Monitor for excessive opioid-induced drowsiness; use **Pasero Opioid-Induced Sedation Scale (POSS**) assessment tool (Underlying causes of dyspnea in palliative care).
- **Corticosteroid** trial in major airway obstruction, lymphangitis carcinomatosis, radiation or drug-induced pneumonitis,[1] or for endotracheal and bronchial tumors.[41] A limited course duration will likely reduce risk of adverse effects. Assess benefit, as current use evidence limited to COPD patients.[35]
    - Use short course **corticosteroids** for COPD dyspnea exacerbations.[40]

- **Benzodiazepines** may assist anxiety or panic,[1, 35] e.g., with the combination of midazolam and morphine in terminal stage cancer patients with anxiety.[1, 35]
  - A systematic review has found no efficacy evidence of benzodiazepines for the relief of breathlessness in patients with advanced cancer or COPD regardless of type of benzodiazepine, dose or route, nor for prevention of breakthrough dyspnea.[42]
  - Use benzodiazepines only as a second or third line agent when opioids and non-pharmacological measures have failed to control breathlessness.
- **Methotrimeprazine's** role limited to use only as a second line agent or in combination with an opioid when further opioid dose titration is contraindicated.[43] Initiate at low doses, monitor for benefit, excessive sedation, and anti-cholinergic side effects such as extrapyramidal effects as reviews have concluded limited to no effectiveness.[1, 44]

## Severe distress

(patient rating of 7 to 10/10 -- severe dyspnea = crisis management)

- Use opioids and adjunctive anxiolytics/sedatives until comfort is achieved.[1, 35]
- Opioid naïve: use morphine 5 mg SC or IV bolus every 5 to 10 minutes. Double dose if no effect every three doses; hold and reassess once dyspnea is reduced, especially if very sedated.[17]
- Opioid tolerant: give full regular opioid dose SC or IV every 5 to 10 minutes. If ineffective, double dose as above.
- If patient anxious, use one of the following with opioid: either **midazolam 2.5 to 5 mg** SC or IV, OR **lorazepam 5 mg** SC or IV every 5 to 15 minutes PRN.
- Use incremental opioid titration first line until patient comfortable. Monitor for effectiveness and excessive sedation using POSS.

## Not recommended

- ☒ Administration of nebulized opioids.[37, 46]

## Patient and family education

Refer to non-pharmacological interventions section for more information.

- Ensure inhalers are being used correctly.
- Inform patient and family that dyspnea is not always caused by low oxygen levels and may not improve with oxygen. Fresh air via a fan, positioning and opioids may be more helpful than oxygen.
- Build a documented plan, both for ongoing dyspnea and for acute dyspnea episodes.[1, 9-13]
- A symptom and medication diary can be useful.
- Ask about cultural practices involving smoke and respect decisions to continue these practices.
- Encourage smoking cessation. Dyspnea can be lessened even after early lung cancer diagnosis.[18]
- Teach safe and appropriate use of medications including purpose, adverse effects and how to manage.[15] Include correct use of inhalers.[6]

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF DYSPNEA

## Resources specific to dyspnea

- First Nations Health Authority: "Keep tobacco sacred"

➡ http://www.fnha.ca/wellness/wellness-and-the-first-nations-health-authority/wellness-streams/respecting-tobacco#keep-tobacco-sacred

- BC Guidelines: Dyspnea (medication table as well)

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_dyspnea.pdf

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines: Dyspnea

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/5.%20Dyspnea.pdf

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management: Dyspnea

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/wp-content/uploads/downloads/2015/01/Dyspnea-Jan-20151.pdf

- Managing dyspnea in patients with advanced chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a Canadian Thoracic Society clinical practice guideline. [29]

➡ http://www.respiratoryguidelines.ca/

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288

- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF DYSPNEA IN PALLIATIVE CARE

All information regarding causes of dyspnea is contained within the body of the document.

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF DYSPNEA

No medication table included in this document

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## DYSPNEA MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## DYSPNEA EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

### Pasero Opioid-Induced Sedation Scale (POSS)[78]

| | |
|---|---|
| **S** | sleep, easy to arouse |
| **1** | awake and alert |
| **2** | slightly drowsy, easily aroused |

| | |
|---|---|
| **3** | frequently drowsy, arousable, drifts off to sleep during conversation |
| **4** | somnolent, minimal or no response to physical stimulation |

## DYSPNEA REFERENCES

1. Chan KS, Tse DMW, Sham MMK. Dyspnoea and other respiratory symptoms in palliative care. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. 5th edition. [1-44].

2. Dudgeon D. Dyspnea, Death Rattle and Cough. 2016. In: Care of the Imminently Dying [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; [1-15].

3. Bausewein C, Booth S, Higginson I. Measurement of dyspnoea in the clinical rather than the research setting. Current Opinion in Supportive and Palliative Care. 2008;2:95-9.

4. Tanaka K, Akechi T, Okuyama T, Nishiwaki Y, Uchitomi Y. Impact of dyspnea, pain, and fatigue on daily life activities in ambulatory patients with advanced lung cancer. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2002;23(5):417-23. Chang VT, Arnold RM, Savarese DMF. Approach to symptom assessment in palliative care 2016 [cited 2016. Available from: http://www.uptodate.com/contents/approach-to-symptom-assessment-in-palliative-care?source=search_resultandsearch=approach+to+symptom+assessment+in+palliative+careandselectedTitle=1~150.

5. Dudgeon D. Dyspnea, terminal secretions and cough. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press. 4th. [1-33].

6. Kamal AH, Gradison M, Maguire JM, Taylor D, Abernethy AP. Quality measures for palliative care in patients with cancer: a systematic review. Journal of oncology practice. 2014;10(4):281-7.

7. Kamal AHG, M.; Maguire,J.M.; Taylor,D.; Abernethy,A.P. Quality measures for Palliatiave Care in Patients with Cancer: A Systematic Review. American Society of Clinical Oncology 2014.

8. American Thoracic Society: Patient Information Series: Sudden Breathlessness

Crisis. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2014;189:9-10.

9. ATS. Dyspnea. Mechanisms, assessment and management: a consensus statement of the American Thoracic Society. 1999;159(1):321-40.

10. Chan KS, Sham M, M.K, Tse DMW, Thorsen AB. Palliative medicine in malignant respiratory diseases. 2005. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. New York: Oxford University Press. 3rd.

11. Booth S, Farquhar M, Gysels M, Bausewein C, Higginson IJ. The impact of a breathlessness intervention service (BIS) on the lives of patients with intractable dyspnea: A qualitative phase 1 study. Palliative and Supportive Care. 2006;4(03).

12. Simon ST, Bausewein C, Schildmann E, Higginson IJ, Magnussen H, Scheve C, et al. Episodic breathlessness in patients with advanced disease: a systematic review. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;45(3):561-78.

13. Zhao I, Yates P. Non-pharmacological interventions for breathlessness management in patients with lung cancer: a systematic review. Palliative Medicine. 2008;22(6):693-701.

14. Chin C, Booth S. Managing breathlessness: a palliative care approach. Postgrad Med J. 2016;92(1089):393-400.

15. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Dyspnea. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; [1-44].

16. Fraser Health. Hospice Palliative Care Program. Symptom guidelines. Dyspnea 2009 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/media/Dyspnea.pdf.

17. Garces YI, Yang P, Parkinson J, Zhao X, Wampfler JA, Ebbert JO, et al. The relationship between cigarette smoking and quality of life after lung cancer diagnosis. Chest. 2004;126(6):1733-41.

18. Parshall MB, Schwartzstein RM, Adams L, Banzett RB, Manning HL, Bourbeau J, et al. An official American Thoracic Society statement: update on the mechanisms, assessment, and management of dyspnea. Am J Respir Crit Care Med. 2012;185(4):435-52.

19. Wu W, Liu X, Wang L, Wang Z, Hu J, Yan J. Effects of Tai Chi on exercise capacity and health-related quality of life in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. International Journal of COPD.

2014;9:1253-63.

20. Thomas MJ, Simpson J, Riley R, Grant E. The impact of home-based physiotherapy interventions on breathlessness during activities of daily living in severe COPD: a systematic review. Physiotherapy. 2010;96(2):108-19.

21. Uronis HE, Currow DC, McCrory DC, Samsa GP, Abernethy AP. Oxygen for relief of dyspnoea in mildly- or non-hypoxaemic patients with cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Cancer. 2008;98(2):294-9.

22. Thomas S, Bausewein C, Higginson I, Booth S. Breathlessness in cancer patients - implications, management and challenges. European journal of oncology nursing : the official journal of European Oncology Nursing Society. 2011;15(5):459-69.

23. Booth S, Moosavi SH, Higginson IJ. The etiology and management of intractable breathlessness in patients with advanced cancer: a systematic review of pharmacological therapy. Nat Clin Pract Oncol. 2008;5(2):90-100.

24. Booth S, Galbraith S, Ryan R, Parker RA, Johnson M. The importance of the feasibility study: Lessons from a study of the hand-held fan used to relieve dyspnea in people who are breathless at rest. Palliative Medicine. 2016;30(5):504-9.

25. Galbraith S, Fagan P, Perkins P, Lynch A, Booth S. Does the Use of a Handheld Fan Improve Chronic Dyspnea? A Randomized, Controlled, Crossover Trial. Journal of Pain and Symptom Management. 2010;39(5):831-8.

26. Wong SL, Leong SK, Chan CM, Kan SP, Cheng HWB. The effect of using an electric fan on dyspnea in chinese patients with terminal cancer: A randomised controlled trial. American Journal of Hospice and Palliative Medicine [Internet]. 2015 [cited 2016 oct 11]:[1-5 pp.]. Available from: ajh.sagepub.com.

27. Bausewein C, Booth S, Gysels M, Higginson IJ. Non-pharmacological interventions for breathlessness in advanced stages of malignant and non-malignant diseases (Review). Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2008(2):1-69.

28. Marciniuk DD, Goodridge D, Hernandez P, Rocker G, Balter M, Bailey P, et al. Managing dyspnea in patients with advanced chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a Canadian Thoracic Society clinical practice guideline. Can Respir J. 2011;18(2):69-78.

29. BC Cancer Agency 2016 [Available from: http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/4. Dyspnea.pdf.

30. Hsu WC, Ho LH, Lin MH, Chiu HL. [Effects of head posture on oxygenation saturation, comfort, and dyspnea in patients with liver cirrhosis-related ascites]. Hu

li za zhi The journal of nursing. 2014;61(5):66-74.

31. Jacobsen PB, Breitbart W. Psychosocial Aspects of Palliative Care. New York: Lee Moffatt Cancer Center and Research Institute. Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center.; 1996.

32. Higginson IJ, Bausewein C, Reilly CC, Gao W, Gysels M, Dzingina M, et al. An integrated palliative and respiratory care service for patients with advanced disease and refractory breathlessness: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet Respir Med. 2014;2(12):979-87.

33. Rueda JR, Sola I, Pascual A, Subirana Casacuberta M. Non-invasive interventions for improving well-being and quality of life in patients with lung cancer (Review). Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2011(9):1-64.

34. Simon ST, Koskeroglu P, Bausewein C. Pharmacological therapy of refractory dyspnea. A systematic literature review. Der Schmerz. 2012;26:515-22.

35. Qaseem A, Snow V, Shekel P, Casey DE, Cross JT, Owens DK. Evidence-Based Interventions to Improve the Palliative Care of Pain, Dyspnea, and Depression at the End of Life: A Clinical Practice Guideline from the American College of Physicians. Ann Intern Med. 2008;148(2):141-6.

36. Barnes H, McDonald J, Smallwood N, Manser R. Opioids for the palliation of refractory breathlessness in adults with advanced disease and terminal illness (Review). Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2016(3):1-93.

37. Uronis H, McCrory DC, Samsa G, Murrow D, Abernethy A. Symptomatic oxygen for non-hypoxaemic chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (Review). The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2011(6).

38. Ben-Aharon I, Gafter-Gvili A, Leibovici L, Stemmer SM. Interventions for alleviating cancer-related dyspnea: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Acta Oncologica. 2012;51(8):996-1008.

39. Walters JAE, Tan DJ, White CJ, Gibson PG, Wood-Baker R, Walters EH. Systemic corticosteroids for acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (Review). Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2014(9):1-131.

40. Clemens KE, Faust M, Bruera E. Update on combined modalities for the management of breathlessness. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2012;6:163-7.

41. Simon ST, Higginson IJ, Booth S, Harding R, Bausewein C. Benzodiazepines for the relief of breathlessness in advanced malignant and non-malignant diseases in

adults Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2010(1):1-65.

42. Dudgeon D, Shadd J. Assessment and management of dyspnea in palliative care 2016 [cited 2016 April]. Available from: http://www.uptodate.com/contents/assessment-and-management-of-dyspnea-in-palliative-care?source=search_resultandsearch=dyspneaandselectedTitle=3%7E150.

43. Abstracts of the 8th World Research Congress of the European Association for Palliative Care (EAPC). Palliative Medicine. 2014;28(6):540-913.

44. Congleton J, Muers MF. The incidence of airflow obstruction in bronchial carcinoma, its relation to breathlessness, and response to bronchodilator therapy. Respir Med. 1995;89(4):291-6.

45. Viola R, Kiteley C, Lloyd NS, Mackay JA, Wilson J, Wong RKS. The management of dyspnea in cancer patients: a systematic review. Support Care Cancer. 2008;16(4):329-37.

46. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# COUGH

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITION

**Cough** is an important physiological reflex to prevent foreign material entering the lower respiratory tract; it helps to clear excess secretions, microbes and other substances[1-4] from the lungs and bronchial tree[2, 5] when muco-ciliary transport is insufficient.[6] Coughing occurs as an explosive expiration that can be a conscious act or a reflex response to an irritation of the tracheobronchial tree.[7, 8] It is also a contributing factor in the spread of infectious disease.[2]

- **Acute cough** usually lasts less than 3 weeks,[9-11] but can last up to 8 weeks.[2]
- **Chronic cough** lasts more than 8 weeks and is attributed to distinct malignant and non-malignant diseases.[2, 3, 7-10, 12] Cough is abnormal when it is ineffective, interferes with quality of life, and causes other symptoms.[13]
- **Dry cough** occurs when no sputum is produced.[7, 8, 11]
- **Productive cough** occurs when sputum is produced.[7, 8] Sputum may contain clear secretions, mucous, pus, blood, bronchial casts, or other foreign material.

## PREVALENCE

Chronic cough is most common in lung cancer (up to 86%),[14, 15] cancers of the head and neck (over 90%),[6] and other advanced cancers (up to 40%).[14, 15] It is also very common in advanced chronic diseases,[6] especially chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) (up to 70%),[16-21] and interstitial pulmonary fibrosis (up to 80%).[22-24] Cough is significantly more prevalent in smokers[21] and affects many of those with late stage organ failure (brain, heart, kidney, liver),[25] asthma, and HIV infection.[8, 26, 27] In lung cancer patients, up to 48% reported moderate to severe cough intensity.[28] Considering that up to 86% of patients living with, and dying from, advanced illness experience distressing cough,[15, 29, 30] greater attention is required.

## IMPACT

Chronic cough can have profound physical and psychosocial impacts on quality of life for both patients and caregivers/family,[6, 9, 31] yet it is often undertreated.[32] Cough interferes with sleep, oral intake,[12, 33] provokes discomfort,[3] and leads to physical exhaustion. It may worsen existing symptoms such as pain, dyspnea, nausea and vomiting,[12] depression,[34, 35] and incontinence.[12, 33, 36, 37] Cough may also cause new problems, such as rib fractures,[36, 38, 39] or lead to life-threatening complications.[40-42]

Chronic cough is embarrassing for patients, interrupts conversation, stresses relationships and leads to social isolation. Families and friends may find it difficult to tolerate the repetitive noise,[3, 33, 37, 38] adding to existing burdens. Cachexia and generalized weakness, common near end-of-life, may make coughing more exhausting and less effective.[6, 29, 36]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of cough) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

### Step 2 | Assessment

Ongoing comprehensive assessment is the foundation of effective cough management, including interview (**see** Cough management algorithm). Use both objective and subjective measures.[11, 43] Cough assessment determines the cause, triggers, impact on quality of life, and effectiveness of treatments.[1, 5, 29, 30, 44-47]

## Cough Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[1]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What triggers your cough? What makes it better? What makes it worse? Is it worse in the morning, after a meal, at night? Smoking history/environmental exposures? Is it positional? Can you talk on the phone? Eat? Drink? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? Sputum? If yes, what colour/amount/frequency? Does if contain any blood? Does it affect your voice? Cause anxiety? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Does it feel like it is coming from your chest or throat? |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? (e.g., pain, shortness of breath)? Does your cough affect these? Do you have chills/fever/joint pain? Wheezing? Night sweats/weight loss? Allergies? Reflux? |
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **Understanding** | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **Values** | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

### Symptom Assessment: Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

Complete history and physical assessment, including oral exam (**see** Cough management algorithm). Review medication, medical/surgical conditions, psychosocial and physical environment, including past/present occupation.[10, 21, 53] Identifying the underlying etiology of the cough is essential in determining the treatment required.[1, 5, 6, 29, 30, 45, 47, 48, 54-57]

### Diagnostics: consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

- Include chest x-ray,[7, 8, 10, 21, 56, 57] CBC, pulse oximetry,[37] and CT scan.[2, 10]

### Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying Causes of Cough in Palliative Care)

In almost all cases, cough is a complication of the primary pathology, but unrelated causes should not be automatically excluded.[3, 10] Chronic cough in the palliative population is usually due to multiple pathological mechanisms which are both cancer related and non-cancer.[6, 37, 53] (**See** Underlying causes of cough in palliative care **for more information**). Cough may be triggered by a wide variety of chemical (e.g., smoke), inflammatory (e.g., histamine), and mechanical (e.g., sputum or thrush) stimuli,[51, 58] producing a cascade of symptom effects.[7, 49]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Identify and immediately treat reversible underlying causes (Underlying causes of cough in palliative care **and** cough extra resources or assessment tools) if possible and appropriate.[6, 12, 50, 56] Often acute cough episodes may be effectively managed.[55]

- Eliminate/reduce triggers to minimize risk of aggravating cough.[6,10, 51]
- Start symptomatic treatment for any distressing cough whether waiting for acute treatments to work or when cough is irreversible.[2, 6, 10]
- Use multiple concurrent therapies to control intractable coughing.[3]
- Involvement of the multi-disciplinary team is essential to support patient/family coping.[3, 9]
- The burdens of cough are significant to patients yet shown to be poorly supported.[49]
- Settle productive cough in dying patients.[6, 29]

## Step 4 | Interventions

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

It may be possible to manage cough in the home or residential care facility with appropriate planning and support for the patient, family and staff; all of these interventions do not necessarily require additional equipment or admission to acute care.

### For Dry Cough

- **Speech therapy strategies**:[32] pursed lip breathing, replace cough with swallow, relaxed throat breath, cough suppression education,[59] and distraction.[67, 68]
- **Nebulized saline**,[3, 9, 65, 66] **steam, or cold air humidifier**[5, 7, 8, 17, 29, 46-48] reduces dryness and irritation of airways. Ensure adequate hydration.[30] Avoid fluid overload.

### For Productive Cough

- Use **airway clearance therapies** (ACTs) as appropriate for condition; these include: active cycle of breathing technique (ACBT), autogenic drainage,[69] and forced expiration to remove secretions. Passive techniques include chest physiotherapy[3, 21] and postural drainage,[1, 5, 21, 29, 30, 44, 46, 48, 60] which is not to be used during acute exacerbation of chronic bronchitis.[1]
- **Nebulized saline** reduces viscosity of thick or purulent secretions to aid expectoration.[37,62,63]
- Suction is usually not indicated except for patients with: tracheostomy, complete esophageal obstruction preventing saliva swallow, bleeding in mouth or throat (use with caution so as not to make it worse), acute fulminant pulmonary edema,[29, 46] or massively secreting bronchogenic tumour.[21]

## Pharmacological interventions
## Direct drug treatment to identified causes
(see Underlying causes of cough in palliative care)

### Mild Cough

Continue non-pharmacological interventions when beneficial

#### Dry

- Demulcents: to soothe irritation, use local anesthetic lozenges or a sweet syrup called 'simple syrup', a mixture of sugar and water, obtained from a pharmacy.[2, 7, 13, 14, 36, 70-72]
- Dextromethorphan[7, 14, 36, 71, 73] has variable benefit.[6]

#### Productive

- Expectorants: Guaifenesin to liquefy viscous mucous and promote expulsion.[2, 13, 37]

### Moderate to Severe Cough

Continue non-pharmacological interventions

#### Dry - demulcents when beneficial

- Morphine:[17, 36, 50, 72, 74] start low (e.g., 2.5 to 5 mg IR PO Q4-6H).[6, 9, 72, 74]
  - ⚠ Review of other opioids reveal no demonstrated superiority over morphine.[59, 72]
- Opioids such as HYDROcodone and HYDROmorphone also provide cough suppression.[28]
  - ☒ **Avoid use of codeine:** benefit no greater than placebo.[75-77] A prior standard of treatment but is now considered either ineffective or provides a highly variable benefit.[36, 78-80,81] Morphine preferred as it is unaffected by pharmacogenomic CYP2D6-dependent metabolism.[6, 74, 82]

- Consult palliative specialist if results unsatisfactory. Further options may include nebulized lidocaine when cough is refractory[41, 72, 78, 83, 84] to add peripheral action to morphine central effects.[37, 71, 72] Otherwise use methadone or gabapentin.[14, 21, 70-72, 85]

**Productive -** may require anticholinergics such as glycopyrrolate or scopolamine at end-of-life.[4, 10, 14, 86]

(See Respiratory Congestion guideline for more information.)

## Management

- Expect maximal morphine benefit within 5 days and, when effective, cough suppression is maintained.[74]
- Titrate drug doses up to effect/tolerable/maximum doses (Medications for management of cough).
    - Once established on morphine, to further decrease coughing, trial additional PRN doses,[9] or an increase of 20-50% of the regularly scheduled morphine dose.[3, 6]
- Treat other ***existing*** symptoms worsened by, ***or resulting from,*** chronic coughing. Prolonged coughing can cascade into aggravating anxiety, shortness of breath, and fatigue.[10, 49, 87]
    - Night time cough management is especially important to provide restful sleep.[7] Aim to settle cough with drugs before bedtime; give sufficiently early for onset to work.
    - Dry night cough is common. Just laying down is reported to often trigger coughing.[49]

### Patient and family education

- Provide information regarding the etiology of cough, expectations of treatment, and practical advice to enhance patient and family coping ability.[29, 59] Discuss fears; acknowledge anxieties.[9]
- Teach patient and family to develop a self-management plan which may include:
  - Eliminating environmental irritants[59] and supporting options for smoking cessation, when applicable.[1, 30, 46, 54, 60, 61]
  - Improving ventilation: open window; use a fan[9]; use humidification.[7]
  - Using positioning, posture, relaxation and anxiety reduction techniques.[1, 3, 9]
- Encourage forced expiratory "huffing" to clear secretions[1, 48, 62, 63] and controlled breathing techniques to reduce cough.[3, 9, 59]
- Proper use of medication; value of response monitoring with cough diary.[7]
- If hemoptysis/risk of massive bleeding, see Severe Bleeding guideline for more information.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH

### Resources specific to cough

- Airway clearance techniques

➡ https://www.cff.org/Life-With-CF/Treatments-and-Therapies/Airway-Clearance/Airway-Clearance-Techniques/

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➡ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➡ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➡ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➡ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➡ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom

management

➡ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF COUGH IN PALLIATIVE CARE[1, 42, 53, 88-90]

| 1. Cancer State | |
|---|---|
| *Directly caused by primary or secondary cancer* | |
| • Airway obstruction by tumour | • Pleural tumor (primary or metastasis) |
| • Lymphangitis carcinomatosis | • Pulmonary parenchymal involvement |
| • Multiple tumour microemboli | • Pulmonary leukostasis |
| • Malignant pleural effusion | • Superior vena cava syndrome |
| *Indirectly caused by cancer* | |
| • Anorexia-Cachexia syndrome | • Paraneoplastic syndrome |
| • Chemotherapy induced | • Pulmonary aspiration |
| • Chemotherapy induced cardiomyopathy (e.g., Doxorubicin) | • Acute pulmonary embolism**[91] |
| | • Radiotherapy lung damage |

*Underlying causes of cough in palliative care continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF COUGH *CONTINUED*

| **2. Non-Cancer State** | |
|---|---|
| ***Immuno-compromised*** | ***Neuromuscular pathology*** † (applies to all NMP) |
| • Prolonged neutropenia | • Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) |
| • HIV with CD4 count less than 200 cells/L | • Cerebral vascular disease (CVA) |
| • End stage weakness<br>  • heart failure (CHF)<br>  • kidney failure (CRF)<br>  • respiratory failure (COPD or fibrosis) | • Hereditary ataxia<br>• Late stage dementia (any type)<br>• Muscular Sclerosis (MS)<br>† If dysphagia, refer to Dysphagia guidelines |
| **3. Unrelated to Primary Disease**[41] | |
| • **Asthma** | • **Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)** |
| • Bronchiectasis<br>• Chronic bronchitis/**bronchospasm** | • Upper airway cough syndrome<br>• (non-infectious, rhinosinus **post-nasal drip**) |
| • **Infection –** pneumonia, candidiasis (bacterial/fungal) | • **Sleep Apnea**[2] |
| **4. Iatrogenic - Medications** | |
| **Drug Classes** | **Specific Causative Examples*** |
| • ACE Inhibitors | 7 to 15% including Ramipril, Captopril, Perindopril, others |
| • Anticonvulsants | Clobazam 3-7%, Gabapentin 1.8%, Levetiracetam 2-9% |
| • Antidepressants | Duloxetine 3% |
| • Antiretrovirals | Lamivudine 18%, Ritonavir 21.7% |

*Underlying causes of cough in palliative care continued on* next page

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF COUGH *CONTINUED*

| | |
|---|---|
| • Antihypertensives | Carvedilol 5-8%, Diltiazem 2%, Felodipine 0.8-1.7%, Losartan 17-29% (in hypertensive patients who had already experienced cough while receiving ACE-inhibitor therapy), Telmisartan 1.6-15.6% |
| • Antipsychotics | Aripiprazole 3%, Olanzapine 6%, Quetiapine 3%, Risperidone 2% |
| • Chemotherapy | Abiraterone 10.6-17.3%, Bevacizumab 26-30%, Bleomycin, Busulfan 28% IV, Erlotinib 16-48%, Gefitinib, Letrozole 5-13%, Methotrexate, Sunitinib 27% (renal cell carcinoma), Temozolomide 5%, Trastuzumab 26-43% (metastatic breast cancer) |
| • Inhalational agents | Ipratropium, Salbutamol, Corticosteroids |
| • Opioids | Fentanyl 1%, Oxycodone 1-5% |
| • Other | Amiloride greater than 1% to less than 3%, Celecoxib < 2%, Diclofenac 4%, Ertapenem 1.3%, Everolimus 20-30% (tumors), 7% (Kidney transplant), Filgrastim 14% (myelosuppressive chemotherapy), Influximab 12%, Granisetron 2.2%, Memantine 4%, Midazolam 1.3%, Oxybutynin 1-5%, Pamidronate up to 25.7%, Pancrelipase 6-10%, Pravastatin 1.2-8.2%, Sibutramine 3.8%, Tamsulosin 3.4-4.5%, Testosterone < 3%, Ursodiol 7.1%, , Zoledronic acid 12% (hypocalcemia of malignancy), 22% (bone metastasis). |

* There are many medications that are reported to cause cough.[92] This table provides some examples. Consult pharmacist if additional assistance is required.

** Up to 50% of patients with pulmonary embolism present with a cough.[2]

**Bolded** – identifies the causes of cough that are most reversible or treatable.[9, 93]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Simple Syrup**<br><br>**(for dry cough)** | 10 mL PO Q2 to 4 H[86] | Safe for use;[36] contents are sugar and water. Monitor use in diabetics. Effectiveness may be limited to time of contact, 20 to 30 minutes.[2] Mechanism of action unknown.[9] Sugar content may reduce cough reflex by increasing saliva production, swallowing,[7] and may act as a protective barrier to sensory receptors in the throat.[7, 70] |
| **GuaiFENesin**<br><br>**(for wet cough)** | 200 to 400 mg PO Q4H[10, 70, 72, 99]<br><br>Maximum daily dose: 2400 mg[10] | **Adverse effects:** Gastric irritant, may rarely cause nausea and vomiting at higher doses.[4, 72] Urolithiasis, headache.[4]<br><br>**Contraindicated:** Hypersensitivity to guaiFENesin products.<br><br>**Precautions: Not for use for patients who are unable to cough**,[70, 72] e.g., neuromuscular disease such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.[6] Do not confuse with guanFACINE (different drug). Not for use in children younger than 6 years.[100] |
| **Dextromethorphan**<br><br>**(for dry cough)** | 15 to 30 mg PO Q4 to 8H [86]<br><br>Maximum daily dose: 120 mg[3, 72, 86] | **Onset:** 15 to 30 minutes.[101]<br>**Adverse effects:** Rash, hives, risk of serotonin syndrome.[102] Uncommon: nausea, drowsiness, vomiting, stomach discomfort, and constipation.[101]<br><br>**Contraindicated:** Concurrent or within 14 days of monoamine oxidase inhibitor use.[102]<br><br>**Precautions** with selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors or other medications for depression or Parkinson's disease, or for 2 weeks after stopping the medication. Not for use in children younger than 6 years.[100] Risk abuse, especially among adolescents, producing euphoria and hallucinations.[101] Metabolized by cytochrome P450 CYP2D6; monitor for potential drug interactions.[6, 72] |

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH
*CONTINUED*

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Morphine †**<br><br>**(for dry cough)** | Starting dose:<br>2.5 to 5 mg PO Q4-6H | **Adverse effects:** Typical opioid side effects such as sedation, constipation, and nausea.[12] Assess for intolerance.<br><br>**Contraindicated:** chronic cough due to bronchiectasis.[2]<br><br>**Precautions:** Renal impairment. Do not normally use to manage cough due to known reversible causes.[72] **See** Underlying Causes of Cough in Palliative Care **and D**<br><br>**Dosing:** Other routes of administration include IV, SC (reduce oral dose by half).[72] Sustained release morphine 10 mg Q12H reduced cough by 40%.[21, 74] When already on morphine, continue and use the existing immediate-release breakthrough analgesic dose (oral if able or subcutaneous equivalent) for the relief of cough. A maximum of 6 doses can be taken in 24 hours for all indications (pain, breathlessness and cough). Titrate both regular and breakthrough doses as required.[9] |

*Medications for management of cough continued on* next page

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH
*CONTINUED*

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| HYDROcodone<br><br>(for dry cough) | Starting dose: Controlled release resin complex:<br>5 mL or one tablet every 8 to 12 hours<br><br>Maximum daily dose: 10 mL or 2 tablets.[103] | **Adverse effects:** Constipation, drowsiness, nausea.[103]<br>**Contraindicated:** Chronic cough due to bronchiectasis,[2] marked hypertension, patients receiving monoamine oxidase inhibitors,<br>pre-existing respiratory depression, intra-cranial lesions with increased intracranial pressure.[103]<br>**Precautions:** Use with hypnotics/sedatives.[103] Suspension must not be diluted with fluids or mixed with other drugs because this alters the resin-binding and changes the absorption rate.[103]<br>**Dosing:** Product is a controlled-release resin complex **containing HYDROcodone 5 mg and an antihistamine phenyltoloxamine 10 mg per tablet or 5 mL.** The antihistamine may potentiate the antitussive effects of HYDROcodone. HYDROcodone has less antitussive activity than morphine,[28] but shown effective at 10mg/day.[21] HYDROcodone is significantly metabolized into 2 metabolites by cytochrome CYP2D6 (into HYDROmorphone) and CYP3A4 (into active norhydrocodone).[104] Cough suppression effectiveness and toxicity of HYDROcodone may be dependent[104] (unconfirmed) on CYP2D6 metabolism, and a switch to another opioid such as HYDROmorphone or morphine maybe preferred.[28, 82] |

*Medications for management of cough continued on next page*

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH
*CONTINUED*

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| HYDROmorphone<br><br>(for dry cough) | Starting dose: 0.5 to 1 mg PO Q4H<br>Dose Q6H if renal impairment | **Adverse effects:** Typical opioid side effects such as sedation, constipation, and nausea.[12] Assess for intolerance.<br>**Contraindicated:** Chronic cough due to bronchiectasis.[2]<br>**Precautions:** May accumulate in renal impairment, less so than morphine.<br>**Dosing:** HYDROmorphone is not metabolized by CYP450 enzymes to any great extent[82]. |
| **Lidocaine 2%** †<br>Preservative free<br><br>**(for dry cough)** | 2 to 5 mL in 1 mL of normal saline Q4H<br>**Nebulized**[53, 78]<br>Maximum daily dose: 5 mL Q4H | **Adverse effects:** Well-tolerated, bitter taste, dysphonia, oropharyngeal numbness.[78]<br>**Precautions: Keep NPO for at least 1 hour after use**[10, 72] to prevent aspiration risk. May precipitate bronchospasm in asthmatic patients.[53, 105] Monitor patients with hepatic disease for toxicity.[78] Use with oxygen; a standard pre-dose of salbutamol suggested in 1 case report to mitigate lidocaine-induced bronchospasm.[78] **Avoid inhalation of preservative containing formulations.** Use plain lidocaine sterile parenteral solutions to nebulize.<br>**Dosing:** Rinse and spit after nebulization to minimize numbness of lips and tongue.[52] Use a mouthpiece rather than a mask for inhalation.[52]<br>Bupivacine (0.25% 5 mL nebulized Q4H) has been suggested as an alternative and is also an amide local anesthetic.[52,41] |

*Medications for management of cough continued on next page*

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH
*CONTINUED*

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| Nicotine Patch<br><br>(smoking cessation aid)<br> | Apply one patch every 24 hours.<br><br>Select dose based on smoking use,<br>e.g.,<br>7, 14, 21 mg | **Adverse effects:** Skin irritation, sleep disturbance.<br>**Precautions** in heart, thyroid, circulation or stomach problems, stroke or high blood pressure. For patients taking insulin or any prescription medications, consult physician.[106]<br>**Dosing:** Assess potential for current drugs levels to increase after stopping cigarette smoking. Hydrocarbons in tobacco smoke induce CYP1A2 metabolism and smoking cessation may increase drug levels of drugs including: olanzapine, fluvoxamine, clozapine, propranolol, caffeine. As other smoking cessation products exist that may be more suitable, review with health care professional.<br>Check patient eligibility for drug product coverage through the BC Smoking Cessation program. |

*Medications for management of cough continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH
*CONTINUED*

| Drug (classification) | Dose, Therapeutic Range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| **Dexamethasone**<br><br>**(Corticosteroid -anti-inflammatory)** | Dosing<br>2 to 16 mg daily,<br>indication specific | **For indications:** non-asthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis, un-controlled asthma, stridor, tumor-related edema, chronic interstitial lung disease, lymphangitis, radiotherapy/chemotherapy induced pneumonitis carcinomatosis, or superior vena cava obstruction.[3, 6, 14, 21, 71, 107]<br><br>**Adverse effects:** Candidiasis, fluid retention, gastritis, hypokalemia, hyperglycemia, myopathy, insomnia, impaired wound healing, psychosis.[9, 108, 109] After 6 weeks of use, greater risk of steroid-induced diabetes, proximal myopathy, lipodystrophy (moon face, buffalo hump), and after 3 months, of osteoporosis and glaucoma.[109] For symptomatic gastroprotection while on corticosteroids, if medical history suggests need, use a proton pump inhibitor such as pantoprazole or rabeprazole.<br><br>**Contraindicated** when systemic infection, unless considered to be life-saving and specific anti-infective therapy is employed.[109]<br><br>**Precautions:** Use in patients with psychotic illness (lower dose below 6 mg daily), seizure disorders, hypertension, diabetes.[108]<br><br>**Dosing:** Assess for potential drug interactions, particularly anticoagulants, anticonvulsants and anticoagulants. Avoid NSAIDs as increases peptic ulceration risk 15-fold together.[109] Reduce dose to the minimum effective dose to avoid side effects.[110] |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily,

*Medications for management of cough continued on* next page

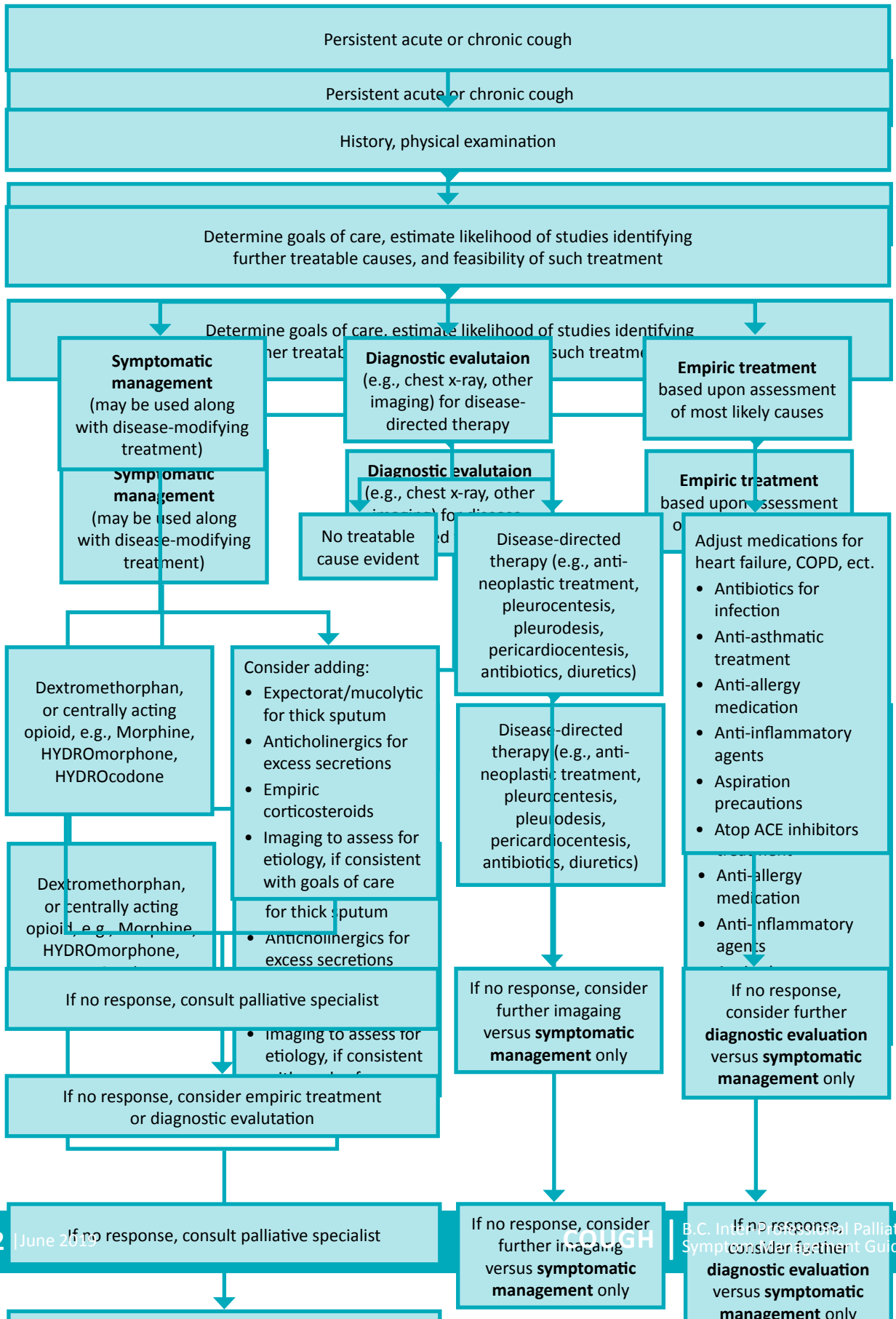
## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF COUGH
*CONTINUED*

QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## COUGH MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM[6]



BC Centre for Palliative Care

# COUGH EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

## Treatments for Common Causes of Cough[1-3, 5, 6, 9-11, 14, 21, 29, 30, 45, 47, 48, 54, 55, 61, 71, 86, 93-97,98]

| Underlying Cause | Treatment of Choice |
|---|---|
| ALS | Glycopyrrolate, atropine or scopolamine to dry secretions. (**see** Additional Resources for Management of Cough) |
| **Bronchospasm**/Bronchiectasis | Bronchodilators, antibiotics. |
| Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) / **Asthma** | Conventional inhalers/nebulized drugs to dilate airways; cortico-steroids to suppress inflammation. Nebulize saline to reduce viscosity and aid expectoration, if purulent phlegm. |
| Congestive Heart Failure | Conventional medications to decrease excess fluid, e.g., diuretics. |
| End stage weakness | Suppress and settle with suppressant, anxiolytic, glycopyrrolate, atropine or scopolamine. (see Respiratory Congestion guideline) |
| **Gastroesophageal reflux** | Proton pump inhibitor, H2 inhibitor, motility agent, elevate head of bed, drain contributing ascites. |
| **Infection - Pneumonia** | Prevention of aspiration. Oral antibiotics may help decrease productive cough that is disturbing sleep, or causing pain or hemoptysis. Nebulized saline may help patients to expectorate thick, tenacious secretions. |
| Malignant pleural effusion | Thoracentesis (with PleurX catheter, if repeated drainage required) or pleurodesis; lying on the same side can decrease related cough. |
| Medications | • Discontinue; replace ACE inhibitors if possible. May sensitize. Antitussives ineffective to treat. ACE-induced cough.<br>• Stop/reduce smoking. Cessation using nicotine patch will minimize airway irritation. |
| Post radiation lung damage | • Corticosteroids |

| | |
|---|---|
| Superior Vena Cava (SVC) obstruction | • Radiotherapy/corticosteroids |
| Tumor related airway irritation | • Radiotherapy/brachytherapy, laser treatment, self-expandable stents or corticosteroids. |
| **Upper airway cough syndrome** (post-nasal drip) – allergies, infection, sinusitis | • Nasal corticosteroids or ipratropium. Oral antibiotics for sinusitis, expectorants (guaifenesin) or anti-histamine. |

**Bolded** – identifies the causes of cough that are most reversible or treatable.[9, 93]

## COUGH REFERENCES


1. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]
2. Alexander K, Goldberg J, Korc-Grodzicki B. Palliative Care and Symptom Management in Older Patients with Cancer. Clin Geriatr Med. 2016;32(1):45-62.
3. Bruera E. ABC of palliative care. Anorexia, cachexia, and nutrition. BMJ. 1997;315(7117):1219-22.
4. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Anorexia/ Cachexia. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2014.
5. Buduhan V, Cashman R, Cooper E, Levy K, Sherriff C, Syme A. Anorexia and Cachexia. Symptom Management Guidelines: BC Cancer Agency; 2010.
6. Wholihan D. Anorexia and cachexia. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2015.
7. Del Fabbro E, Dalal S, Bruera E. Symptom control in palliative care--Part II: cachexia/anorexia and fatigue. J Palliat Med. 2006;9(2):409-21.
8. Fearon K, Strasser F, Anker SD, Bosaeus I, Bruera E, Fainsinger RL, et al. Definition and classification of cancer cachexia: an international consensus. Lancet Oncol. 2011;12(5):489-95.
9. Blum D, Strasser F. Cachexia assessment tools. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2011;5(4):350-5.

10. Evans WJ, Morley JE, Argilés J, Bales C, Baracos V, Guttridge D, et al. Cachexia: a new definition. Clin Nutr. 2008;27(6):793-9.

11. Baracos V, Watanabe S, Fearon K. Aetiology, classification, assessment, and treatment of the anorexia-cachexia syndrome. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2015.

12. McGeer AJ, Detsky AS, O'Rourke K. Parenteral nutrition in cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy: a meta-analysis. Nutrition. 1990;6(3):233-40.

13. Davis MP, Dickerson D. Cachexia and anorexia: cancer's covert killer. Support Care Cancer. 2000;8(3):180-7.

14. Scotland N. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines2014 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/symptom-control/Nausea-and-Vomiting.aspx.

15. Reid J, McKenna H, Fitzsimons D, McCance T. The experience of cancer cachexia: a qualitative study of advanced cancer patients and their family members. Int J Nurs Stud. 2009;46(5):606-16.

16. Molfino A, Laviano A, Rossi Fanelli F. Contribution of anorexia to tissue wasting in cachexia. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2010;4(4):249-53.

17. Tsiompanou E. Treatments for anorexia and cachexia in chronic disease and palliative care. 2010.

18. Kittelson SM, Elie MC, Pennypacker L. Palliative Care Symptom Management. Crit Care Nurs Clin North Am. 2015;27(3):315-39.

19. Laugsand EA, Kaasa S, de Conno F, Hanks G, Klepstad P, EAPC RSCot. Intensity and treatment of symptoms in 3,030 palliative care patients: a cross-sectional survey of the EAPC Research Network. J Opioid Manag. 2009;5(1):11-21.

20. Tran H-P. Palliative Care: Anorexia & Cachexia.

21. Wallengren O, Lundholm K, Bosaeus I. Diagnostic criteria of cancer cachexia: relation to quality of life, exercise capacity and survival in unselected palliative care patients. Support Care Cancer. 2013;21(6):1569-77.

22. von Haehling S, Anker SD. Cachexia as a major underestimated and unmet medical need: facts and numbers. J Cachexia Sarcopenia Muscle. 2010;1(1):1-5.

23. Ebner N, Springer J, Kalantar-Zadeh K, Lainscak M, Doehner W, Anker SD, et al.

Mechanism and novel therapeutic approaches to wasting in chronic disease. Maturitas. 2013;75(3):199-206.

24. von Haehling S, Lainscak M, Springer J, Anker SD. Cardiac cachexia: a systematic overview. Pharmacol Ther. 2009;121(3):227-52.

25. Bennani-Baiti N, Davis MP. Cytokines and cancer anorexia cachexia syndrome. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2008;25(5):407-11.

26. Baracos V. What medications are effective in improving anorexia and weight loss in cancer? In: Goldstein N, Morrison S (eds). 2013. In: Evidence-Based Practice in Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Philadelphia: Elsevier Press; [153-7].

27. Tuca A, Jimenez-Fonseca P, Gascón P. Clinical evaluation and optimal management of cancer cachexia. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol. 2013;88(3):625-36.

28. Bruera E, Dev R. Overview of managing common non-pain symptoms in palliative care UpToDate2017 [Available from: https://www.uptodate.com/contents/overview-of-managing-common-non-pain-symptoms-in-palliative-care?source=search_result&search=Overview%20of%20managing%20common%20non-pain%20symptoms%20in%20palliative&selectedTitle=1~150.

29. Kotler DP. Cachexia. Ann Intern Med. 2000;133(8):622-34.

30. Kalantar-Zadeh K, Norris KC. Is the malnutrition-inflammation complex the secret behind greater survival of African-American dialysis patients? J Am Soc Nephrol. 2011;22(12):2150-2.

31. Freeman LM. The pathophysiology of cardiac cachexia. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2009;3(4):276-81.

32. Watson M, Lucas L, Hoy A, Wells J. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Care. Oxford: Oxford University Press; 2009.

33. Syme A, Fimrite A. Gastrointestinal. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Medical Care if the Dying. Victoria, B.C. Canada: Victoria Hospice Society Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006.

34. Walker P, Bruera E. Cachexia Syndrome. In: MacDonald N, Oneschuk D, Hagen N, Doyle D, editors. Palliative Medicine - A care based manual. New York: Oxford University Press Inc; 2005.

35. Fainsinger RL PJ. Clinical assessment and decision-making in cachexia and anorexia.

In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. New York, New York: Oxford University Press Inc.; 2005.

36. Lissoni P, Paolorossi F, Tancini G, Barni S, Ardizzoia A, Brivio F, et al. Is there a role for melatonin in the treatment of neoplastic cachexia? Eur J Cancer. 1996;32A(8):1340-3.

37. Bruera E, Roca E, Cedaro L, Carraro S, Chacon R. Action of oral methylprednisolone in terminal cancer patients: a prospective randomized double-blind study. Cancer Treat Rep. 1985;69(7-8):751-4.

38. Salacz M. Megestrol Acetate for Cancer Anorexia Cachexia 2003 [Available from: http://www.aahpm.org/cgi-bin/wkcgi/view?status=A%20&search=256&id=504&offset=0&limit=25

39. Del Ferraro C, Grant M, Koczywas M, Dorr-Uyemura LA. Management of Anorexia-Cachexia in Late Stage Lung Cancer Patients. J Hosp Palliat Nurs. 2012;14(6).

40. Bruera E, Dev R. Palliative Care: Assessment and management of anorexia and cachexia: UpToDate; 2017 [

41. Murray K, Shadd J. Anorexia and Cachexia at End of Life. Room 217 Foundation; 2011.

42. Dewey A, Baughan C, Dean T, Higgins B, Johnson I. Eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA, an omega-3 fatty acid from fish oils) for the treatment of cancer cachexia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2007(1):CD004597.

43. Morishita S, Kaida K, Tanaka T, Itani Y, Ikegame K, Okada M, et al. Prevalence of sarcopenia and relevance of body composition, physiological function, fatigue, and health-related quality of life in patients before allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. Support Care Cancer. 2012;20(12):3161-8.

44. Capuano G, Gentile PC, Bianciardi F, Tosti M, Palladino A, Di Palma M. Prevalence and influence of malnutrition on quality of life and performance status in patients with locally advanced head and neck cancer before treatment. Support Care Cancer. 2010;18(4):433-7.

45. Reuben DB, Mor V, Hiris J. Clinical symptoms and length of survival in patients with terminal cancer. Arch Intern Med. 1988;148(7):1586-91.

46. Rhondali W, Chisholm GB, Daneshmand M, Allo J, Kang DH, Filbet M, et al. Association between body image dissatisfaction and weight loss among patients with advanced cancer and their caregivers: a preliminary report. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;45(6):1039-49.

47. Oberholzer R, Hopkinson JB, Baumann K, Omlin A, Kaasa S, Fearon KC, et al. Psychosocial effects of cancer cachexia: a systematic literature search and qualitative analysis. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2013;46(1):77-95.

48. Del Río MI, Shand B, Bonati P, Palma A, Maldonado A, Taboada P, et al. Hydration and nutrition at the end of life: a systematic review of emotional impact, perceptions, and decision-making among patients, family, and health care staff. Psychooncology. 2012;21(9):913-21.

49. Raijmakers NJ, Clark JB, van Zuylen L, Allan SG, van der Heide A. Bereaved relatives' perspectives of the patient's oral intake towards the end of life: a qualitative study. Palliat Med. 2013;27(7):665-72.

50. (NCI) NCI. Nutrition in Cancer Care (PDQ) 2011 [Available from: http://www.concer.gov/cancertopics/pdq/supportivecare/nutrition/Patient/page1.

51. Radbruch L, Elsner F, Trottenberg P, Strasser F, Fearon K. Clinical practice guidelines on cancer cachexia in advanced cancer patients. Aachen: Department of Palliative Medicine/European Palliative Care Research Collaborative; 2010.

52. Wilkes G, Smallcomb K. Nutritional Issues Facing Lung Cancer Individuals. In: Haas, ML., editor. 2nd ed ed. Sudburry, Massachuesetts: Jones and Bartlett; 2010.

53. Network NCC. Guidelines 2012 [cited 2017 May 2017]. Available from: http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/categories_of_consensus.asp.

54. Ferrell BR, Coyle N. The nature of suffering and the goals of nursing. Oncol Nurs Forum. 2008;35(2):241-7.

55. Tomíska M, Tomisková M, Salajka F, Adam Z, Vorlícek J. Palliative treatment of cancer anorexia with oral suspension of megestrol acetate. Neoplasma. 2003;50(3):227-33.

56. Syme A. Cachexia - Anorexia Syndrome. In: Downing GM, Wainwright W, editors. Victoria, BC Canada: Victoria Hospice Society Learning Centre for Palliative Care; 2006.

57. ONS. Measuring Oncology Nursing-Sensitive Patient Outcomes: Evidence Based Summary: Nutritional Status 2005. Available from: http://www.ons.org/outcomes/Clinical/pdf/NutritionOverview.pdfAvailable from: https://www.ons.org/search?search_api_views_fulltext=outcomes%20Clinical%20pdf%20NutritionSummary.pdf.

58. Bruera E, Sweeney C. Pharmacological interventions in cachexia and anorexia. In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. New York, New York: Oxford University Press Inc.; 2005.

59. Milne AC, Potter J, Avenell A. Protein and energy supplementation in elderly people at risk from malnutrition. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2002(3):CD003288.

60. Home Parenteral Nutrition and Cancer - Selection Criteria for Patients with Advanced Cancer 2002 [Available from: http://www.palliative.org/PC/ClinicalInfo/Clinical%20Practice%20Guidelines/PDF%20files/Home%20Parenteral.pdf.

61. M E. Artificial Nutrition and Hydration: Clinical Issues: Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing; 2003.

62. Del Fabbro E, Hui D, Dalal S, Dev R, Nooruddin ZI, Noorhuddin Z, et al. Clinical outcomes and contributors to weight loss in a cancer cachexia clinic. J Palliat Med. 2011;14(9):1004-8.

63. Kwang AY, Kandiah M. Objective and subjective nutritional assessment of patients with cancer in palliative care. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2010;27(2):117-26.

64. von Gruenigen VE, Courneya KS, Gibbons HE, Kavanagh MB, Waggoner SE, Lerner E. Feasibility and effectiveness of a lifestyle intervention program in obese endometrial cancer patients: a randomized trial. Gynecol Oncol. 2008;109(1):19-26.

65. Bruera E, Chadwick S, Cowan L, Drebit D, Hanson J, MacDonald N, et al. Caloric intake assessment in advanced cancer patients: comparison of three methods. Cancer Treat Rep. 1986;70(8):981-3.

66. Hoekstra J, Vernooij-Dassen MJ, de Vos R, Bindels PJ. The added value of assessing the 'most troublesome' symptom among patients with cancer in the palliative phase. Patient Educ Couns. 2007;65(2):223-9.

67. Sze FK, Chung TK, Wong E, Lam KK, Lo R, Woo J. Pain in Chinese cancer patients under palliative care. Palliat Med. 1998;12(4):271-7.

68. Lunney JR, Lynn J, Foley DJ, Lipson S, Guralnik JM. Patterns of functional decline at the end of life. JAMA. 2003;289(18):2387-92.

69. Ma C, Bandukwala S, Burman D, Bryson J, Seccareccia D, Banerjee S, et al. Interconversion of three measures of performance status: an empirical analysis. Eur J Cancer. 2010;46(18):3175-83.

70. Seow H, Barbera L, Sutradhar R, Howell D, Dudgeon D, Atzema C, et al. Trajectory of performance status and symptom scores for patients with cancer during the last six months of life. J Clin Oncol. 2011;29(9):1151-8.

71. Del Fabbro E, Jatoi A, Davis M, Fearon K, di Tomasso J, Vigano A. Health professionals' attitudes toward the detection and management of cancer-related anorexia-cachexia syndrome, and a proposal for standardized assessment. J Community Support Oncol. 2015;13(5):181-7.

72. Leuenberger M, Kurmann S, Stanga Z. Nutritional screening tools in daily clinical practice: the focus on cancer. Support Care Cancer. 2010;18 Suppl 2:S17-27.

73. Strasser F. Nutrition. In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. New York, New York: Oxford University Press Inc.; 2005.

74. McMillian D, Wigmore S, Fearon K, O'Gorman P, Wright C, McArdie C. A prospective randomized study of megestrol acetate and ibuprofen in gastrointestional cancer patients with weight loss.: British Journal of Cancer; 1999.

75. Paolini CA, Family Medicine DvoG. Symptoms management at the end of life. J Am Osteopath Assoc. 2001;101(10):609-15.

76. Yeomans W. Hydration and Nutrition in Palliative Care. The Canadian Journal of CME. 1997:111-5.

77. Board NF. Guideline for the Management of Anorexia/ Cachexia Syndrome

in Palliative Care. Fife Palliative Care Guidelines: Fife Area Drug and Theraprutics Committee; 2009.

78. Holder H. Nursing management of nutrition in cancer and palliative care. Br J Nurs. 2003;12(11):667-8, 70, 72-4.

79. Baracos V. What therapeutic strategies are effective in improving anorexia weight loss in non-malignant disease? In: Goldstein N, Morrison S (eds). Philadelphia: Elsevier Press; 2013.

80. Baldwin C. Nutritional support for malnourished patients with cancer. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2011;5(1):29-36.

81. Löbbe VA. Nutrition in the last days of life. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2009;3(3):195-202.

82. Maddocks M, Murton AJ, Wilcock A. Therapeutic exercise in cancer cachexia. Crit Rev Oncog. 2012;17(3):285-92.

83. Grande AJ, Silva V, Riera R, Medeiros A, Vitoriano SG, Peccin MS, et al. Exercise for cancer cachexia in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2014(11):CD010804.

84. Skelly RH. Are we using percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy appropriately in the elderly? Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care. 2002;5(1):35-42.

85. Cline D. Nutrition issues and tools for palliative care. Home Healthc Nurse. 2006;24(1):54-7.

86. Hoda D, Jatoi A, Burnes J, Loprinzi C, Kelly D. Should patients with advanced, incurable cancers ever be sent home with total parenteral nutrition? A single institution's 20-year experience. Cancer. 2005;103(4):863-8.

87. Brard L, Weitzen S, Strubel-Lagan SL, Swamy N, Gordinier ME, Moore RG, et al. The effect of total parenteral nutrition on the survival of terminally ill ovarian cancer patients. Gynecol Oncol. 2006;103(1):176-80.

88. Locher JL, Bonner JA, Carroll WR, Caudell JJ, Keith JN, Kilgore ML, et al. Prophylactic percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube placement in treatment of head and neck cancer: a comprehensive review and call for evidence-based medicine. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr. 2011;35(3):365-74.

89. Miller RG, Jackson CE, Kasarskis EJ, England JD, Forshew D, Johnston W, et al. Practice parameter update: the care of the patient with amyotrophic lateral

sclerosis: drug, nutritional, and respiratory therapies (an evidence-based review): report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology. Neurology. 2009;73(15):1218-26.

90. Payne C, Wiffen PJ, Martin S. Interventions for fatigue and weight loss in adults with advanced progressive illness. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;1:CD008427.

91. Loprinzi C, Jatoi A. Pharmacologic management of cancer anorexia/cachexia: UpToDate; 2017 [

92. Maltoni M, Nanni O, Scarpi E, Rossi D, Serra P, Amadori D. High-dose progestins for the treatment of cancer anorexia-cachexia syndrome: a systematic review of randomised clinical trials. Ann Oncol. 2001;12(3):289-300.

93. Ruiz Garcia V, López-Briz E, Carbonell Sanchis R, Gonzalvez Perales JL, Bort-Marti S. Megestrol acetate for treatment of anorexia-cachexia syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013(3):CD004310.

94. Network CPCK. Appetite Stimulants. 2017.

95. Bruera E, Dev R. Overview of managing common non-pain symptoms in palliative care: UpToDate; 2017 [

96. Palliative Care. In: Oncology NCPGi, editor.: National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2017.

97. Black I. Cough 2016 [4th ed:[Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=9&searchstring=anorexia.

98. Twycross R, Wilcock A. Progestogens. 2011. In: Palliative Care Formulary [Internet]. UK 4th ed.

99. Marshall LL. Megestrol acetate therapy in geriatric patients: case reviews and associated deep vein thrombosis. Consult Pharm. 2003;18(9):764-73.

100. Loprinzi CL, Kugler JW, Sloan JA, Mailliard JA, Krook JE, Wilwerding MB, et al. Randomized comparison of megestrol acetate versus dexamethasone versus fluoxymesterone for the treatment of cancer anorexia/cachexia. J Clin Oncol. 1999;17(10):3299-306.

101. Yavuzsen T, Davis MP, Walsh D, LeGrand S, Lagman R. Systematic review of the treatment of cancer-associated anorexia and weight loss. J Clin Oncol. 2005;23(33):8500-11.

102. Navari RM, Brenner MC. Treatment of cancer-related anorexia with olanzapine and megestrol acetate: a randomized trial. Support Care Cancer. 2010;18(8):951-6.

103. Miller S, McNutt L, McCann MA, McCorry N. Use of corticosteroids for anorexia in palliative medicine: a systematic review. J Palliat Med. 2014;17(4):482-5.

104. Scotland HI. Anorexia/ Cachexia. In: Guidelines SPC, editor.: NHS Scotland; 2014.

105. Twycross R, Wilcock A. Systemic corticosteroids. 2011. In: Palliative Care Formulary [Internet]. UK 4th ed.

106. Lundström SH, Fürst CJ. The use of corticosteroids in Swedish palliative care. Acta Oncol. 2006;45(4):430-7.

107. Bruera E, Dev R. Overview of managing common non-pain symptoms in palliative care: UpToDate; 2016 [

108. Appetite Loss - HIV/AIDS [Available from: http://www.cannabis-med.org/studies/study.php?search=&sort=diagnosis.

109. Wazny LD, Nadurak S, Orsulak C, Giles-Smith L, Tangri N. The Efficacy and Safety of Megestrol Acetate in Protein-Energy Wasting due to Chronic Kidney Disease: A Systematic Review. J Ren Nutr. 2016;26(3):168-76.

110. Abstracts of the 8th World Research Congress of the European Association for Palliative Care (EAPC): Lleida, Spain 5-7 June 2014. Palliat Med. 2014;28(6):538-913.

111. Ontario CC. Symptom Management Pocket Guides: Loss of Appetite: Action Cancer Ontario; 2012.

112. Reid J, Mills M, Cantwell M, Cardwell CR, Murray LJ, Donnelly M. Thalidomide for managing cancer cachexia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012(4):CD008664.

113. Yennurajalingam S, Willey JS, Palmer JL, Allo J, Del Fabbro E, Cohen EN, et al. The role of thalidomide and placebo for the treatment of cancer-related anorexia-cachexia symptoms: results of a double-blind placebo-controlled randomized study. J Palliat Med. 2012;15(10):1059-64.

114. Drugs That Cause Cough. Truven Health Analytics Inc.; 2017.

115. Black I. Palliative Care Guidelines Anorexia, Cachexia & Asthenia2016 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=2.

116. Salacz M. Megestrol Acetate for Cancer Anorexia/Cachexia: Palliative Care Network of Wisconsin; 2016 [Available from: https://www.mypcnow.org/blank-bn2th.

117. Loprinzi CL, Michalak JC, Schaid DJ, Mailliard JA, Athmann LM, Goldberg RM, et al. Phase III evaluation of four doses of megestrol acetate as therapy for patients with cancer anorexia and/or cachexia. J Clin Oncol. 1993;11(4):762-7.

118. Megace suspension approved. AIDS Patient Care STDS. 2005;19(9):618-9.

119. Megace OS. Montreal, Canada: Bristol-Myers Squibb Canada; 2016.

120. Shibahara H, Ito T, Uematsu N, Imai E, Nishimura D. [Low-dose mirtazapine improved nausea and appetite loss during S-1 therapy]. Gan To Kagaku Ryoho. 2012;39(1):143-5.

121. Riechelmann RP, Burman D, Tannock IF, Rodin G, Zimmermann C. Phase II trial of mirtazapine for cancer-related cachexia and anorexia. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2010;27(2):106-10.

122. Anorexia-Cachexia  FAACT (Version 4). 2007.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# HICCOUGHS

# HICCOUGHS

## DEFINITION

Hiccoughs are repeated, involuntary spasmodic contractions of the diaphragm and inspiratory muscles followed by sudden closure of the glottis.[1-7] Hiccoughs are categorized according to duration[2,3,4,5,8,9]:

**Acute** – Hiccoughs that last < 48 hours and are common, non-pathologic, and self-limited.[10]

**Persistent** - Hiccoughs lasting 2 days or more.

**Intractable** – Hiccoughs that last more than 1 month and not responsive to treatments.

## PREVALENCE

Persistent or intractable hiccoughs often indicate serious underlying pathology and are most common (10-20%)[4] in those with gastro-intestinal tract, thoracic, or central nervous system disease.[3,5,9-11] Prevalence is relatively low (~1-9%) in the general palliative population.[2,9,12-18]

## IMPACT

Persistent and intractable hiccoughs can interfere with normal daily activity,[5,19] significantly reducing quality of life, causing distress for both patient and family.[4] Potential impacts include: increased anxiety, distress,[7] insomnia, fatigue,[5,20] gastrointestinal reflux, weight loss, vomiting, aspiration pneumonia, dehydration, electrolyte imbalance, cardiac arrhythmias,[21-25] isolation, delirium (in the elderly), wound dehiscence (in post-surgery),[3,9] depression, and in rare situations, death.[23,26-30]

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of hiccoughs) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Hiccough Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[71]

| **M**nemonic Letter | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **O**nset | When did the hiccoughs begin? How long do they last? How often do they occur? |
| **P**rovoking /Palliating | What brings them on? What makes them better? What makes them worse? |
| **Q**uality | What do they feel like? Can you describe them? Do they change when you change position? |
| **R**egion/Radiation | Not applicable |
| **S**everity | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom (e.g., nausea, anxiety or fatigue)? |
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |
| **U**nderstanding | Do they interfere with your ability to eat, drink, talk or enjoy other activities? Do they interfere with your sleep? What do you believe is causing this symptom? How are the hiccoughs affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

Recognize that hiccoughs can be multifactorial in advanced disease and that an extensive workup to find the cause can be harmful. Consider patient status and goals of care in determining extent of diagnostics required.[8]

- Perform a detailed history and physical.[4, 9]
- Review prior surgical interventions; respiratory and gastrointestinal symptoms; infections; and use of alcohol and medications, especially corticosteroids, benzodiazepines, and barbiturates.[18]
- Consider CBC, electrolytes, and chest xray.[9] Include liver ultrasound and liver function tests, serum Calcium,[10, 26, 31] CT, MRI and electrocardiography, as needed.[4]
- Invasive tests such as lumbar puncture and bronchoscopy, depend on the patient's situation.[26]

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of hiccoughs in palliative care)

Over 100 underlying diseases have been associated with hiccoughs.[1,31] Persistent hiccoughs should be taken seriously as they often indicate underlying pathology.

**Common causes** of persistent and intractable hiccoughs include[1,2,4,32,33]

- Gastric stasis and distention (most common)[34]
- Gastro-esophageal reflux[34]
- Metabolic disturbances (e.g., uremia, hypercalcemia, low magnesium)[15]
- Infection
- Irritation of the diaphragm or phrenic nerve

### Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care *continued*

- Hepatobiliary disease/hepatomegaly
- Cerebral causes (e.g., tumour, metastasis, CVD)[8]

### Other important causes

- Myocardial Infarction, pericarditis, aneurysm.[2,7,8,35]
- Medications such as benzodiazepines, opioids, corticosteroids.[2] Risk with dexamethasone is 25%.[15,19] (See Underlying causes of hiccoughs in palliative care for a list of medication causes)
- Chemotherapy, radiotherapy, and surgery[15,18,26,37-39]; nasal, pharyngeal, laryngeal conditions; foreign body in ear canal.[2]
- Anxiety, stress or over-excitement; psychogenic.[2,7]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?).

- Hiccoughs may resolve on their own; try simple physical techniques.
- Try non-pharmacological interventions during acute 48 hours "bout" phase, particularly any that the patient has previously found helpful.
- Consider medications when they are persistent, lasting more than 48 hours.
- Consider the patient's general condition to avoid potential side effects.[8]
- Refer to palliative care consultants when refractory or patient unable to swallow.

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| ⬟ | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ⚠ | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ☒ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological interventions

A wide range of non-pharmacological approaches have been used to treat persistent and intractable hiccoughs; however, their safety and efficacy are unknown as no systematic reviews or clinical trials were found.[8,13] Most treatments have a physiological basis that interrupts the hiccough reflex arc by stimulation of the vagus or phrenic nerves to interfere with normal respiration, or increase pCO2 levels.[4]

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

- ⬟ **Breathe holding** or **drinking** in small sips.[8,13, 33]
- ⬟ **Sip** iced water or **swallow** crushed ice.[33]
- ⬟ **Breathe into a paper bag**, particularly if patient is hyperventilating.[33]

**Behavioral techniques** such as distraction, small meals, fasting and vigorous exercise (may not be an option in frail elderly or advanced disease patients).[9]

**Rub** the soft palate (e.g., with a swab) to stimulate the nasopharynx.[33] Caution as this may trigger gag reflex.

### Interventions requiring additional equipment or admission to acute care

**Nebulized normal saline** — 2ml of NaCL 0.9% nebulized over 5 minutes at regular intervals throughout the day and prn at night. 43 Needs more study but safe; permits patient self-care and could be considered before drug treatment where equipment is available. **Note: in community, may be able to rent or borrow a home nebulizer machine.**

**Acupuncture**,[1,9,33] if available and acceptable to the patient.

**Surgical treatmen**t has shown benefit when cause is known and possibly removable. Cervical phrenic nerve block, only as last resort.[38] Careful patient selection required. Consider implications for overall quality of life. Rarely indicated in the frail elderly[9] or advanced disease patient.

## Pharmacological interventions

A systematic review found little high-level evidence for either non-pharmacological or pharmacological interventions that are effective or harmful.[25] Palliative experts lack consensus of medications considered essential for safe and effective hiccough management and acknowledge that additional research is needed.[44]

As hiccoughs often terminate spontaneously,[25,32,45] drug therapy usually is not indicated unless persistent.

Direct treatment to underlying cause of the condition whenever possible.[6,9,50,60] Baclofen and gabapentin have a lower risk of long term side effects than neuroleptic agents.[50] They are now preferred over chlorpromazine which can be poorly tolerated.[8,41,51]

### Baclofen

Supported by two small RCTs,[40,46] and several case reports .[38,40,46-48] It is suggested to have the best ability to treat hiccoughs.[1, 9] Has been used in cancer and palliative patients with success.[38,45,47,49]

- Single doses of baclofen 10 mg have successfully stopped hiccoughs after 0.5 to 3 hours.[47] This may provide immediate patient comfort if a diagnostic process takes several days.[47]
- Ongoing dosing of baclofen 10 mg bid, up to 10 mg TID, may be indicated for 2 to 5 days.[47]
- Use for a longer duration is indicated if unable to remove triggering cause.[47]

### Gabapentin

- May be preferred in hiccoughs related to CNS disease or if neuropathic pain coincides.[50,51] Has been shown to be effective with advanced cancer patients.[15]

### Adjunctive therapy

- Antiemetics may be required if vomiting accompanies hiccoughs.[4]
- Anxiolytics (e.g., midazolam) if hiccough distress is severe.[25,24] Consider in last days of life.

For more information, see Medications for Management of Hiccoughs.

## Patient and family education[1,8,20,32,33,41,42]

- Hiccoughs that last < 48 hours usually resolve on their own.
- Hiccoughs are often caused by gastric distention, carbonated beverages, alcohol, hot or cold drinks, anxiety or stress.
- Simple non-drug approaches may be helpful, especially if helped in the past.
- Draw from strategies identified in non-pharmacological interventions.
- Contact healthcare provider for hiccoughs that interfere with sleep, or > 2 days.

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF HICCOUGHS

## Resources specific to Hiccoughs

No additional resources specific to hiccoughs included in this document

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20

Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➡ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➡ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➡ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➡ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF HICCOUGHS IN PALLIATIVE CARE [2,5,7,8,38,45]

| Table 1 Drugs reported to cause hiccoughs | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Alcohol | Cyclophosphamide | Gemcitabine | Muscle relaxants |
| Anabolic steroids | Chorionic Gonadotropin | Heroin | Nicotine |
| Aprepitant | **Corticosteroids** | Hydrocodone | Paclitaxel |
| Aripiprazole | **Dexamethasone**** | Irinotecan | Perphenazine |
| Barbiturates | Donepezil | Levodopa | Pergolide |
| **Benzodiazepines** | Docetaxel | Macrolide antibiotics | Progesterone |
| Bupivacaine epidural | Doxycycline | Megestrol | Rocuronium |
| Carboplatin | Ethosuximide | Methotrexate | Sulfonamides |
| Cefotetan | Etomidate | Methylprednisolone | Triamcinolone |
| Chlordiazepoxide | Etoposide | Mexiletine | Vinorelbine |
| **Chemotherapy*** | Fluoroquinolone antibiotics | Midazolam | Zolpidem |
| Cisplatinum | Flumazenil | Morphine | |

* Chemotherapy may be falsely attributed as a cause because dexamethasone is often used concurrently.[52]

** May be dose-related; more prevalent at dexamethasone doses greater than 10 mg daily.[52]

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF HICCOUGHS

There are no approved medications for hiccough use in Canada; everything is off-label.

| Drug, Action | Dose, therapeutic range | Onset, Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| Baclofen<br>1st line empiric[8,31,38,40,41,50,53,54] | 5 to 20 mg PO every 6 to 12 hour, up to 40 mg/day | Drowsiness, dizziness, hypotension, confusion, nausea, ataxia.<br>Alcohol and CNS depressants can be additionally sedating.<br>Avoid in renal failure, or carefully adjust dose due to risk of delirium, respiratory depression.<br>Risk of withdrawal symptoms when abruptly stopped.<br>Use caution in patients with epilepsy. |
| Gabapentin<br>1st line empiric[8,15,51,50] | 100 mg TID to QID to start then titrated up until results are seen, maximum 1200 mg/day | Drowsiness, dizziness, fatigue, ataxia, peripheral edema, visual disturbances, clumsiness/ unsteadiness. Adjust dose for reduced renal function.<br>No hiccough treatment studies in renal impairment.<br>In extended therapy, when possible, gradually reduce dose over a minimum of one week.<br>Very few drug interactions |

*Medications for management of hiccoughs continued on* next page

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF HICCOUGHS *CONTINUED*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Metoclopramide<br>2nd line empiric [32,41,50,55,56] | 10 mg PO,IV,SC TID to QID | Asthenia, headache, drowsiness, fatigue. Serious: tardive dyskinesia, neuroleptic malignant syndrome.<br><br>Adjust dose for reduced renal function.<br>Avoid concurrent use with:<br>• Peppermint water (opposing actions on gastro-esophageal sphincter).<br>• Haloperidol due to increased risk of extrapyramidal symptoms.<br>• GI hemorrhage, mechanical obstruction, or perforation or if GI stimulation might be dangerous.<br>• Parkinson disease.<br>Use caution in patients with epilepsy.<br>Oral metoclopramide is 50-80% bioavailable, consider reducing SC, IV, IM dose by 25-50%. |
| Domperidone<br>2nd line empiric [2,32,50,55] | 10 mg TID to QID | Adverse effects; xerostomia, serious is prolonged QT interval, sudden cardiac death, ventricular arrhythmia. Risk of QT interval prolongation at doses greater than 30 mg/day. Check concurrent drugs for QTc risk. |
| Pantoprazole [41,57] | 40 mg daily to BID | Generally safe. Few drug interactions compared to other PPIs. Concomitant use of antacids does not affect the pharmacokinetics of pantoprazole sodium. |
| Antacid containing simethicone [32] | 10 mL QID | |
| Gaviscon [50] | 10 mL TID | Give after meals. |

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## OTHER PROPOSED DRUG TREATMENTS

(Recommended Only After Palliative Care Consultation)

| Medication | Dose | Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| Amantadine[58,59] | 100 mg PO once or twice daily | Non-sedating. Adjust dose for renal function. Three cases (one was cancer/end of life). |
| Chlorpromazine[5,8,9,41,50-52,60,61] | 25 to 50 mg PO once daily, titrating up to 3 or 4 times daily | Hypotension, sedation, urinary retention, glaucoma, delirium, extrapyramidal symptoms.<br>Assess risk of QTc prolongation, often concerning.<br>Poorly tolerated in elderly patients.<br>Avoid long term due to risk of tardive dyskinesia. Injection discontinued, no longer available in Canada.<br>Only 25, 50 and 100 mg tablets available. |
| Dexamethasone[5,33,62] | 4 up to 8 mg PO daily | Fatigue, sleep disturbance, hiccoughs.<br>Suggested for hepatic or cerebral tumor – to reduce compression/irritation. Few studies. |
| Haloperidol[9,56,63] | 0.5 to 5 mg PO TID<br>Or via SC, IV, IM routes | Avoid concurrently with metoclopramide due to increased risk of extrapyramidal symptoms.<br>Recommended dosing from references varies widely.<br>Older studies used IM route, effectiveness via other routes uncertain, but much less painful.<br>Oral haloperidol is 60-70 % bioavailable, consider reducing SC, IV, IM dose by one-third. |
| Lidocaine 2% viscous [55,64] | 5 mL orally BID to TID | Single case report. Was swallowed in 3 patients; 2 used with baclofen.<br>May impair swallowing, enhancing aspiration risk. Avoid food ingestion for 60 minutes. |
| Lidocaine[1,5,41] | 1 mg/kg loading dose followed by infusion of 2 mg/min CSCI | Risk of cardiovascular and neurologic toxicities. |

## OTHER PROPOSED DRUG TREATMENTS *CONTINUED*

(Recommended Only After Palliative Care Consultation)

| Medication | Dose | Adverse Effects, Precautions and Dosing Concerns |
|---|---|---|
| Methotrimeprazine[32] | 3 to 6 mg PO,SC,IV HS | Injectable alternative to chlorpromazine or haloperidol |
| Midazolam [5,24,33,56] | 5 to 10 mg SC or PO Q4H PRN CSCI: 10 up to 120 mg/ day | Two case reports. Review use and suitability with local palliative care team.<br><br>Adverse effects include sedation, risk of apnea paradoxical reactions, drug interactions, especially with opioids.<br><br>reduced elimination in liver or heart failure, and elderly |
| Olanzapine [60,65,66] | 2.5 to 7.5 mg PO daily | Three cases reports. In two, used in combination with baclofen as 5 mg baclofen BID, other 10 mg TID. |
| Pregabalin [50,67,68,69] | 25 to 75 mg PO BID, up to 375 mg/day | Drowsiness (might be less than gabapentin), dizziness, peripheral edema. Three case reports. |
| Sertraline [70] | 50 to 150 mg PO/ day | Single patient case report. |
| Valproic acid [5,50] | 15 to 20 mg PO per kg/24 hours, divided in 1 or 3 doses | May increase by 250 mg/week until hiccoughs stop. |

† Off-label. PO = by mouth IV = Intravenous, SC = Subcutaneous, TID = three times daily, QID = four times daily ODT = oral dissolving tablet, CSCI = continuous subcutaneous infusion.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan (http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdf) provides province-wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications; check website to confirm coverage. Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient/family is covering the cost.

## HICCOUGH MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## HICCOUGH EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

No extra resources or assessment tools included in this document.

## HICCOUGHS REFERENCES


1. Kaneishi K, Kawabata M. Continuous subcutaneous infusion of lidocaine for persistent hiccup in advanced cancer. Palliat Med. 2013;27(3):284-5.
2. Nausheen F, Mohsin H, Lakhan SE. Neurotransmitters in hiccoughs. Springerplus. 2016;5(1):1357.
3. Hiccoughs (Singultus) [Internet]. 2016 [cited Jan 26, 2017]. Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=10&searchstring=hicc.
4. Clark K. Dysphagia, dyspepsia and hiccup. 5th Ed. ed. Nathan Cherny MF, Stein Kaasa, Russell K. Portenoy, and David C. Currow, editor. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2015. 16 p.
5. Dahlin CM, Cohen AK. Dysphagia, xerostomia, and hiccoughs. 4th ed. ed. editor. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2015. 51 p.
6. Dahlin CM, Cohen AK. Dysphagia, xerostomia, and hiccoughs. 4th ed. ed. Betty R. Ferrell NC, and Judith Paice, editor. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2015. 51 p.
7. Management of Hiccoughs [Internet]. Medical College of Wisconsin. 2013.
8. Agnes Calsina-Berna GG-G, Jesus Gonzalez-Barboteo,, Porta-Sales aJ. Treatment of Chronic Hiccoughs in Cancer Patients: A Systematic Review2012; 15(10).
9. Emily Chai DM, Jane Morris, and Suzanne Goldhirsch. Hiccoughs. Emily Chai DM, Jane Morris, and Suzanne Goldhirsch, editor. Oxford Medicine Online: Oxford University Press; 2014. 7 p.
10. Marinella MA. Diagnosis and management of hiccoughs in the patient with advanced cancer. J Support Oncol. 2009;7(4):122-7, 30.

11. Moretti R, Torre P, Antonello RM, Ukmar M, Cazzato G, Bava A. Gabapentin as a drug therapy of intractable hiccup because of vascular lesion: a three-year follow up. Neurologist. 2004;10(2):102-6.

12. Lee GW, Kim RB, Go SI, Cho HS, Lee SJ, Hui D, et al. Gender Differences in Hiccup Patients: Analysis of Published Case Reports and Case-Control Studies. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2016;51(2):278-83.

13. Choi TY, Lee MS, Ernst E. Acupuncture for cancer patients suffering from hiccoughs: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Complement Ther Med. 2012;20(6):447-55.

14. Potter J, Hami F, Bryan T, Quigley C. Symptoms in 400 patients referred to palliative care services: prevalence and patterns. Palliat Med. 2003;17(4):310-4.

15. Porzio G, Aielli F, Verna L, Aloisi P, Galletti B, Ficorella C. Gabapentin in the treatment of hiccoughs in patients with advanced cancer: a 5-year experience. Clin Neuropharmacol. 2010;33(4):179-80.

16. Walsh D, Donnelly S, Rybicki L. The symptoms of advanced cancer: relationship to age, gender, and performance status in 1,000 patients. Support Care Cancer. 2000;8(3):175-9.

17. Mercadante S, Porzio G, Valle A, Fusco F, Aielli F, Adile C, et al. Orphan symptoms in advanced cancer patients followed at home. Support Care Cancer. 2013;21(12):3525-8.

18. Ripamonti C, Fusco F. Respiratory problems in advanced cancer. Support Care Cancer. 2002;10(3):204-16.

19. Kang JH, Bruera E. Hiccoughs during Chemotherapy: What Should We Do? J Palliat Med. 2015;18(7):572.

20. Clinical Practice Guidelines: Hiccoughs [Internet]. VCH Community Palliative Care. 2007.

21. Arishima H, Kikuta K. [Disseminated metastatic tumor at dorsal surface of medulla oblongata presenting intractable hiccoughs. A case report]. Rinsho Shinkeigaku. 2011;51(4):279-81.

22. Lewis JH. Hiccoughs: causes and cures. J Clin Gastroenterol. 1985;7(6):539-52.

23. Phillips RA. The management of hiccoughs in terminally ill patients. Nurs Times. 2005;101(31):32-3.

24. Wilcock A, Twycross R. Midazolam for intractable hiccup. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1996;12(1):59-61.

25. Moretto EN, Wee B, Wiffen PJ, Murchison AG. Interventions for treating persistent and intractable hiccoughs in adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013(1):CD008768.

26. Launois S, Bizec JL, Whitelaw WA, Cabane J, Derenne JP. Hiccup in adults: an overview. Eur Respir J. 1993;6(4):563-75.

27. Krakauer EL, Zhu AX, Bounds BC, Sahani D, McDonald KR, Brachtel EF. Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Weekly clinicopathological exercises. Case 6-2005. A 58-year-old man with esophageal cancer and nausea, vomiting, and intractable hiccoughs. N Engl J Med. 2005;352(8):817-25.

28. FRIEDGOOD CE, RIPSTEIN CB. Chlorpromazine (thorazine) in the treatment of intractable hiccoughs. J Am Med Assoc. 1955;157(4):309-10.

29. McAllister RK, McDavid AJ, Meyer TA, Bittenbinder TM. Recurrent persistent hiccoughs after epidural steroid injection and analgesia with bupivacaine. Anesth Analg. 2005;100(6):1834-6.

30. Howard RS. Persistent hiccoughs. BMJ. 1992;305(6864):1237-8.

31. Tegeler ML, Baumrucker SJ. Gabapentin for intractable hiccoughs in palliative care. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2008;25(1):52-4.

32. Scotland HI. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines. Scotland: NHS Scotland; 2014.

33. Scotland N. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines2014 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://www.palliativecareguidelines.scot.nhs.uk/guidelines/symptom-control/Nausea-and-Vomiting.aspx.

34. Turkyilmaz A, Eroglu A. Use of baclofen in the treatment of esophageal stent-related hiccoughs. Ann Thorac Surg. 2008;85(1):328-30.

35. Hassen GW, Singh MM, Kalantari H, Yemane-Merriwether S, Ferrante S, Shaw R. Persistent hiccoughs as a rare presenting symptom of pulmonary embolism. West J Emerg Med. 2012;13(6):479-83.

36. Walker P, Watanabe S, Bruera E. Baclofen, a treatment for chronic hiccup. J Pain Symptom Manage. 1998;16(2):125-32.

37. Martínez Rey C, Villamil Cajoto I. [Hiccup: review of 24 cases]. Rev Med Chil. 2007;135(9):1132-8.

38. Smith HS, Busracamwongs A. Management of hiccoughs in the palliative care population. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2003;20(2):149-54.

39. Katsinelos P, Pilpilidis J, Xiarchos P, Christodoulou K, Papagianis A, Amperiadis P, et al. Baclofen therapy for intractable hiccoughs induced by ultraflex esophageal endoprosthesis. Am J Gastroenterol. 2000;95(10):2986-7.

40. Zhang C, Zhang R, Zhang S, Xu M. Baclofen for stroke patients with persistent hiccoughs: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Trials. 2014;15:295.

41. Woelk CJ. Managing hiccoughs. Can Fam Physician. 2011;57(6):672-5, e198-201.

42. Brostoff JM, Birns J, Benjamin E. The “cotton bud technique” as a cure for hiccoughs. Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol. 2009;266(5):775-6.

43. De Ruysscher D, Spaas P, Specenier P. Treatment of intractable hiccup in a terminal cancer patient with nebulized saline. Palliat Med. 1996;10(2):166-7.

44. De Lima L, Bennett MI, Murray SA, Hudson P, Doyle D, Bruera E, et al. International Association for Hospice and Palliative Care (IAHPC) List of Essential Practices in Palliative Care. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother. 2012;26(2):118-22.

45. Seker MM, Aksoy S, Ozdemir NY, Uncu D, Civelek B, Akıncı MB, et al. Successful treatment of chronic hiccup with baclofen in cancer patients. Med Oncol. 2012;29(2):1369-70.

46. Ramírez FC, Graham DY. Treatment of intractable hiccup with baclofen: results of a double-blind randomized, controlled, cross-over study. Am J Gastroenterol. 1992;87(12):1789-91.

47. Mirijello A, Addolorato G, D’Angelo C, Ferrulli A, Vassallo G, Antonelli M, et al. Baclofen in the treatment of persistent hiccup: a case series. Int J Clin Pract. 2013;67(9):918-21.

48. Guelaud C, Similowski T, Bizec JL, Cabane J, Whitelaw WA, Derenne JP. Baclofen therapy for chronic hiccup. Eur Respir J. 1995;8(2):235-7.

49. Tay SS, Yadav RR. Novel use of baclofen in cancer patients for the treatment of hiccoughs. Ann Acad Med Singapore. 2010;39(2):154.

50. Steger M, Schneemann M, Fox M. Systemic review: the pathogenesis and pharmacological treatment of hiccoughs. Aliment Pharmacol Ther.

2015;42(9):1037-50.

51. Thompson DF, Brooks KG. Gabapentin therapy of hiccoughs. Ann Pharmacother. 2013;47(6):897-903.

52. Kang JH, Hui D, Kim MJ, Kim HG, Kang MH, Lee GW, et al. Corticosteroid rotation to alleviate dexamethasone-induced hiccup: a case series at a single institution. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2012;43(3):625-30.

53. Sharma RC. Successful treatment of idiopathic intractable hiccup with baclofen and supportive treatment: a case report. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci. 2015;27(1):e62-3.

54. Chou CL, Chen CA, Lin SH, Huang HH. Baclofen-induced neurotoxicity in chronic renal failure patients with intractable hiccoughs. South Med J. 2006;99(11):1308-9.

55. required) s. Micromedex [Available from: www.micromedexsolutions.com.

56. Twycross R, Wilcock A, Dean M, Kennedy B. Canadian Palliative Care Formulary. Canadian Edition ed: palliativedrugs.com; 2010.

57. Takeda. Pantoloc (pantoprazole sodium). Oakville, ON: Takeda Canada Inc.; 2013. p. 18.

58. Hernandez SL, Fasnacht KS, Sheyner I, King JM, Stewart JT. Treatment of Refractory Hiccoughs with Amantadine. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother. 2015;29(4):374-7.

59. Wilcox SK, Garry A, Johnson MJ. Novel use of amantadine: to treat hiccoughs. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2009;38(3):460-5.

60. Rizzo C, Vitale C, Montagnini M. Management of intractable hiccoughs: an illustrative case and review. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2014;31(2):220-4.

61. Gardecki J, Espinosa J, Lucerna A, Bernhardt J. A case of singultus: Avoiding a hiccup in care. Am J Emerg Med. 2016.

62. Lee GW, Oh SY, Kang MH, Kang JH, Park SH, Hwang IG, et al. Treatment of dexamethasone-induced hiccup in chemotherapy patients by methylprednisolone rotation. Oncologist. 2013;18(11):1229-34.

63. Rousseau P. Hiccoughs in terminal disease. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 1994;11(6):7-10.

64. Neuhaus T, Ko YD, Stier S. Successful treatment of intractable hiccoughs by oral application of lidocaine. Support Care Cancer. 2012;20(11):3009-11.

65. Thompson AN, Ehret Leal J, Brzezinski WA. Olanzapine and baclofen for the treatment of intractable hiccoughs. Pharmacotherapy. 2014;34(1):e4-8.

66. Alderfer BS, Arciniegas DB. Treatment of intractable hiccoughs with olanzapine following recent severe traumatic brain injury. J Neuropsychiatry Clin Neurosci. 2006;18(4):551-2.

67. Matsuki Y, Mizogami M, Shigemi K. A case of intractable hiccoughs successfully treated with pregabalin. Pain Physician. 2014;17(2):E241-2.

68. Vandemergel X, Mbeufet M, Renneboog B. Intractable hiccoughs successfully treated with pregabalin. Eur J Intern Med. 2006;17(7):522.

69. Nicoletti F, Gradini R, Bassi PF, Rampello L. Lyrica cures the tenor. Clin Neuropharmacol. 2009;32(2):119.

70. Vaidya V. Sertraline in the treatment of hiccoughs. Psychosomatics. 2000;41(4):353-5.

71. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# TWITCHING/ MYOCLONUS/ SEIZURES

# TWITCHING/ MYOCLONUS/ SEIZURES

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## DEFINITIONS[3]

**Twitching** refers to an involuntary muscle contraction; it tends to be repetitive, unwanted, and lacking obvious cause.

**Myoclonus** is defined as involuntary single or irregularly repetitive movement of one part of the body associated with either brief, shock-like muscle contractions or jerks (positive myoclonus), or brief loss of muscle tone (negative myoclonus). Hiccough is a type of myoclonus. Myoclonus may precede onset of opioid-induced neurotoxicity.[33]

**Opioid-induced neurotoxicity** is due to the accumulation of toxic metabolites. Impaired renal function, dehydration and electrolyte imbalances contribute to this condition. It may cause myoclonus and seizures.[33]

**Seizures** may be varying in intensity and type and may include an absent stare, muscle rigidity, cyanosis, and an altered state of consciousness. They may last from 1-4 minutes.

**Status epilepticus** is a seizure lasting 5 minutes or longer, or repeated seizures one after another without regaining consciousness.

## PREVALENCE

**Myoclonus** occurs more commonly (2.8-87%) in patients on higher doses of opioids,[1] or in the presence of renal failure[2]; however, causes can be multifactorial. **Seizures** may be the first indication of a brain tumour. They occur in up to 50% of palliative patients with a primary brain tumour,[3] and in 20-45% of patients with brain metastases.[4, 5]

## IMPACT

Twitching and myoclonus may be misinterpreted as seizure activity. Seizures can be frightening for the patient and family. Indicators of neurotoxicity may require switching of opioids. [33]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## STANDARD OF CARE

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of seizures) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

### Step 2 | Assessment

**Twitching, myoclonus and seizures assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[32]**

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly. Involve family as appropriate and desired by the patient.* |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? Have you recently started any new medications or treatments? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? How do you feel afterwards? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Does your entire body move? Is the movement only in a part of your body? Ask family or caregivers to describe what happens. |
| **Severity** | How severe is this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? How bothered are you by this symptom? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? |

| | |
|---|---|
| **T**reatment | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? Have you recently changed a dose or type of treatment? Have you stopped or started alcohol or other substances? |
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

Degree of investigation depends on severity and goals of care, including desired location.[16] May reveal more than one cause.

- CBC and biochemical tests may reveal reversible causes.
- CSF culture for infectious causes.
- Radiologic: CAT scan or MRI.
- Electroencephalogram if suspect seizure activity, but may not be needed.[8]

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care

- Identifying the underlying etiology of the myoclonus, twitching or seizures is essential in order to provide the appropriate treatment.[3, 6]
- Opioid-induced myoclonus is often misinterpreted as seizure activity by caregivers and clinicians.[1] This is important as myoclonus tends to respond to correction of the underlying reversible causes.[7]
- Terminal delirium can also be misinterpreted as seizure.[1]
- Impaired excretion of opioids and their metabolites may cause myoclonus.
- Most prevalent in renal impairment with morphine, codeine, meperidine and, to a lesser extent, hydromorphone.[1] Liver impairment also a risk factor.[9] Methadone or fentanyl rarely cause myoclonic neurotoxicity.[1, 7, 10, 11]
- Drug causes are extensive and include: tricyclic antidepressants, serotonin reuptake inhibitors, anticonvulsants, ertapenem, pregabalin, trazodone, and levodopa.[12, 13]
- Assess for drug interactions that may contribute to neurotoxicity, e.g., from antipsychotics, antidepressants, and other central nervous system drugs.[13, 14]
- Fully review drugs recently introduced, discontinued, or dosing altered. Especially assess benzodiazepines, alcohol, opioids, anticonvulsants, smoking, caffeine, and complementary or alternative medicines.
- Dehydration may be a contributing factor.[7]
- Other causes may include: pinched nerve, nerve injury, stimulant abuse, epilepsy, Parkinson's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, and benign fasciculation syndrome.[3]

### Seizure

- Seizures may be caused by primary or metastatic brain tumours.[3]
- Metabolic causes: hypoglycemia (most common metabolic cause), hyperglycemia, hyponatremia, renal or hepatic failure, and hypercalcemia.
- Hypoglycemia can also be caused by prolonged seizure activity.[3]
- A wide variety of other causes may be identified including stroke, sepsis or late onset epilepsy.

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Lorazepam is the first-line for all 3 conditions.
- Ensure patient safety and comfort during and following a seizure.
- Twitching/myoclonus is frequently related to opioids and is often reversible.
- Educate patient and family to discern between myoclonus and seizure activity, and to report to their health care team.

### Step 4 | **Interventions**

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

## Non-pharmacological interventions

### Interventions available in the home and residential care facilities

- Recognize that myoclonus or seizures can increase pain, fatigue, and other distressing symptoms. **Follow-up assessment and appropriate intervention**.[15]
- Myoclonus generally responds to **conservative treatment**: correct dehydration and renal function, if possible; and reduction and/or rotation of opioid.[7, 12]
- **Seizure treatment will vary** according to the frequency and duration of convulsions, and whether there is a reversible underlying cause.[8]
- **Position HOB** 30° above level of heart if increased cerebral pressure.[5]

### Prevention/risk reduction

- Screen for recent history of recreational drug and alcohol use.
- Review medication for those that reduce seizure threshold, or reduce effectiveness of current meds. Adjust medications and doses appropriately.[22, 23] Monitor drug levels as required for patient status and location of care.
- Prevent, monitor for, and minimize adverse effects.

### Physiotherapy and occupational therapy

- Mobility and transfer safety. Referral for assessment, patient/ family education and recommendations.[15]

## Interventions that may require additional equipment or transfer to acute care

### Environment – injury prevention and maintenance of airway during a seizure.

- As per local seizure protocol.
- Ensure potential aggressive treatments align with patient goals of care and consider patient status and location: hydration; intubation and transfer to ICU.[8]
- Some treatments may be more appropriate earlier in disease trajectory, for short durations to achieve symptom control, or to meet a specific goal.

### Hydration

- Consider for reversible causes of myoclonus[2]. Depends on patient status, goals of care, and care location Limited evidence of benefit. Requires further study.[17]

### Surgical

- Resection of lesion with clear margins has been successful in patients with primary, low grade brain tumours. Remission of seizures in 80% of patients.[18]
- Careful consideration must be given to the life expectancy and appropriateness for patient.[15]
- May allow eventual weaning from long-term anti-consultants after excision.[8]

### Radiation Therapy

- Seizure control can be improved in primary tumors when radiation therapy is offered early, even if no survival benefit.[19,20,21]

### Oxygen

- Status epilepticus patients benefit from oxygen,[16] if available and if patient is NOT actively dying. Hypoxia is a risk with longer seizures and can result in significant impairment.

## Pharmacological interventions

- **Lorazepam** is a first-line therapy for twitching, myoclonus and seizures. Advantages include: rapid onset, sustained duration of action, 85-89% response rate in tonic-clonic seizures, lower cardiorespiratory depression than diazepam, familiarity and availability throughout patient care settings.[1,2]
- Use non-oral routes of administration often to ensure reliable effectiveness.

### Initial Management with Lorazepam[3]

| Myoclonus/ Twitching | Partial Seizure | Tonic-Clonic Seizure | Status Epilepticus |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0.5 to 2 mg SL or SC Q4H PRN | 1 to 2 mg SL or SC stat then 1 to 2 mg Q4H to Q6H | 4 to 8 mg IV or SC stat, then 2 to 4 mg Q4H to Q6H | 2 to 8 mg IV, SC or SL stat, then q10min to q20min until controlled |

## Management for Specific Symptoms Outlined in this Guideline

### 1) Twitching or Myoclonus Management

- Stop the offending drug, whenever possible.[12, 24, 25]Often myoclonus gradually resolves in a few days.[2, 12, 24] Some medications require a gradually tapering to prevent complications, e.g., cardiovascular and central nervous system (CNS).[26]
- Reduce the dose of the offending drug.[1] Reduce opioid dose by 20-30%[11] or 30-

50% for high doses,[28] and reduce dosing interval as well with irreversible renal failure for renally excreted opioids.[13]

- The benefit of a dose reduction over rotation may be less certain and only postpone the need to switch opioids.[25]
- Do not use naloxone to treat opioid-induced myoclonus as it will not respond and may reverse symptom control for other symptoms.[1,10, 25, 27]
- Stop other non-essential medications.[6]
- Switch (rotate) to a different opioid. If hyperalgesia accompanies the myoclonus, a switch is particularly helpful.[24]
- Fentanyl or methadone are useful choices for experienced prescribers as both of these have minimal or no active neurotoxic metabolites.[1, 10, 24]
- Maintain patient pain and symptom goals. Do not solely reduce opioid to control myoclonus.[24]
- Consider use of non-opioid adjuvant analgesics, e.g., anticonvulsants, acetaminophen, and others.[29] Refer to Pain Management guideline.
- Treat pharmacologically to resolve reversible causative metabolic abnormalities.
- As evidence and topic management guidelines are not robust,[30] utilize further resources including palliative care physician consultants, medical specialists, or experienced multidisciplinary clinicians including clinical pharmacists.

## 1) Twitching or Myoclonus Drug Dosing

- Choice of second-line anticonvulsants for management is uncertain. Benzodiazepines are commonly selected, in part based on suitability for patient setting, ease of administration, cost and familiarity. Options include:
  - Midazolam, 1 to 5 mg IV, SC, buccal PRN (especially in uremic-induced).[20]
  - Clonazepam, starting at 0.5 mg orally once or twice daily.[13, 31]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## 1) Seizure Management

- Avoid starting anticonvulsants prophylaxis in brain tumor patients (primary or metastatic) if the patient has never had any seizures, due to lack of benefit and risk of drug burden.[2, 21]
- Initiation of long-term anticonvulsants after a first time seizure may not be required.[8, 23]
- Assess and provide treatment if high risk of reoccurrence, e.g., in brain metastases from melanoma, choriocarcinoma, renal cell carcinoma or thyroid papillary cancer.[21]
- Review the current dose of corticosteroid; consider starting one adjunctively in those with intracranial tumour and seizure or scheduled cerebral radiotherapy.[23]

## 1) Seizure Drug Dosing

- Review individual seizure type and tailor monotherapy anticonvulsant to patient.[27]
- Midazolam via continuous subcutaneous infusion over 24 hours can be used[23]; however, review use and suitability with local palliative care team.

## 1) Status Epilepticus Management

- Status epilepticus should be controlled even in the unconscious patient near death because of the distress that continuous seizures cause to the patient's family.[3]
- First line: Lorazepam 2 to 8 mg IV or SC or SL STAT then q10 to 20 min until controlled. IV maximum infusion rate 2 mg per minute.[3]
- Alternatively: Midazolam 5 to 10 mg IV, buccally, or Diazepam 10 to 20 mg IV or rectally.[3, 27]
- Phenytoin 50 mg per min IV until seizure stops or maximum 20mg per kg per 24 hours.[3]
- Valproic acid loading dose 20 mg per kg then 3 to 5 mg per kg per min infusion.[3]
- Failing control: Phenobarbital 120 mg SC or IV and titrating to control.[3]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## Patient and family education

- **Myoclonus** is described as brief muscle jerks or spasms. They may appear before or during sleep. While common, they rarely need treatment. Help family members differentiate between myoclonus and seizure activity:
  - Increased frequency or intensity may indicate an underlying problem; instruct patient and family to inform the care team of any changes.
- **Seizures** are frightening to the patient and family. Take time afterward to explore concerns of the patient and family, and offer honest reassurance.[23] Address questions,[3,16] dispel fears and maximize comfort.
- Primary focus is on safety during and after seizures, medication use, eliminating the underlying cause if feasible and knowing when to contact the health care provider.[15]
- Ensure alternate medication routes have been made available if needed and instruct patient's family on how to provide medication for active management.[8]
- Do not attempt to restrain the person; loosen tight clothing around the neck.
- Do not shout at the person or expect verbal commands to be obeyed.
- Do not try to force anything into the patient's mouth. Do not give any fluids or food by mouth until the person has fully recovered consciousness.
- When the seizure stops, turn the person onto his/her side until fully alert. Expect a period of sleepiness after the seizure.
- If the patient has been driving or operating machinery, they may not continue until cleared by a physician.
- Contact your health care provider for additional support if needed (during office hours).
- Call after hours **Nurse Line** if available in your region, as needed.

# ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF SEIZURES

## Resources Specific to Seizures

- B.C. Epilepsy Society: information sheets on safety during seizures, diary templates, emotional support etc.

➡ http://www.bcepilepsy.com/resources/information-sheets

- BC Cancer Agency: Brain and central nervous system cancer

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-info/types-of-cancer/brain-central-nervous-system

- BC Cancer Agency: Headlines: a newsletter for brain tumor patients and their families

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-info/types-of-cancer/brain-central-nervous-system/headlines

## General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➡ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➡ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/

hospice-palliative-care

### Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)
- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➞ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF

## TWITCHING, MYOCLONUS AND SEIZURES

Information on underlying causes contained within the body of the document.

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF TWITCHING, MYOCLONUS AND SEIZURES

Information on medications for management contained within the body of the document.

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## TWITCHING, MYOCLONUS AND SEIZURES MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## TWITCHING, MYOCLONUS AND SEIZURES EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

No extra resources or assessment tools included in this document.

## TWITCHING, MYOCLONUS AND SEIZURES REFERENCES


1. Health F. Symptom Guidelines Twitching, Seizures, Myoclonus2006 [cited 2016 1/24/2017]. Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w.]

2. DeMonaco N, Arnold RM. Myoclonus #114. J Palliat Med. 2009;12(4):379.

3. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Geriatric Palliative Care Nausea and Vomiting: Oxford University Press; 2014 [cited 2016 12/15/2016].

4. Tradounsky G. Seizures in palliative care. Can Fam Physician. 2013;59(9):951-5, e401-5.

5. Augusto Caraceni CM, Fabio Simonetti. Neurological problems in advanced cancer. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine. 5th ed ed: Oxford University Press; 2015. p. 49.

6. Mercadante S. Pathophysiology and treatment of opioid-related myoclonus in cancer patients. Pain. 1998;74(1):5-9.

7. Sarhill N, Davis MP, Walsh D, Nouneh C. Methadone-induced myoclonus in advanced cancer. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2001;18(1):51-3.

8. Ito S, Liao S. Myoclonus associated with high-dose parenteral methadone. J Palliat Med. 2008;11(6):838-41.

9. Felix Javier Jimenez-Jimenez IP, Maria de Toledo-Heras. Drug-Induced Myoclonus: Frequency, Mechanisms and Management. CNS Drugs2004. p. 13.

10. Stuerenburg HJ, Claassen J, Eggers C, Hansen HC. Acute adverse reaction to fentanyl in a 55 year old man. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2000;69(2):281-2.

11. Samuel Essandoh MS, Jeanna Miller, Paul A Glare. A Cautionary Tale From Critical Care: Resolution of Myoclonus After Fentanyl Rotation to Hydromorphone. New York, NY, USA2010. p. 3.

12. Eduardo Bruera SY. Oxford American Handbook of Hospice Palliative Medicine. New York, NY, USA: Oxford University Press; 2011.

13. Dulin JD, Noreika DM, Coyne PJ. Management of refractory status epilepticus in an actively dying patient. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother. 2014;28(3):243-50.

14. Schwartz MA. Neurological disorders. In: Betty R. Ferrell NC, Judith Paice, editor.

Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing. 4th ed ed: Oxford University Press; Jan 2015. p. 37.

15. Fainsinger R. Myoclonus - Seizures - Hyperalgesia: www.palliative.org; 2009 [

16. Bruera E, Hui D, Dalal S, Torres-Vigil I, Trumble J, Roosth J, et al. Parenteral hydration in patients with advanced cancer: a multicenter, double-blind, placebo-controlled randomized trial. J Clin Oncol. 2013;31(1):111-8.

17. Englot DJ, Berger MS, Barbaro NM, Chang EF. Factors associated with seizure freedom in the surgical resection of glioneuronal tumors. Epilepsia. 2012;53(1):51-7.

18. van den Bent MJ, Afra D, de Witte O, Ben Hassel M, Schraub S, Hoang-Xuan K, et al. Long-term efficacy of early versus delayed radiotherapy for low-grade astrocytoma and oligodendroglioma in adults: the EORTC 22845 randomised trial. Lancet. 2005;366(9490):985-90.

19. Rudà R, Magliola U, Bertero L, Trevisan E, Bosa C, Mantovani C, et al. Seizure control following radiotherapy in patients with diffuse gliomas: a retrospective study. Neuro Oncol. 2013;15(12):1739-49.

20. Koekkoek JA, Kerkhof M, Dirven L, Heimans JJ, Reijneveld JC, Taphoorn MJ. Seizure outcome after radiotherapy and chemotherapy in low-grade glioma patients: a systematic review. Neuro Oncol. 2015;17(7):924-34.

21. Jan Drappatz PYW, Edward K Avila. Seizures in patients with primary and metastatic brain tumors 2016 [

22. Scotland HI. Scottish Palliative Care Guidelines. Scotland: NHS Scotland; 2014.

23. Emily Chai DM, Jane Morris, Suzanne Goldhirsch. Seizure. In: Emily Chai DM, Jane Morris, Suzanne Goldhirsch, editor. Geriatric Palliative Care: Oxford University Press; 2014. p. 10.

24. Robin K Wilson DEW. Neuroexcitatory Effects of Opioids: Treatment: Palliative Care Network of Wisconsin; 2015 [3rd Ed:[Available from: www.mypcnow.org/blank-ri83p.

25. Harlos M. Management of Life-Threatening Opioid Neurotoxicity. Aug 19,2002

26. F Amos Bailey SMH. Palliative care: The last hours and days of life Palliative care: The last hours and days of life: Up to Date; 2016 [

27. Twycross R, Wilcock A, Dean M, Kennedy B. Canadian Palliative Care Formulary. Canadian Edition ed: palliativedrugs.com; 2010.

28. Jan Magnusson JM. Opioid Induced Neurotoxicity. 2001.

29. Stone P, Minton O. European Palliative Care Research collaborative pain guidelines. Central side-effects management: what is the evidence to support best practice in the management of sedation, cognitive impairment and myoclonus? Palliat Med. 2011;25(5):431-41.

30. Black I. Palliative Care Guidelines Convulsions & Seizures2016 [cited 2016 12/15/2016]. Available from: http://book.pallcare.info/index.php?tid=2.

31. Emily Chai DM, Jane Morris, and Suzanne Goldhirsch. Myoclonus. In: Emily Chai DM, Jane Morris, and Suzanne Goldhirsch, editor. Geriatric Palliative Care: Oxford University Press; 2014. p. 7.

32. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w]

33. Principles of Opioid Management: Fraser Health; 2016 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# DELIRIUM

# DELIRIUM

## DEFINITION

**Delirium** is a syndrome of abrupt onset and fluctuating disturbance in attention and awareness that is a decline from baseline status.[1-3] It is typified by cognitive dysfunction along with changes in psychomotor behaviour, mood, and sleep–wake cycle.[4-6] It may include hallucinations. Avoid the use of overlapping terms such as 'confusion', 'acute confusional state', 'terminal or pre-terminal restlessness' to prevent miscommunication.[7] Delirium has three subtypes, all of which occur in palliative care[8-11]:

- **Hyperactive - 30%** (restless and agitated; hallucinations more common): most often identified.[12] May be misinterpreted as pain leading to administration of higher drug doses, which then could increase delirium.[13]
- **Hypoactive - 48%** (drowsy and withdrawn): most prevalent, yet most often missed, dismissed as "normal dying", or misdiagnosed as fatigue or depression; it also has highest mortality.[4, 14]
- **Mixed subtypes – 22%:** fluctuates between both.[15-17]

## PREVALENCE

Delirium is common in palliative care. It occurs in 20-88% of cancer patients.[1,6,7] Although delirium often occurs 24 to 48 hours before death, it is not a "normal" part of dying.[11] In some cases, subtle signs up to 7 days prior,[10, 17-19] when identified, may enable reversal of symptoms, allowing for a peaceful death.[20]

## IMPACT

Delirium is a poor prognostic indicator[21] and often predicts death within days to weeks.[22-25] Regardless of subtype, delirium is distressing to patients, families, and healthcare providers, impairing quality of living and quality of dying.[1, 7, 10, 26, 27] It interferes with identification of other symptoms, is associated with increased falls, pressure sores and greater hospitalization, morbidity and mortality.[6] It may result in shocking behaviours,[27] prolonged grief, and impaired opportunity for closure at end of life.[20] Prompt recognition and treatment is essential in order to improve patient and family outcomes, especially in the final stages of an illness.[10]

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# STANDARD OF CARE

## Step 1 | Goals of care conversation

Determine goals of care in conversation with the patient, family and inter-disciplinary team. Refer to additional resources (Additional resources for management of delirium) for tools to guide conversations and required documentation. Goals of care may change over time and need to be reconsidered at times of transition, e.g., disease progression or transfer to another care setting.

## Step 2 | Assessment

Identify predisposing factors which increase vulnerability and risk for delirium: age over 65 years, dementia, visual or hearing impairment, immobility, functional dependence, malnutrition, substance use, multiple chronic co-morbidities, multiple medications, admission to hospital.[6, 26, 28] Restraints increase risk of delirium by 3 times.[29, 30] Screen high risk patients routinely.[31]

### Signs and Symptoms of Delirium may include[6]:

- Acute onset.
- Fluctuating over the course of a day.
- Attention disturbance; restlessness.
- Altered reasoning/rambling thinking.
- Agitated, angry, emotionally labile, depression, lethargy.
- Disorientation to: time, person and place.
- Sleep-wake cycle disturbance.
- Memory impairment.
- Hallucinations – visual; nightmares.

- Language fluency disturbance.
- Myoclonus, miosis, seizures, tremors (opioid neuro-toxicity) – specific symptoms.
- Tachypnea (sepsis, hypoxemia, central processes) – specific symptoms.

## Delirium Assessment: Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V[9]

| **Mnemonic Letter** | **Assessment Questions** *Whenever possible, ask the patient directly; however, it is essential to include family and caregivers in the interview as the patient may be unable to cooperate or communicate effectively*. |
|---|---|
| **Onset** | When did it begin? How long does it last? How often does it occur? |
| **Provoking /Palliating** | What brings it on? What makes it better? What makes it worse? |
| **Quality** | What does it feel like? Can you describe it? Do you feel confused? Are you seeing or hearing anything unusual? How are you sleeping? |
| **Region/Radiation** | Not applicable |
| **Severity** | How bothered are you by this symptom? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? Right now? At worst? On average? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this symptom? Do you know what day/month/year it is? Do you know where you are right now? Can you tell me your full name? |
| **Treatment** | What medications and treatments are you currently using? Are you using any non-prescription treatments, herbal remedies, or traditional healing practices? How effective are these? Do you have any side effects from the medications and treatments? What have you tried in the past? Do you have concerns about side effects or cost of treatments? |

| | |
|---|---|
| **U**nderstanding | What do you believe is causing this symptom? How is it affecting you and/or your family? What is most concerning to you? |
| **V**alues | What overall goals do we need to keep in mind as we manage this symptom? What is your acceptable level for this symptom (0-10)? Are there any beliefs, views or feelings about this symptom that are important to you and your family? |

**Symptom Assessment:** Physical assessment as appropriate for symptom

Conduct history and physical, review medications and doses, medical/surgical, psychosocial and physical environment.[9]

**Diagnostics:** consider goals of care before ordering diagnostic testing

Lab tests include: CBC, electrolytes, calcium, albumin, glucose, renal, liver and thyroid function, urinalysis, pulse oximetry, chest x-ray. Also do ECG, cultures, and brain imaging as appropriate.[9, 32] Consider prior function, disease trajectory, and goals of care to determine the extent of investigation.[4, 6, 19, 20, 26, 33]

### Specific diagnostic tools

(See Delirium extra resources or assessment tools)

- DSM-V [1, 7, 10]
- Differentiating the 3 D's

## Step 3 | Determine possible causes and reverse as possible if in keeping with goals of care (For more details, see Underlying causes of delirium in palliative care)

Common causes (**See** Underlying causes of delirium in palliative care) are often multi-factorial and may include[6, 9, 34-36]:

- Infection, metabolic disturbance, hypoxia, organ failure, medications
- Withdrawal from alcohol, illicit drugs, benzodiazepines

- Pain, constipation, dehydration, retention, urinary catheters, sleep deprivation
- New/unfamiliar environments, psychosocial, psychiatric[9]

**Identification and management of underlying causes will resolve 30-50% of palliative delirium episodes.** However, in final days, reversibility reduces to between 10-15%.[37, 38] Major organ failure and hypoxic encephalopathy are not reversible.[39] The most reversible factors include drug effects (e.g., opioid neurotoxicity), electrolyte disturbances, and physical discomfort.[40]

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

When considering a management approach, always balance burden of a possible intervention against the likely benefit (e.g., does the intervention require transfer to another care setting?)

- Screen all high risk patients routinely and regularly using standardized tools.[8]
- Involve interdisciplinary team, patient, family[20] and volunteers. Use preventative measures to minimize exposure to known risks.[1, 41, 42]
- Provide patient and family education to prevent, normalize, manage and reduce distress of delirium episodes.[1, 8, 20, 27] Ensure holistic perspective includes psychosocial, spiritual and cultural care.
- **Identify and treat reversible underlying causes.**[6-8, 26]
- **Ensure use of non-pharmacological approaches**.[8, 19, 43, 44]
- Manage distressing symptoms with caution, using the lowest effective doses of least harmful agent.[26]
- For severe distress or if behaviour creates a safety risk for patient or others: consult Palliative Specialist. Ensure methods are aligned with patient goals[8, 9, 26] and disease trajectory for management of the symptom and/or sedation.[45, 46]

## LEGEND FOR USE OF BULLETS

Bullets are used to identify the type or strength of recommendation that is being made, based on a review of available evidence, using a modified GRADE process.

| | |
|---|---|
| ✓ | **Use with confidence:** recommendations are supported by moderate to high levels of empirical evidence. |
| = | **Use if benefits outweigh potential harm:** recommendations are supported by clinical practice experience, anecdotal, observational or case study evidence providing low level empirical evidence. |
| ! | **Use with caution:** Evidence for recommendations is conflicting or insufficient, requiring further study |
| ✗ | **Not recommended:** high level empirical evidence of no benefit or potential harm |

### Non-pharmacological interventions: Use for all levels and types of delirium

It may be possible to manage delirium in the home or residential care facility with appropriate planning and support for the patient, family and staff; all of these interventions do not necessarily require additional equipment or admission to acute care.

- ✓ **Utilize non-pharmacological interventions preferentially** as they provide greater evidence of benefit, without harm, than medications for mild to moderate delirium.[5, 42-44, 51]
- ✓ **Use multicomponent strategies** as in Hospital Elder Life Program (**HELP – see** Additional resources for management of delirium **for link**): frequent reorientation and mentally engaging activities for cognitive impairment; mobilization support; hearing aids and eyeglasses; adequate oral hydration, and

## Non-pharmacological interventions *continued*

sleep hygiene reduce risk for delirium (33-40%) and falls (57%) in older hospital patients.[8, 41, 52-54]

- **Promote one-to-one observation** to maintain safety, reduce fear, and support re-orientation.6
- Prevent over-stimulation; keep visitors/staff changes to a minimum.[9]
- Promote massage, relaxation therapy, exercise,[55] and rehabilitation therapy.[1, 5, 56]
- Avoid immobility, indwelling catheters, intravenous lines or equipment that impedes mobility.[9, 26]
- Consider parental hydration in time-limited trial if appropriate for patient trajectory and goals of care. Stop if adverse effects or no benefit as little evidence of effectiveness.[57, 58]
- Physical restraints increase risk of delirium .[59]

## Pharmacological interventions

**Scrutinize medication profile** to identify drug causes of delirium. Pharmacist assistance can be invaluable.[60]

- Neuroleptic/antipsychotic drugs are sometimes required in addition to non-pharmacologic interventions. Use the lowest effective dosage which is proportionate to the severity of delirium to maximize safety and dignity. There is still many questions regarding which drugs are most appropriate.[43]
- Consider a switch of opioid, the tapering/discontinuation of benzodiazepines, and tapering of corticosteroid dose.[60]

### Antipsychotic role is unclear, lacking established evidence of benefit without harm.[43, 61]

- Use is off-label; no Canadian drugs are approved for delirium prevention or treatment.

- Antipsychotic risks may be a class effect; differences are unsubstantiated.[43]
- Clinicians' own distress may result in inappropriate antipsychotic use.[62, 63]
- Harm (distress worsened, greater EPS) occurred at low doses within 72 hours.[10]

## Avoid use of

- Haloperidol[10, 64-66] and risperidone for treatment of **mild** delirium in palliative patients. [43,67]
- Medications to prevent delirium; effectiveness is not established.[14, 68]
- Opioids to treat delirium as they have no anti-agitation actions. New or increased doses of opioids may potentially worsen, if no change in pain.[69]
- Cholinesterase inhibitors to treat delirium, e.g., rivastigmine or donepezil.[10, 14, 60]
- Other drugs suggested to possibly play a treatment role but, as yet, lack adequate evidence, including methylphenidate, melatonin, trazodone.[14, 70, 71]

## Benzodiazepines

- Use is supported for delirium only when cause is alcohol[72] or sedative drug withdrawal.[10]
- Are causes of delirium, confusion, paradoxical reactions, over sedation, ataxia, falls.[10, 73]
- May be used in palliative sedation to reduce seizure risk, myoclonus, muscle tension, or acute agitation crisis.[69]
- Have not been shown to hasten death in advanced illness.[69, 74]

## When delirium is moderate to severe, unmanageable, poses concerns of harm to self/caregivers, and/or is causing distress to the patient and family

- Haloperidol is considered first-line therapy, although there is a lack of established dose range[17, 43, 73, 75] and a recent study has suggested it may require further investigation.[43] Starting dose of 0.5 mg (0.25 mg for elderly) to 2 mg SC, IV or PO Q1H until calming occurs, then Q4-6H for severe delirium.[77]

- Methotrimeprazine is a more sedating alternative to haloperidol; dosing 12.5 to 25 mg SC, IV or PO Q1-2H until calming occurs, then Q6-8H.[78]
- Additionally, for temporary sedation, in discussion with a palliative specialist, consider non-antipsychotics such as midazolam 2.5 to 5 mg SC or IV PRN; avoid oversedation.[69, 76]
- **Specialist consultation is recommended for severe delirium to consider drug therapy risk/benefit, delirium reversibility, and appropriate management options.** This may include palliative sedation.

## Patient and family education

- Provide anticipatory guidance on what to expect. Normalize to reduce distress.
- Provide guidance on how to interact with patient: gentle reassurance, not to argue, use of a calm voice and presence.
- Sometimes patients may act out of character which can cause distress to the family. Explain that delirium symptoms are due to illness, are common, and can fluctuate.
- Explain that delirium becomes less reversible near end of life.
- Some patients experience the presence of deceased loved ones, angels, spirits or others, either by seeing them, hearing their voice or sensing they are near. Be careful about interpreting this as a delirious hallucination as it may be connected to spiritual or cultural beliefs and could be comforting to the patient and family.

## Teach family to use non-pharmacological interventions

- Promote calm, re-orienting environment (clocks, calendar) and familiar objects in room. Encourage cognitively stimulating activities and mobility, if patient able.
- Ensure hearing aids and glasses are available/functioning.
- Offer small amount of preferred food and fluids frequently.
- Facilitate sleep: relaxation music at bedtime, warm drinks and gentle massage; avoid waking patients from sleep; use night light.

- Provide comfort and re-orientation with presence of family or well-known friend.
- Teach family to watch for confusion that worsens in evening (sun-downing). This may be the first sign of delirium.
- Contact healthcare provider if patient distress or safety concerns.

## ADDITIONAL RESOURCES FOR MANAGEMENT OF DELIRIUM

### Resources specific to delirium

- BC Guidelines: Delirium

➡ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative2_delirium.pdf

- Canadian Coalition for Seniors' Mental Health. Guideline on the assessment and treatment of delirium in older adults at the end of life. Adapted from the CCSMH National guidelines for seniors' mental health. The assessment and treatment of delirium. Toronto: CCSMH, 2010.

➡ http://www.health.gov.bc.ca/library/publications/year/2012/bpsd-guideline.pdf

- Yale University School of Medicine: HELP – Hospital Elder Life Program

➡ http://www.hospitalelderlifeprogram.org/

### General Resources

- **Provincial Palliative Care Line** – for **physician** advice or support, call **1 877 711-5757** In ongoing partnership with the Doctors of BC, the toll-free Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Phone Line is staffed by Vancouver Home Hospice Palliative Care physicians 24 hours per day, 7 days per week to assist physicians in B.C. with advice about symptom management, psychosocial issues, or difficult end-of-life decision making.
- BC Centre for Palliative Care: Serious Illness Conversation Guide

➞ https://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/serious-illness-conversations/

- BC Guidelines: Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease

➞ http://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/bc-guidelines/palliative-care

- BC Palliative Care Benefits: Information for prescribers

➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/practitioner-professional-resources/pharmacare/prescribers/plan-p-bc-palliative-care-benefits-program

- National Centre for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) for additional information on the use of non-pharmacological interventions

➞ https://nccih.nih.gov/

- Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology: Algorithms for Cancer-related Distress, Depression and Global Anxiety

➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf

- Fraser Health psychosocial care guideline

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

## Resources specific to health organization/region

- Fraser Health

➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XDU8UFVKjb1

- First Nations Health Authority

➞ http://www.fnha.ca/

- Interior Health

➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/PalliativeCare/Pages/default.aspx

- Island Health

➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/our-services/end-of-life-hospice-palliative-services/hospice-palliative-end-of-life-care

- Northern Health

➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/for-health-professionals/palliative-care-end-life-care

- Providence Health

➞ http://hpc.providencehealthcare.org/

- Vancouver Coastal Health

➞ http://www.vch.ca/your-care/home-community-care/care-options/hospice-palliative-care

## Resources specific to patient population

- ALS Society of Canada: A Guide to ALS patient care for primary care physicians

➞ https://als.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/02/A-Guide-to-ALS-Patient-Care-For-Primary-Care-Physicians-English.pdf

- ALS Society of British Columbia 1-800-708-3228

➞ www.alsbc.ca

- BC Cancer Agency: Symptom management guidelines

➞ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/nursing/symptom-management

- BC Renal Agency: Conservative care pathway and symptom management

➞ http://www.bcrenalagency.ca/health-professionals/clinical-resources/palliative-care

- BC's Heart Failure Network: Clinical practice guidelines for heart failure symptom management

➞ http://www.bcheartfailure.ca/for-bc-healthcare-providers/end-of-life-tools/

- Canuck Place Children's Hospice

➞ https://www.canuckplace.org/resources/for-health-professionals/

- 24 hr line – 1.877.882.2288
- Page a Pediatric Palliative care physician – 1-604-875-2161 (request palliative physician on call)

- Together for short lives: Basic symptom control in pediatric palliative care

➡ http://www.togetherforshortlives.org.uk/professionals/resources/2434_basic_symptom_control_in_paediatric_palliative_care_free_download

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## UNDERLYING CAUSES OF DELIRIUM IN PALLIATIVE CARE[37, 78, 80-82]

Causes for delirium are usually multi-factorial.

| Potentially Reversible Causes of Delirium | Contributing Factors |
|---|---|
| Neoplastic/structural abnormalities | • Primary tumor of brain,[80, 81, 83] Metastases[80, 81, 83, 84]<br>• Tumor burden or location[45]<br>• Subdural hematoma, Stroke[45] |
| Infection/inflammation | • Pneumonia, urinary tract infection,[45, 80, 83-91] cellulitis, other causes of sepsis[78] |
| Metabolic | • hypercalcemia, uremia, hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia, or hyponatremia[45, 81, 83-85, 87, 89, 91] |
| General discomfort | • pain, constipation, urinary retention, or dehydration[80, 81, 83-85, 89, 90, 92] |
| Drug effects[69,93, 94, 95]<br>Micromedex Drug List[3, 96] | • Antibiotics ; Anticholinergic drug[80, 81, 83]<br>• Anticonvulsants[88]; Antidepressants; Antiemetics[80, 83]<br>• Antifungals; Antihistamines; Antihypertensives[80, 83]<br>• Antipsychotics[45]; Antivirals[80, 83, 89,82, 97, 98]<br>• Cardiovascular; Chemotherapy[81, 83, 88]<br>• Corticosteroids[84]; Dopamine Agonists<br>• $H_2$ antagonists[45, 80, 83, 84, 88]; herbals (St. John's Wart)<br>• Hypnotics, sedatives – benzodiazepines*; muscle relaxants<br>• NSAIDS; Opioids*[45, 81, 98] |
| Over dosage due to: | • Physical deterioration[45]<br>• Metabolic causes[45, 84]<br>• Accidental[45, 83, 85]; Intentional – alcohol abuse[45, 88] |

**Directions: Initiate CAM & PRISME for patients who are delirious or identified as high risk (3 or more risk factors) or show unexplained behaviors. Assess Q shift & PRN.**

| **1. Use Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) assess for delirium** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **C** | **1. ACUTE ONSET AND FLUCTUATING COURSE** | **Does the abnormal behavior:**<br>• come and go?<br>• increase/decrease in severity? |
| **A** | **2. INATTENTION** | **Does the patient:**<br>• have difficulty focusing attention?<br>• become easily distracted?<br>• have difficulty following a conversation? |
| **A** | **3. DISORGANIZED THINKING** | **Is the patients' thinking**<br>• disorganized?<br>• incoherent?<br>**Does the patient have:**<br>• rambling speech?<br>• Illogical flow of ideas? |
| **M** | **4. ALTERED LEVEL OF CONSCIOUSNESS**<br>LOC O'METER ↕ | **What is the patient's level of consciousness?**<br>• Vigilant (hyperalert)<br>• Alert (normal)<br>• Lethargic (drowsy, easy to arouse)<br>• Stupor (difficult to arouse)<br>• Coma (completely unarousable) |
| ***KEY: Presence of features 1& 2 plus either 3 &/or 4 is positive for delirium*** | | |
| **2. Use PRISME to identify & address physiological, psychosocial & environmental factors** | | |
| **P** | **PAIN**<br>**PSYCHOSOCIAL** | • Provide regular analgesia & nonpharmacological methods. Reassess pain control Q shift, especially with movement.<br>• Assess mental health, dementia & ability to cope with stress/stimuli |
| **R** | **RESTRAINT**<br>**RETENTION** | • Avoid restraints. Use alternatives<br>• Palpate abdomen. Bladder scan PRN. I & O catheter if essential. Remove bladder catheter ASAP. Regular toileting via commode or walking to toilet |
| **I** | **INFECTION**<br>**IMPACTION**<br>**IMPAIRED COGNITION**<br>**INTAKE-ORAL** | • Assess for UTI, pneumonia, C diff, purulent wound. Monitor VS. May have atypical presentation with no fever<br>• Determine last BM. Palpate abdomen. Rectal check PRN. Prevent & treat constipation. Bowel protocol as needed<br>• No reality orientation. Use calm, gentle approach& conversational cues to orientate patient to time & place<br>• Feed patient PRN. Assess dysphagia & consult OT/Dietitian PRN |
| **S** | **SLEEP DISTURBANCE**<br>**SENSORY CHANGE**<br>**SOCIAL ISOLATION** | • Ensure 4-hour sleep periods. No routine night turns. Naps OK<br>• Ensure glasses, hearing aids & dentures fit well and work<br>• Promote family stays & overnights PRN. Provide delirium pamphlet. Encourage familiar objects-pictures, blankets, pet visits |
| **M** | **MEDICATION**<br>**METABOLIC**<br>**MOBILITY** | • Review recent med changes, drug levels, ETOH. Avoid medications of risk (ie, demerol, codeine. benzodiazepines)<br>• Evaluate fluid balance/output/labs/oxygenation. If agitated, restart IV X 2 only-consider alternatives & ensure agitation is treated<br>• Encourage self-care; toileting; ambulation. Up for meals |
| **E** | **ENVIRONMENT** | • Provide a quiet, supportive environment --↓ noise, lights & people<br>• Hypoactive-Increase stimuli as tolerated. Activate<br>• Hyperactive-Reduce stimuli, especially at night |

821245 Apr 14-11

| | |
|---|---|
| Drug withdrawal from: | • Alcohol[99]<br>• Barbiturates<br>• Benzodiazepines[45, 88]<br>• Nicotine[45]<br>• Opioids[80, 83, 84, 86]<br>• Corticosteroids[80, 84] |
| Cardio-pulmonary | • Cerebral hypoxia, hypercapnia, cerebrovascular disease[45, 91] |
| Endocrine dysfunction | • Thyroid and adrenal[80, 83, 84, 88, 89] |
| Organ dysfunction/failure | • Liver[80, 81, 87, 88]<br>• Renal[81, 83, 84, 92, 98] |
| Malnutrition | • Thiamine or folate/$B_{12}$ [45, 80, 84-86, 89] |
| Trauma | • Convulsion, subdural hematoma, or hemorrhage[45, 83-86, 88] |
| Psychosocial/psychiatric | • Grief[88]<br>• Sensory deprivation[100] or overload[100]<br>• Social isolation[100]<br>• Visual or Hearing Impairment/Linguistic Barriers |
| Imminently dying | • Any combination of above[78] |

Note: Drug-induced causative studies within palliative patients are scarce; however, within other patients, delirium risk is most associated with **opioids and benzodiazepines**[3] and should be highly presumed as causative.

All medications should be examined, in part as secondary and contributory drug interactions could be impactful.

## MEDICATIONS FOR MANAGEMENT OF DELIRIUM

Information regarding medication is contained in the body of this document

Prices for prescription drugs may be obtained from BC PharmaCare. The British Columbia Palliative Care Benefits Plan https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/health-drug-coverage/pharmacare/palliative-formulary.pdfprovides province wide

drug coverage for many of the recommended medications– check website to confirm

**Comparison of the features of delirium, dementia and depression:**

| Feature | Delirium | Dementia | Depression (includes psychotic depression) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Onset** | Acute (hours to days) | Insidious (months to years) | Acute or insidious |
| **Acuity** | Acute illness, medical emergency | Chronic, progressive | Episodic |
| **Course** | Fluctuates hourly, lucid periods in a day confusion usually worsens at night | Stable throughout the day; Chronic; progresses slowly | Relatively stable; May be self-limiting, recurrent, or chronic; symptoms worse in the morning, improve during the day |
| **Duration** | Days to months; not always reversible | Months to years Progressive and irreversible; ends in death | Variable |
| **Consciousness** | Reduced; Fluctuates | Clear until late in the course of the illness | Clear |
| **Hallucinations** | Gross distortions, Frequent hallucinations, Usually visual or visual and auditory | Often absent in early stages; in later stages may have hallucinations, especially visual | May have hallucinations (predominantly auditory) |
| **Delusions** | Fleeting, poorly systematized | Often absent | May have sustained, systematized delusions |
| **Attention/ concentration** | Impaired | Normal, except in late stages | May be disordered |
| **Orientation** | Usually impaired, at least for a time | Impaired as disease progresses | Selective disorientation |
| **Memory** | Immediate and short term memory impaired | Memory impaired, gradually worsening as disease progresses | May be selectively or minimally impaired; concerns about memory |
| **Psychomotor** | Increased, reduced or shifting unpredictably | Often normal | Varies from retardation to hyperactivity (in agitated depression) |
| **Speech** | Often incoherent; slow or rapid | Usually coherent until late stage | Normal, slow or rapid |
| **Thinking** | Disorganized or incoherent | Limited, impoverished and vague | Impoverished, retarded; usually organized |
| **Physical illness or drug toxicity** | One or both present | Often absent in Alzheimer's disease | Usually absent, but debatable |
| **Affect** | Variable | Variable | Depressed |
| **Sleep/wake cycle** | Disturbed; changes hourly | Disturbed; day/night reversal | Disturbed with early-morning wakening; hypersomnia during the day |

Completed February, 2012

coverage. **Consider price when choosing similarly beneficial medications, especially when the patient / family is covering the cost.**

## DELIRIUM MANAGEMENT ALGORITHM

No management algorithm included in this document.

## DELIRIUM EXTRA RESOURCES OR ASSESSMENT TOOLS

**Confusion Assessment Method** to assess for delirium; CAM/PRISME chart used with permission from Interior Health.[46, 102]

**Delirium Diagnostic Criteria (DSM-V)[7, 10]**

Note: No recommended screening tools currently available; the below resource has been updated to reflect the change in DSM-V diagnostic criteria which removes level of consciousness in particular aspects of coma (Feature D). This remains controversial.[6, 46]

Box 21.1 Diagnostic criteria for delirium

**A.** Disturbance in attention and awareness
**B.** The disturbance develops over a short period of time and tends to fluctuate in severity during the course of the day.
**C.** Disturbance in cognition
**D.** The disturbances in criteria A and C are not explained by another preexisting, established, or evolving neurocognitive disorder and do not occur in the context of a severely reduced level of arousal, such as coma.
**E.** History, physical examination, or laboratory findings indicate that the disturbance is caused by a medical condition, substance intoxication or withdrawal, or exposure to a toxin, or is because of multiple etiologies.

*Source:* Adapted from American Psychiatric Association (2013), reference 37.

**Occupational Therapy Cognition Toolkit** [79]

**Comparison of the features of delirium, dementia and depression:**

| Feature | Delirium | Dementia | Depression (includes psychotic depression) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Onset** | Acute (hours to days) | Insidious (months to years) | Acute or insidious |
| **Acuity** | Acute illness, medical emergency | Chronic, progressive | Episodic |
| **Course** | Fluctuates hourly, lucid periods in a day confusion usually worsens at night | Stable throughout the day; Chronic; progresses slowly | Relatively stable; May be self-limiting, recurrent, or chronic; symptoms worse in the morning, improve during the day |
| **Duration** | Days to months; not always reversible | Months to years Progressive and irreversible; ends in death | Variable |
| **Consciousness** | Reduced; Fluctuates | Clear until late in the course of the illness | Clear |
| **Hallucinations** | Gross distortions, Frequent hallucinations, Usually visual or visual and auditory | Often absent in early stages; in later stages may have hallucinations, especially visual | May have hallucinations (predominantly auditory) |
| **Delusions** | Fleeting, poorly systematized | Often absent | May have sustained, systematized delusions |
| **Attention/ concentration** | Impaired | Normal, except in late stages | May be disordered |
| **Orientation** | Usually impaired, at least for a time | Impaired as disease progresses | Selective disorientation |
| **Memory** | Immediate and short term memory impaired | Memory impaired, gradually worsening as disease progresses | May be selectively or minimally impaired; concerns about memory |
| **Psychomotor** | Increased, reduced or shifting unpredictably | Often normal | Varies from retardation to hyperactivity (in agitated depression) |
| **Speech** | Often incoherent; slow or rapid | Usually coherent until late stage | Normal, slow or rapid |
| **Thinking** | Disorganized or incoherent | Limited, impoverished and vague | Impoverished, retarded; usually organized |
| **Physical illness or drug toxicity** | One or both present | Often absent in Alzheimer's disease | Usually absent, but debatable |
| **Affect** | Variable | Variable | Depressed |
| **Sleep/wake cycle** | Disturbed; changes hourly | Disturbed; day/night reversal | Disturbed with early-morning wakening; hypersomnia during the day |

Completed February, 2012

## DELIRIUM REFERENCES

1. Alexander K, Goldberg J, Korc-Grodzicki B. Palliative Care and Symptom Management in Older Patients with Cancer. Clin Geriatr Med. 2016;32(1):45-62.

2. Association ED, Society AD. The DSM-5 criteria, level of arousal and delirium diagnosis: inclusiveness is safer. BMC Med. 2014;12:141.

3. Clegg A, Young JB. Which medications to avoid in people at risk of delirium: a systematic review. Age Ageing. 2011;40(1):23-9.

4. Grassi L, Caraceni A, Mitchell AJ, Nanni MG, Berardi MA, Caruso R, et al. Management of delirium in palliative care: a review. Curr Psychiatry Rep. 2015;17(3):550.

5. Breitbart W, Alici Y. Agitation and delirium at the end of life: "We couldn't manage him". JAMA. 2008;300(24):2898-910, E1.

6. Agar M, Alici Y, Breitbart W. Delirium. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine [Internet]. Publisher: Oxford University Press. 5th ed.; [22].

7. Heidrich D, English N. Delirium, confusion,agitation and restlessness. 2015. In: Oxford Textbook of Palliative Nursing [Internet]. Oxford University Press. 4th ed.; [40].

8. Hosker CM, Bennett MI. Delirium and agitation at the end of life. BMJ. 2016;353:i3085.

9. Health F. Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care, Clinical Practice Committee; 2006 [Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w.]

10. Heidrich D, English N. Delirium. 2015. In: Care of the Imminently Dying [Internet]. Oxford University Press; [23].

11. Brajtman S, Wright D, Hogan DB, Allard P, Bruto V, Burne D, et al. Developing guidelines on the assessment and treatment of delirium in older adults at the end of life. Can Geriatr J. 2011;14(2):40-50.

12. Boettger S, Breitbart W. Phenomenology of the subtypes of delirium: phenomenological differences between hyperactive and hypoactive delirium. Palliat Support Care. 2011;9(2):129-35.

13. Buffum MD, Hutt E, Chang VT, Craine MH, Snow AL. Cognitive impairment and pain management: review of issues and challenges. J Rehabil Res Dev. 2007;44(2):315-30.

14. Breitbart W, Alici Y. Evidence-based treatment of delirium in patients with cancer. J Clin Oncol. 2012;30(11):1206-14.

15. Meagher D. Motor subtypes of delirium: past, present and future. Int Rev Psychiatry. 2009;21(1):59-73.

16. Meagher D, Adamis D, Trzepacz P, Leonard M. Features of subsyndromal and persistent delirium. Br J Psychiatry. 2012;200(1):37-44.

17. Hui D, De La Cruz M, Bruera E. Palliative care for delirium in patients in the last weeks of life: the final frontier. J Palliat Care. 2014;30(4):259-64.

18. Chirco N, Dunn KS, Robinson-Lane SG. The trajectory of terminal delirium at the end of life. Journal of Hospice and Palliative Nursing. 2011;13(6).

19. Hutcheson S, McMullan D, Lundy E, Jackson N, White C. Psychiatric conditions in palliative medicine. Medicine [Internet]. 2015; 43(12):[3 p.].

20. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Terminal Delirium. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Oxford University Press; [7].

21. Hui D, dos Santos R, Reddy S, Nascimento MS, Zhukovsky DS, Paiva CE, et al. Acute symptomatic complications among patients with advanced cancer admitted to acute palliative care units: A prospective observational study. Palliat Med. 2015;29(9):826-33.

22. Breitbart. Psychiatric symptoms in palliative care. In: Hanks G`, Cherny N`, Christakis NA`, Fallon M`, Kaasa S`, Portenoy RK. 2010.

23. Cerejeira J, Mukaetova-Ladinska EB. A clinical update on delirium: from early recognition to effective management. Nurs Res Pract. 2011;2011:875196.

24. Hosie A, Davidson PM, Agar M, Sanderson CR, Phillips J. Delirium prevalence, incidence, and implications for screening in specialist palliative care inpatient settings: a systematic review. Palliat Med. 2013;27(6):486-98.

25. Morita T, Tei Y, Tsunoda J, Inoue S, Chihara S. Underlying pathologies and their associations with clinical features in terminal delirium of cancer patients. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2001;22(6):997-1006.

26. Chai E, Meier D, Morris J, Goldhirsch S. Delirium. 2014. In: Geriatric Palliative Care [Internet]. Publisher: Oxford University Press; [10].

27. Day J, Higgins I. Adult family member experiences during an older loved one's delirium: a narrative literature review. J Clin Nurs. 2015;24(11-12):1447-56.

28. Elie M, Cole MG, Primeau FJ, Bellavance F. Delirium risk factors in elderly hospitalized patients. J Gen Intern Med. 1998;13(3):204-12.

29. Inouye SK, Westendorp RG, Saczynski JS. Delirium in elderly people. Lancet. 2014;383(9920):911-22.

30. Ely EW, Inouye SK, Bernard GR, Gordon S, Francis J, May L, et al. Delirium in mechanically ventilated patients: validity and reliability of the confusion assessment method for the intensive care unit (CAM-ICU). JAMA. 2001;286(21):2703-10.

31. Aligeti S, Baig MR, Barrera FF. Terminal delirium misdiagnosed as major psychiatric disorder: Palliative care in a psychiatric inpatient unit. Palliat Support Care. 2016;14(3):307-10.

32. Caraceni A, Simonetti F. Palliating delirium in patients with cancer. Lancet Oncol. 2009;10(2):164-72.

33. Leonard M, Agar M, Mason C, Lawlor P. Delirium issues in palliative care settings. J Psychosom Res. 2008;65(3):289-98.

34. Francis J, Young B. Diagnosis of delirium and confusional states UpToDate2014 [Available from: https://www.uptodate.com/contents/diagnosis-of-delirium-and-confusional-states?source=search_resultandsearch=Diagnosis%20of%20delirium%20and%20confusional%20statesandselectedTitle=1~150.

35. Francis J, Martin D, Kapoor WN. A prospective study of delirium in hospitalized elderly. JAMA. 1990;263(8):1097-101.

36. Lawlor PG, Bush SH. Delirium diagnosis, screening and management. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2014;8(3):286-95.

37. Breitbart W, Strout D. Delirium in the terminally ill. Clin Geriatr Med. 2000;16(2):357-72.

38. Moyer DD. Review article: terminal delirium in geriatric patients with cancer at end of life. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2011;28(1):44-51.

39. Leonard M, Raju B, Conroy M, Donnelly S, Trzepacz PT, Saunders J, et al. Reversibility of delirium in terminally ill patients and predictors of mortality. Palliat

Med. 2008;22(7):848-54.

40. Alvarez Fernandez B, Formiga F, Gomez R. Delirium in hospitalised older persons: review. J Nutr Health Aging. 2008;12(4):246-51.

41. Hirsch C. ACP Journal Club. Review: Multicomponent nonpharmacologic interventions reduce incident delirium in inpatients. Ann Intern Med. 2015;163(2):JC4.

42. Hshieh TT, Yue J, Oh E, Puelle M, Dowal S, Travison T, et al. Effectiveness of multicomponent nonpharmacological delirium interventions: a meta-analysis. JAMA Intern Med. 2015;175(4):512-20.

43. Agar MR, Lawlor PG, Quinn S, Draper B, Caplan GA, Rowett D, et al. Efficacy of Oral Risperidone, Haloperidol, or Placebo for Symptoms of Delirium Among Patients in Palliative Care: A Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Intern Med. 2017;177(1):34-42.

44. Burry L, Mehta S, Williamson D, Hutton B, Ely E, Adhikari N, et al. Pharmacological interventions for the treatment of delirium in critically ill patients (Protocol)2015; (6).

45. Downing G. Neurological - Confusion: Delirium and Dementia and Restlessness in: Downing, GM, Wainwright, W, editors. Medical Care of the Dying2006:[455-63 pp.].

46. Health I. Confusion Assessment Method (CAM) with PRISME. In: CAM-PRISMe, editor. 2011.

47. Curtis. Deathbed visions: social workers' experiences`,perspectives`, therapeutic responses`, and direction for practice. 2012.

48. Fenwick P, Lovelace H, Brayne S. Comfort for the dying: five year retrospective and one year prospective studies of end of life experiences. Arch Gerontol Geriatr. 2010;51(2):173-9.

49. Brayne S, Lovelace H, Fenwick P. End-of-life experiences and the dying process in a Gloucestershire nursing home as reported by nurses and care assistants. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2008;25(3):195-206.

50. Mazzarino-Willett A. Deathbed phenomena: its role in peaceful death and terminal restlessness. Am J Hosp Palliat Care. 2010;27(2):127-33.

51. Pitkälä KH, Laurila JV, Strandberg TE, Tilvis RS. Multicomponent geriatric intervention for elderly inpatients with delirium: a randomized, controlled trial. J

Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2006;61(2):176-81.

52. Inouye SK, Bogardus ST, Charpentier PA, Leo-Summers L, Acampora D, Holford TR, et al. A multicomponent intervention to prevent delirium in hospitalized older patients. N Engl J Med. 1999;340(9):669-76.

53. Inouye SK, Bogardus ST, Baker DI, Leo-Summers L, Cooney LM. The Hospital Elder Life Program: a model of care to prevent cognitive and functional decline in older hospitalized patients. Hospital Elder Life Program. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2000;48(12):1697-706.

54. Inouye SK. Prevention of delirium in hospitalized older patients: risk factors and targeted intervention strategies. Ann Med. 2000;32(4):257-63.

55. Tatematsu N, Hayashi A, Narita K, Tamaki A, Tsuboyama T. The effects of exercise therapy on delirium in cancer patients: a retrospective study. Support Care Cancer. 2011;19(6):765-70.

56. Meagher DJ. Delirium: optimising management. BMJ. 2001;322(7279):144-9.

57. Nakajima N, Satake N, Nakaho T. Indications and practice of artificial hydration for terminally ill cancer patients. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2014;8(4):358-63.

58. Dev R, Dalal S, Bruera E. Is there a role for parenteral nutrition or hydration at the end of life? Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2012;6(3):365-70.

59. Inouye SK, Zhang Y, Jones RN, Kiely DK, Yang F, Marcantonio ER. Risk factors for delirium at discharge: development and validation of a predictive model. Arch Intern Med. 2007;167(13):1406-13.

60. Bush SH, Kanji S, Pereira JL, Davis DH, Currow DC, Meagher DJ, et al. Treating an established episode of delirium in palliative care: expert opinion and review of the current evidence base with recommendations for future development. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2014;48(2):231-48.

61. Candy B, Jackson KC, Jones L, Leurent B, Tookman A, King M. Drug therapy for delirium in terminally ill adult patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012;11:CD004770.

62. Maust DT, Kales HC. Medicating Distress. JAMA Intern Med. 2017;177(1):42-3.

63. Hui D, Bush SH, Gallo LE, Palmer JL, Yennurajalingam S, Bruera E. Neuroleptic dose in the management of delirium in patients with advanced cancer. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2010;39(2):186-96.

64. Raus K, Sterckx S. How defining clinical practices may influence their evaluation: the case of continuous sedation at the end of life. J Eval Clin Pract. 2016;22(3):425-

32.

65. FDA. Public Health Advisory: Deaths with Antipsychotics in Elderly Patients with. 2005.

66. FDA. Information on Conventional Antipsychotics. 2008.

67. Siddiqi N, Harrison JK, Clegg A, Teale EA, Young J, Taylor J, et al. Interventions for preventing delirium in hospitalised non-ICU patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2016;3:CD005563.

68. Perrar KM, Golla H, Voltz R. [Pharmacological treatment of delirium in palliative care patients. A systematic literature review]. Schmerz. 2013;27(2):190-8.

69. Irwin SA, Pirrello RD, Hirst JM, Buckholz GT, Ferris FD. Clarifying delirium management: practical, evidenced-based, expert recommendations for clinical practice. J Palliat Med. 2013;16(4):423-35.

70. Service RR. Sleep Medications for the Treatment or Prevention of Delirium: Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines. Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health; 2016.

71. Sánchez-Román S, Zavala C, Solares A, Chiquete E. Delirium in adult patients receiving palliative care: A systematic review of the literature2013.

72. Lonergan E, Luxenberg J, Areosa Sastre A. Benzodiazepines for delirium. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2009(4):CD006379.

73. Kang JH, Shin SH, Bruera E. Comprehensive approaches to managing delirium in patients with advanced cancer. Cancer Treat Rev. 2013;39(1):105-12.

74. Beller EM, van Driel ML, McGregor L, Truong S, Mitchell G. Palliative pharmacological sedation for terminally ill adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015;1:CD010206.

75. Mahin-Babaei F, Hilal J, Hughes JC. The basis, ethics and provision of palliative care for dementia: A review. Maturitas. 2016;83:3-8.

76. Hui D, Dev R, Bruera E. Neuroleptics in the management of delirium in patients with advanced cancer. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care. 2016;10(4):316-23.

77. Neron A. Constipation and Fecal Impaction: Apes; 2009.

78. Ontario CC. Symptom Management Pocket Guides: Delirium: Action Cancer Ontario; 2010.

79. WRHA. What are the differences between delirium, depression, and dementia? WRHA OCCUPATIONAL THERAPY COGNITION TOOLKIT FAQ's2012.

80. Friedlander MM, Brayman Y, Breitbart WS. Delirium in palliative care. Oncology (Williston Park). 2004;18(12):1541-50; discussion 51-3.

81. Doorley J, McNeal W. The role of neuroleptics in managing morphine-induced terminal delirium: implications for the clinical nurse specialist. Clin Nurse Spec. 2004;18(4):183-5.

82. Plonk WM, Arnold RM. Terminal care: the last weeks of life. J Palliat Med. 2005;8(5):1042-54.

83. Waller A, NL C. Confusional States. Handbook of Palliative Care in Cancer [Internet]. 2000:[309-17 pp.].

84. Caraceni A, C M, Simonetti F. Neurological problems in advanced cancer. In: Doyle D, Hanks G, Cherny NI, Calman K, editors. Oxford Textbook of Palliative Medicine. 3rd ed ed. Oxford, England: Oxford University Press; 2004. p. 703-26.

85. Dean M, Harris J, Regnard C, Hockley J. Confusional states (delirium and dementia). Symptom Relief in Palliative Care [Internet]. 2006:[171-6 pp.].

86. Lawlor P, Gagnon B, Falconer W. Cognitive impairment. In: MacDonald N, Oneschuk D, Hagen N, Doyle D, editors. Palliative Medicine - A case based manual 2005:[295-307 pp.].

87. Paolini CA, Family Medicine DvoG. Symptoms management at the end of life. J Am Osteopath Assoc. 2001;101(10):609-15.

88. Ross DD, Alexander CS. Management of common symptoms in terminally ill patients: Part II. Constipation, delirium and dyspnea. Am Fam Physician. 2001;64(6):1019-26.

89. Brown M, Hardy K. Delirium: assessment and treatment of patients with cancer. PART 2. Br J Nurs. 2016;25(4):S4, S6, S8-9.

90. Calne SM, Kumar A. Nursing care of patients with late-stage Parkinson's disease. J Neurosci Nurs. 2003;35(5):242-51.

91. Quijada E, Billings A. Pharmacologic Management of Delirium; Update on Newer Agents2002. Available from: http://www.aahpm.org/cgi-bin/wkcgi/view?status=A%20andsearch=944andid=297andoffset=100andlimit=25.

92. Esper P, Heidrich D. Symptom clusters in advanced illness. Semin Oncol Nurs. 2005;21(1):20-8.

93. White C, McCann MA, Jackson N. First do no harm... Terminal restlessness or drug-induced delirium. J Palliat Med. 2007;10(2):345-51.

94. Bush SH, Bruera E. The assessment and management of delirium in cancer patients. Oncologist. 2009;14(10):1039-49.

95. Francis J. Delirium and acute confusional states: Prevention, treatment, and prognosis UpToDate2014 [Available from: https://www.uptodate.com/contents/delirium-and-acute-confusional-states-prevention-treatment-and-prognosis?source=search_resultandsearch=Delirium%20and%20acute%20confusional%20statesandselectedTitle=1~150.

96. Micromedex. Drugs that cause delirium. Truven Health Analytics; 2017.

97. Kehl KA. Treatment of terminal restlessness: a review of the evidence. J Pain Palliat Care Pharmacother. 2004;18(1):5-30.

98. Ferris FD, von Gunten CF, Emanuel LL. Competency in end-of-life care: last hours of life. J Palliat Med. 2003;6(4):605-13.

99. Dean M, Harris J-D, Regnard C. Symptom Relief in Palliative Care. 2nd ed. Seattle: Radcliffe Publishing; 2006.

100. Brown S, Degner LF. Delirium in the terminally-ill cancer patient: aetiology, symptoms and management. Int J Palliat Nurs. 2001;7(6):266-8, 70-2.

101. Health I. Delirium Patient and Family Information. In: Information PF, editor. healthlinkbc.ca; interiorhealth.ca: HealthLink BC; 2015.

102. Inouye, SK, van Dyck, CH, Alessi, CA, Balkin, S, Siegal AP, Horwitz RI. Clarifying confusion: the confusopm assessment method. A new method for detection of delirium. Annals of Internal Medicine. 1990. Dec 15;113(12):941-8.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# OTHER SYMPTOMS

BC Centre for Palliative Care

## REFERENCES FOR OTHER SYMPTOMS


- Hypercalcemia – BC Cancer Agency Protocol

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/chemotherapy-protocols-site/Documents/Supportive%20Care/SCHYPCAL_Protocol.pdf

- Fraser Health Hypercalcemia guideline

➡ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.W-by_pNKg2w

- Cerebral edema / CNS swelling - BC Cancer Agency Protocol

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/chemotherapy-protocols-site/Documents/Miscellaneous%20Origin/MODEXA_Protocol.pdf

- Malignant bowel obstruction - BC Cancer Agency Protocol

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/family-oncology-network-site/Documents/MedicalManagementofMalignantBowelObstruction.pdf

- Lymphedema - BC Cancer Agency Protocol

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/nursing-site/Documents/9.%20Lymphedema.pdf

- Spinal Cord Compression - BC Cancer patient information

➡ http://www.bccancer.bc.ca/library-site/Documents/SpinalCordCompression.pdf

- Ascites - Fraser Health Symptom Guideline

➡ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XAm7YnRKg2x

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

# REFRACTORY SYMPTOMS AND PALLIATIVE SEDATION

# REFRACTORY SYMPTOMS AND PALLIATIVE SEDATION THERAPY (PST)

**This guideline is intended for use alongside consultation with experienced palliative care physicians/specialists and inter-professional palliative care teams.[1, 2, 3] If there are no local palliative care physicians available, one can be reached via the BC Provincial Palliative Care Consultation Line (toll-free, 24/7): 1-877-711-5757** (accessible only for physicians and nurse practitioners).

Organizational policies about who may prescribe, administer and monitor Palliative Sedation Therapy (PST) vary throughout British Columbia. Before applying this guideline, ensure the appropriate personnel are involved as required for your organization.

## DEFINITIONS:

**Palliative Sedation Therapy (PST):** The monitored use of pharmacological agent(s) to intentionally reduce consciousness to treat refractory, intractable and intolerable symptoms for a patient[1] at end of life with advanced life-limiting, progressive illness.[1, 4] It is considered a last resort and is only used when other treatments have failed.[5, 6, 7, 8] The level of sedation must be in proportion to symptom severity, using the lowest dose to achieve comfort.[5, 8]

PST almost always continues until natural death from the illness occurs. This guideline does not encompass respite, temporary intentional, procedural, or intermittent sedation. [5, 6,9,10] If these are being considered, seek guidance from an experienced palliative care physician/specialist.

Sedation as a side effect of treatment (i.e., consequential sedation) is not PST. Decreased level of consciousness is expected in the natural dying process regardless of PST.[3, 5]

**The intent of PST is to provide symptom relief.** When used appropriately, it does not hasten death.[3, 5, 7, 10, 11] While some patients with refractory symptoms may consider Medical Assistance in Dying (MAiD), the two are distinguished by their **intent** and **patient eligibility**, and these distinctions should be made clear to the patient, family and health care team. [1, 2, 5, 6, 12.] For guidance when responding to an expressed wish for hastened death, see Nurturing psychosocial and spiritual well-being - "Expressed wish to hasten death" on page 14

1 "Patient" indicates the person receiving care and includes terms such as "client" and "resident". "Family" is defined by the person receiving care and includes all who are identified by them as significant and involved.

| Palliative Sedation Therapy (PST) | Medical Assistance in Dying (MAiD) |
|---|---|
| Suffering is unbearable for the patient. | Suffering is unbearable for the patient. |
| Intent is to provide symptom management and relief of suffering. | Intent is to end life to relieve suffering. |
| Does not hasten death. | Hastens death. |
| Natural death from illness is imminent.[4, 5, 6, 7] | Natural death from illness is "reasonably foreseeable".[13] |
| All other palliative interventions have been considered and are not possible or acceptable. | The patient has been made aware of means that are available to potentially relieve their suffering, including palliative care.[13] |
| Consent is required. | Consent is required. |
| Does not require that the patient be competent to provide consent. The Substitute Decision Maker (SDM) may consent on the patient's behalf. | Requires that the patient is competent to provide consent at the time of administration. |

**Table 1: Distinguishing between PST and MAiD**

**Refractory symptom(s):** the degree of suffering is unbearable for the patient and, after a thorough assessment, further interventions are determined to include one or any combination of the following:[3 ,4, 5]

- Inaccessible or incapable of relieving suffering,
- Associated with unacceptable side effects,
- Unlikely to be effective within a reasonable time frame,[5]
- Not in keeping with the patient's goals of care,[5] **and/or**
- Unacceptable to the patient and/or family for other reasons.

Before determining if a symptom is refractory rather than difficult, a full assessment and advanced symptom management must be done in consultation with an experienced palliative care physician/specialist.[3, 4] See Assessment section in following pages for details.

## PREVALENCE

It is difficult to determine the prevalence of true refractory symptoms or the frequency of PST provision, both of which vary widely between care settings and jurisdictions. The reported percentages may be influenced by the availability of palliative experts and other resources, as well as local practice patterns and definitions.[3, 7]

## IMPACT

Unrelieved symptoms cause suffering and distress to patients, their family members, and health care professionals. [9, 14] It is crucial to include family in decision-making in order to mitigate the potential negative impact of a decision they don't completely understand or agree with.[7, 9, 15, 16,] However, PST is only offered in response to a **patient's** suffering, not to others' discomfort or perceptions.[3, 8]

## STANDARD OF CARE:

### Step 1 | Goals of care conversations

When considering PST, goals of care conversations must have already taken place with readily accessible documentation. The patient's goals of care must be to allow natural dying with a focus on comfort and symptom management. The patient and/or SDM must have an understanding and acceptance of the patient's limited life-expectancy[4, 5, 6, 7, 17] as further life-prolonging treatments, such as antibiotics and disease modifying agents, are typically stopped with the initiation of PST (unless they also contribute to symptom relief).

Decisions about the following interventions should be made in light of the limited prognosis and considered separately from the decision to proceed with PST: artificial hydration or nutrition, vital sign measurement, bowel and bladder interventions.[4] Hydration is not usually offered but may be in some circumstances. [3, 5, 6,7] Bowel interventions can likely be stopped, and urinary catheterization is only indicated with palpable bladder distention and signs of patient discomfort. [5, 7]

## Step 2 | Assessment

Determining that the criteria for PST are met requires knowledge of the patient and diagnosis, as well as symptom management expertise. For these reasons, **it is strongly recommended** that consultation with an experienced palliative care physician/specialist and inter-professional team be sought[1, 2, 3] **before** deciding that a symptom is refractory in order to determine if PST is appropriate.

1. A thorough assessment of physical, mental, spiritual, and emotional health is needed to determine the nature of suffering.[4]
2. Ensure all available supportive and symptom management interventions have been explored in consultation with experienced palliative care physicians/specialists and inter-professional team members.[3, 5, 8, 12]
3. Ask about and attend to the patient's individual, family, community, and cultural values and beliefs. Some areas to ask about are: the meaning of suffering to them, beliefs about dying, importance of consciousness to the dying process (what are they willing to trade off for comfort), and cultural death rituals, ceremonies or spiritual practices.[4]

### Indications:

Indications for PST are **intractable physical symptoms**. For example: dyspnea, pain, nausea, delirium, and seizures. [3, 6, 9, 11]

Use of PST as a management for refractory **psychological or spiritual distress without accompanying physical symptoms** is controversial and requires consultation with inter-professional team members including social workers, spiritual health practitioners, traditional healers, and/or counsellors as appropriate and desired by the patient. Comply with your organization's policies if considering PST in this situation.[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 18, 19, 20]

**Criteria required for PST are**[1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9] (**See Appendix A for printable checklist**):

- The patient has an advanced life-limiting, progressive illness with a limited prognosis, and death is estimated to be imminent within days.
- The symptom(s) are refractory and intolerable to the patient.
- A Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) order is in place. This may be contained within a Medical Order for Scope of Treatment (MOST) or another document.
- The patient or SDM has provided documented, informed consent

- In addition to assessing the patient, assess if the **care setting** is appropriately resourced.[2, 9] **See Appendix A for a printable checklist for assessment of the care setting**. If the current care setting is not able to support PST, transfer to another setting is required; this may be a factor to consider during decision-making as described below.

## Step 3 | Decision-making

Once it is determined that the criteria have been met, then a decision is made about whether to proceed with PST. The decision must be made in consultation with the patient (when capable), family and/or their SDM, and inter-professional team members. [3, 4, 6, 21, 22, 23] Whenever possible, these discussions should happen in anticipation of refractory symptoms, before a crisis begins or escalates.

### Patient, family and team meeting(s):

1. Empathically address the impact of unrelieved suffering on the patient and family.[3, 22]
2. Confirm the patient and/or family's understanding of the limited prognosis.[3, 22]
3. Discuss all options, including risks and benefits.[3] Ensure the patient and family have their questions answered.[16]
4. Confirm current goals of care. If the patient is unable to communicate, ask their SDM if they have shared their values, beliefs and wishes beforehand. [1, 5, 6]
5. If a transfer to another care setting would be necessary for PST, ask if this would be an acceptable "trade-off".
6. Ensure the patient and family understand the distinction between PST and MAiD.[5, 15, 16]
7. Consult with ethics or conflict resolution services if needed, striving for consensus with the patient, family and health care team.[1 ,6]

<u>Document the following in the legal medical record that must be accessible to the inter-professional care team:</u>[2, 3, 5, 6]

- Criteria for PST have been met.
- Patient, family and team discussions including decisions that were made

and their rationale.

- **Informed consent** by the patient or SDM.
- In addition to physician orders for sedation administration, a **care plan** with the following physician orders and directions must be accessible by all appropriate members of the care team:
    - ✓ Goal sedation level using the RASS-PAL scale. (Appendix B)
    - ✓ Schedule for monitoring of sedation level. (**See Appendix C - medication table on monitoring guidelines for each medication**)
    - ✓ Assessment for symptom control (e.g., nonverbal signs of discomfort).[23]
    - ✓ Other medications to be administered during PST.
    - ✓ Other treatments/interventions to be done during PST.

## PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT

- The decision to use palliative sedation is informed through discussions with the patient, family members, and the inter-professional team
- Consult with an experienced palliative care physician/specialist to ensure all other symptom management options have been explored
- Consult with inter-professional specialists such as palliative social workers, counsellors and spiritual health practitioners when the patient has existential or emotional distress
- Provide ongoing patient, family, and staff emotional support
- Titrate to the minimum level of sedation to reach the goal for symptom relief
- Provide ongoing monitoring of sedation level and symptom relief
- Ensure adequate resources in the chosen care setting
- Document assessments, decisions, care plan and ***informed consent***

## Step 4 | Palliative Sedation Therapy

**It is strongly recommended to seek consultation from an experienced palliative care physician/specialist and inter-professional team prior to initiating PST[1, 2, 3] as well as for ongoing support and guidance for the duration of sedation.**

### Non-pharmacological:

- Ongoing assessment of patient comfort through facial expression or body language.[4, 23] (Behavioral assessment tools for nonverbal or sedated patients may be helpful but have not been studied sufficiently for use with PST.[24])
- Use the RASS-PAL (**Appendix B**) scale to monitor sedation level and titrate up or down to maintain goal level of sedation. Monitor frequency as per medication table (**Appendix C**).
- Provide the same care as for an unresponsive patient (such as mouth care and position changes, e.g., side-lying position to maintain patent airway[9]), possible interventions for urinary retention[5, 7] and bowel function.

### Pharmacological (Appendix C -- detailed medication table):

1. Review current medications.[5, 6]
2. Discontinue non-necessary medications in keeping with goals of care.[6]
3. Opioids are not appropriate to induce PST.[3, 5, 9]
4. DO NOT stop current medications for symptom relief as they will still be needed for optimal comfort (e.g., opioids for pain or dyspnea).[2, 5, 6, 7, 25]
5. As consciousness is lowered, change all necessary medications to non-oral routes (may possibly use sublingual or buccal). [2, 5, 6]
6. Determine any contraindications.[5]
7. Most common medication classes used for PST are benzodiazepines, neuroleptics, barbiturates, or general anesthetics. Choices may depend on the expertise of the prescribing physician, medication availability, and the care setting.[3, 5, 6]
8. Consider discontinuing previous benzodiazepines or neuroleptics if the same class will be used for PST purposes.
9. Titrate only to the level of sedation that is required for symptom control using the lowest dose to achieve comfort. [4, 5, 8]

### Patient and family education and support (see Appendix D -- recommendations for patient and family education materials):

- Before initiating PST, support the patient and family to do what is important to them such as rituals or saying goodbye as the patient will likely not awaken before natural death occurs.[3, 9]
- Continue ongoing, frequent check-ins and emotional support with family members throughout the process from assessment, decision-making, initiation, during sedation, and following death.[5, 6, 7, 9, 15, 22, 26]
- Discuss the usual signs and symptoms of impending death that may be misinterpreted as being caused by PST (e.g., altered respirations).[2, 3, 9]

### Staff support:

- Address the impact of bearing witness to suffering.[3, 9, 26]
- Ensure they understand the background of the decision and have access to documentation of the decision-making process and care plan.[6, 21]
- Ensure staff are confident and competent to provide and monitor sedation[14] and have practice support as needed.[9, 27]
- Provide opportunity for discussion and individual and/or team de-brief with all staff who may be involved with care of the patient and family before and during sedation, and after the patient's death.[4, 6, 9, 14, 27]

# APPENDIX A – DECISION-SUPPORT TOOL FOR REFRACTORY SYMPTOMS, PALLIATIVE SEDATION THERAPY (PST) AND CARE SETTINGS (SEE BODY OF THE GUIDELINE FOR BACKGROUND AND REFERENCES TO THE ITEMS BELOW)

**Strongly recommended** to seek consultation from an experienced palliative care physician/specialist and inter-professional team

**DOCUMENT ASSESSMENT and BACKGROUND for all the items below:**

- ☐ Estimated time of natural death is within days.
- ☐ The patient is experiencing intolerable physical and/or emotional/spiritual suffering.
- ☐ All potential treatment options have been explored in consultation with an experienced palliative care physician/specialist and inter-professional team.
- ☐ The symptom(s) has been determined to be refractory/ intractable rather than difficult because potential treatment options include one or any combination of the following:
  - ☐ Are incapable of relieving symptoms,
  - ☐ Have unacceptable side effects,
  - ☐ Require an unacceptable transfer to another care setting,
  - ☐ Would take an unacceptable length of time to be effective,
  - ☐ Are not in keeping with the patient's goals of care, and/or
  - ☐ Are unacceptable to the patient and family for other reasons.
- ☐ Patient and family goals of care are consistent with a comfort end-of-life approach.
- ☐ Patient and family agree that PST is consistent with their current goals of care.
- ☐ **Patient or SDM consent is documented.**

- ☐ All the following requirements **for the care setting** are met[69]:
  - ☐ Organization capacity and willingness to provide education, ongoing coaching and emotional support for patient, family and staff.
  - ☐ Competent nursing support for the initiation, titration, stabilization of the dose and ongoing monitoring.
  - ☐ Supplies and equipment for care of an unresponsive patient.
  - ☐ Access to all anticipated medications and administration equipment for initiation, titration and maintenance of PST.

## APPENDIX B – RASS-PAL[28]

**Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale - Palliative version (RASS-PAL)[9]**

| Score | Term | Description | |
|---|---|---|---|
| +4 | Combative | Overtly combative, violent, immediate danger to staff (e.g. throwing items); +/- attempting to get out of bed or chair | |
| +3 | Very agitated | Pulls or removes lines (e.g. IV/SQ/Oxygen tubing) or catheter(s); aggressive, +/- attempting to get out of bed or chair | |
| +2 | Agitated | Frequent non-purposeful movement, +/- attempting to get out of bed or chair | |
| +1 | Restless | Occasional non-purposeful movement, but movements not aggressive or vigorous | |
| 0 | Alert and calm | | |
| -1 | Drowsy | Not fully alert, but has sustained awakening (eye-opening/eye contact) to *voice* **(10 seconds or longer)** | Verbal Stimulation |
| -2 | Light sedation | Briefly awakens with eye contact to *voice* **(less than 10 seconds)** | |
| -3 | Moderate sedation | Any movement (eye or body) or eye opening to *voice* **(but no eye contact)** | |
| -4 | Deep sedation | No response to voice , but any movement (eye or body) or eye opening to *stimulation by light touch* | Gentle Physical Stimulation |
| -5 | Not rousable | No response to *voice or stimulation by light touch* | |

**Procedure for RASS-PAL Assessment**[9]

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. Observe patient for **20 seconds.** | |
| a. Patient is alert, restless, or agitated **for more than 10 seconds**<br>**NOTE:** If patient is alert, restless, or agitated for less than 10 seconds and is otherwise drowsy, then score patient according to your assessment for the majority of the observation period | Score 0 to +4 |
| 2. If not alert, greet patient and call patient by name and *say* to open eyes and look at speaker. | |
| b. Patient awakens with sustained eye opening and eye contact **(10 seconds or longer).** | Score -1 |
| c. Patient awakens with eye opening and eye contact, but not sustained **(less than 10 seconds).** | Score -2 |
| d. Patient has any eye or body movement in response to voice but no eye contact. | Score -3 |
| 3. When no response to verbal stimulation, physically stimulate patient by light touch e.g. gently shake shoulder. | |
| e. Patient has any eye or body movement to gentle physical stimulation. | Score -4 |
| f. Patient has no response to any stimulation. | Score -5 |

## APPENDIX C – MEDICATION TABLE[2, 3, 5, 6]

**Seek** palliative care physician/specialist support if desired level of sedation is not reached with maximum doses or unacceptable side effects occur.

| Medication | Initial / loading dose | Titration | Usual maint-enance dose | Route of admin-istration | Monitoring | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Midazolam [2, 3, 5, 6, 25]<br>5-15 min onset peak 60 min<br>First choice due to short half-life | 1-5 mg[2, 3, 5]<br>Usually 2.5-5 mg | 0.2-1 mg/hr<br>Titrate up or down Q 10-30 minutes[2,5]<br>Start with a low dose and titrate up as needed, especially with elderly and/or low weight patients[3] | 1-10 mg/hr[2, 5] | Continuous or inter-mittent SC or IV<br>***Intermittent dosing is not recom-mended due to the short half-life** | With each titration, Q30 min until goals are reached and maintained for 1 hr. then Q4-8H[5] | Delirium or agitation is a rare complication[3, 5] |
| Methotrimeprazine[3, 5, 6] | 5-25 mg[5]<br>Usually 12.5-25 mg | | 5-25 mg Q8H and Q2H PRN to max 25 mg Q6H[5]<br>50 mg Q6H and up to 300 mg/24 hrs. | SC | Q1H until goals are achieved then Q8H[5] | If used in combination with Midazolam, monitor as per Midazolam[5]<br>Use with caution in renal and hepatic dysfunction[3] |

| Medication | Initial / loading dose | Titration | Usual maint-enance dose | Route of admin-istration | Monitoring | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Phenobarbital**[3, 5, 6] | Depends on degree of sedation 30 mg, 60 mg, 90 mg or 120 mg[5] | Very long half-life (53-118hrs)[5]<br>30-120 mg SC/IV BID-TID | Max. 720 mg/24H[5] | Deep SC, may also use continuous sub-cutaneous infusion – less tissue necrosis and burning | Q1H until goals are achieved then Q8H5<br>Monitor for respiratory depression[6] | If used in combination with Midazolam, monitor as per Midazolam[5]<br>It can potentially decrease effectiveness of midazolam (requires close monitoring of sedation)<br>Mostly used for deeper levels of sedation, use with caution if the goal is light sedation[5] |

| Medication | Initial / loading dose | Titration | Usual maint-enance dose | Route of admin-istration | Monitoring | Notes |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Lorazepam**[3,6] | 0.5-1 mg[3] SC or IV<br>1-4 mg sublingual / buccal[3]<br>Buccal not often used due to inconsistent absorption | 0.5-2 mg Q2H PRN [3] | 1-4 mg SC / IV Q2-4H<br>or 1-8 mg sublingual / buccal[3] | SC / IV or may start with sublingual or buccal[3] | | |
| **Dexmedetomidine8** | | | | | | Is on the B.C. formulary and used occasionally<br>Anecdotally effective when the patient goal is to be in an altered mental state but not sedated per se, e.g., wishes to eat and drink |
| **Propofol**[3, 5, 6] | | | | | As per agency policy[5, 6] | Very strong<br>Limit use to setting with appropriate personnel, monitoring and support[5, 6] |

# APPENDIX D – RECOMMENDATIONS FOR PATIENT AND FAMILY PRINTED MATERIALS

The information below is **not** intended to be printed and handed out. Rather, it is to be used as a guide to develop organization-specific materials. Follow your organization's policies and procedures for developing patient and family education materials.

*Italics indicate possible phrasing which was developed for B.C. by consensus of palliative experts and limited consultation with patient and family representatives; however, there was no consultation with experts in health communication.* Recommend eliciting significant patient and family feedback and evidence-based development of appropriate language including literacy level.

1. **Introduction** – *it is difficult to see someone you love suffering, or to suffer yourself.*
2. **Definition of Palliative Sedation Therapy (PST)** – *PST is medication given to make a person not alert, to sleep, less able to rouse, and comfortable, so they aren't suffering.*
3. **Distinguish PST from MAiD** – *PST is different because:*

4. *PST Is only offered when a person is not able to be comfortable with other interventions.*
    a. *PST is only offered if a person is expected to die soon.*
    b. *When a person is sedated with PST, they die naturally from their illness. When a person is given MAiD, they die from the medication.*
    c. *A person must be alert and competent to consent for themselves for MAiD, whereas a SDM can consent for PST on the person's behalf.*
    d. *The exact timing of death within days and hours is not known with PST and is more predictable with MAiD.*

*If you wish to consider MAiD, we can provide you with information and access to decision-support.*

4. **When would PST be offered?** – *PST is offered when everything else has been tried to help the person dying of their illness to be comfortable and all other options:*
    a. *Cannot help with the symptom.*

b. *Have unacceptable side effects.*

c. *Would take too long to work.*

d. *Do not fit with what you and your loved one want.*

e. *Cannot be given in your preferred care setting and a transfer is not what you want.*

5. **Decision-making process** - *The patient, family, physician and other health care team members will decide together if PST is the best option. PST will only be offered if:*

   *a. The illness is serious and a natural death from that illness is likely soon.*

   *b. Suffering is unbearable and unmanageable.*

   *c. It fits with patient and family goals for care and for remainder of life.*

   *d. The person and/or their SDM understands the risks and benefits and gives informed consent.*

6. **What is expected if PST is initiated**?

   *a. The person will die as they would have, except they will be more comfortable.*

   *b. You will see the usual changes as someone dies (describe skin mottling, etc.)*

   *c. A decision will be made with the patient, family and health care team about the goal sedation level and only enough medication to reach that goal will be given.*

   *d. The nurse and doctor will work together to find the right dose to reach the goal.*

   *e. Nurses will regularly monitor the person to make sure they are comfortable without being too sedated.*

   *f. The patient and family will be supported emotionally throughout the decision-making and PST process.*

## REFERENCES

1. Canadian Society of Palliative Care Physicians. Statement on continuous palliative sedation therapy [Internet]. 2017. Available from: https://www.cspcp.ca/wp-content/uploads/2017/11/CSPCP-Statement-CPST-FINAL.pdf

2. Alberta Health Services. Palliative sedation guideline [Internet]. 2015. Available from: http://www.palliative.org/NewPC/_pdfs/management/Palliative%20Sedation%20Final%20Dec%202015.pdf

3. Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care Program. Refractory Symptoms and Palliative Sedation Therapy Guideline. 2011; Available from: https://www.fraserhealth.ca/employees/clinical-resources/hospice-palliative-care#.XGXBmuhKg2x

4. Dean MM, Cellarius V, Henry B, Oneschuk D, Librach SL (Canadian S of PPT. Framework for Continuous Palliative Sedation Therapy in Canada. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2012;15(8):870–9. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2011.0498

5. Champlain Hospice Palliative Care Program. The Champlain Region Palliative Sedation Therapy Clinical Practice and Medication Guidelines. 2018. p. 1–17.

6. Harlos M, Embleton L. Sedation for Palliative Purposes Guideline [Internet]. Winnipeg Regional Health Authority; 2017. p. 1–21. Available from: http://www.wrha.mb.ca/extranet/eipt/files/EIPT-045.pdf

7. Cherny NI. ESMO clinical practice guidelines for the management of refractory symptoms at the end of life and the use of palliative sedation. Ann Oncol. 2014;25(July):iii143-iii152.

8. Twycross R. Reflections on palliative sedation. Palliat Care Res Treat. 2019;1–16.

9. Waterloo Wellington Interdisciplinary HPC Education Committee; PST Task Force. The Waterloo Wellington Palliative Sedation Protocol. 2015.

10. Beller EM, van Driel ML, Mitchell G. Palliative pharmacological sedation for symptom relief in terminally ill adults. Cochrane Database Syst Rev [Internet]. 2012;(1). Available from: http://doi.wiley.com/10.1002/14651858.CD010206

11. Maltoni M, Scarpi E, Nanni O. Palliative sedation in end-of-life care. Curr Opin Oncol. 2013;25(4):360–7.

12. Soh TLGB, Krishna LKR, Sim SW, Yee ACP. Distancing sedation in end-of-life care from physician-assisted suicide and euthanasia. Singapore Med J [Internet]. 2016 May;57(5):220–7. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=mnh&AN=27211055&site=ehost-live&scope=site

13. B.C. Government. Medical Assistance in Dying [Internet]. [cited 2018 Dec 13]. Available from: https://www2.gov.bc.ca/gov/content/health/accessing-health-care/home-community-care/care-options-and-cost/end-of-life-care/medical-assistance-in-dying

14. White K, Wilkes L, Cooper K, Barbato M. The impact of unrelieved patient suffering on palliative care nurses. Int J Palliat Nurs [Internet]. 2004;10(9):438–44. Available from: http://www.magonlinelibrary.com/doi/10.12968/ijpn.2004.10.9.16049

15. Tursunov O, Cherny NI, Ganz FD. Experiences of Family Members of Dying Patients Receiving Palliative Sedation. Oncol Nurs Forum [Internet]. 2016 Nov;43(6):E226–32. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=119017167&site=ehost-live&scope=site

16. Bruinsma SM, van der Heide A, van der Lee ML, Vergouwe Y, Rietjens JAC. No Negative Impact of Palliative Sedation on Relatives' Experience of the Dying Phase and Their Wellbeing after the Patient's Death: An Observational Study. PLoS One [Internet]. 2016 Feb 12;11(2):1–13. Available from: http://10.0.5.91/journal.pone.0149250

17. Schildmann E, Schildmann J. Palliative Sedation Therapy: A Systematic Literature Review and Critical Appraisal of Available Guidance on Indication and Decision Making. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2014;17(5):601–11. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2013.0511

18. Sulmasy DP. The last low whispers of our dead: when is it ethically justifiable to render a patient unconscious until death? Theor Med Bioeth [Internet]. 2018 Jun;39(3):233–63. Available from: https://link-springer-com.ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/article/10.1007%2Fs11017-018-9459-7

19. Rodrigues P, Crokaert J, Gastmans C. Palliative Sedation for Existential Suffering: A Systematic Review of Argument-Based Ethics Literature. J Pain Symptom Manag [Internet]. 2018 Jun;55(6):1577–90. Available from: http://10.0.3.248/j.jpainsymman.2018.01.013

20. Voeuk A, Nekolaichuk C, Fainsinger R, Huot A. Continuous Palliative Sedation for Existential Distress? A Survey of Canadian Palliative Care Physicians' Views. J Palliat Care [Internet]. 2017 Jan;32(1):26–33. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=123864835&site=ehost-live&scope=site

21. Lokker ME, Swart SJ, Rietjens JAC, van Zuylen L, Perez RSGM, van der Heide A. Palliative sedation and moral distress: A qualitative study of nurses. Appl Nurs Res [Internet]. 2018 Apr;40:157–61. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/

login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=128611394&site=ehost-live&scope=site

22. Shen H-S, Chen S-Y, Cheung DST, Wang S-Y, Lee JJ, Lin C-C. Differential Family Experience of Palliative Sedation Therapy in Specialized Palliative or Critical Care Units. J Pain Symptom Manag [Internet]. 2018 Jun;55(6):1531–9. Available from: http://10.0.3.248/j.jpainsymman.2018.02.007

23. McGuire DB, Kaiser KS, Haisfield-Wolfe ME, Iyamu F. Pain Assessment in Noncommunicative Adult Palliative Care Patients. Nurs Clin North Am. 2016 Sep;51(3):397–431.

24. Deschepper R, Bilsen J, Laureys S. Annual Update in Intensive Care and Emergency Medicine 2013. 2013;663–75. Available from: http://link.springer.com/10.1007/978-3-642-35109-9

25. Lux MR, Protus BM, Kimbrel J, Grauer P. A Survey of Hospice and Palliative Care Physicians Regarding Palliative Sedation Practices. Am J Hosp Palliat Med [Internet]. 2017 Apr;34(3):217–22. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=121615137&site=ehost-live&scope=site

26. Dean MM, Cellarius V, Henry B, Oneschuk D, Librach (Canadian Society of Pallia SL. Framework for Continuous Palliative Sedation Therapy in Canada. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2012;15(8):870–9. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2011.0498

27. Leboul D, Aubry R, Peter J-M, Royer V, Richard J-F, Guirimand F. Palliative sedation challenging the professional competency of health care providers and staff: a qualitative focus group and personal written narrative study. BMC Palliat Care [Internet]. 2017 Apr 11;16:1–12. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=122551005&site=ehost-live&scope=site

28. Bush SH, Grassau PA, Yarmo MN, Zhang T, Zinkie SJ, Pereira JL. The Richmond Agitation-Sedation Scale modified for palliative care inpatients (RASS-PAL): A pilot study exploring validity and feasibility in clinical practice. BMC Palliat Care. 2014;13(1):1–9.

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# B.C. INTER-PROFESSIONAL PALLIATIVE SYMPTOM MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

Copyright © BC Centre for Palliative Care. 2017. 300-601 Sixth St. New Westminster, B.C. V3L 3C1. office@bc-cpc.ca – please see Introduction section for details and disclaimer

fraserhealth

Interior Health
Every person matters

First Nations Health Authority
Health through wellness

island health

Providence
HEALTH CARE

Vancouver
CoastalHealth

northern health

BC Centre for Palliative Care

# NURTURING PSYCHOSOCIAL AND SPRITUAL WELL-BEING

## INTRODUCTION

Throughout the development process of the B.C. Inter-professional Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines[1], the First Nations perspective on health and wellness was the lens through which health was viewed. This perspective takes a holistic view and considers wellness in all facets; physical, mental, spiritual and emotional. A person[1] and their family[2] can be well within one facet of life while being unwell in another facet. For example, one can be spiritually at peace while physically dying.[1]

The focus of the previous 15 symptom guidelines[1] was primarily on physical concerns, although they did include psychosocial interventions such as addressing anxiety associated with dyspnea. This current guideline focuses on the mental, spiritual and emotional facets of health and wellness.[2, 3] Due to the uniqueness of each person and family, it does not address all issues and concerns that may arise. Instead, it concentrates on some key areas that were identified as important by practicing clinicians, people and families.

## Step 1 | Building a foundation of trust and dignity-conserving care[2]:

Health care providers (HCPs) have a responsibility to initiate and maintain therapeutic relationships with the people they care for.[4] However, it may be difficult for some people to trust HCPs and the health care system because of past traumatic or unpleasant experiences.[5, 6, 7] When people have repeated negative experiences, they may avoid seeking health care[5, 7] or choose not to disclose vital information,[8] both of which may lead to further harm. HCPs may reinforce distrust by making assumptions and portraying bias in verbal, written, and non-verbal communication.[9]

**In order to move towards trusting, therapeutic relationships:**

1. **Practice regular self-reflection:**
    - Recognize when you have an adverse emotional response to a person or group of people.[8, 9]
    - Identify assumptions behind the emotion.[8, 9]

---

1 Throughout this document, "people" and "person" refer to the recipients of care who have life-limiting condition(s); this includes terms such as "patient", "client" or "resident".

2 "Family" is defined by the person and includes all who are identified by them as significant and involved.

- Challenge your assumptions by recognizing that everyone has unique experiences, values and beliefs.[3, 4, 10]

2. **In every interaction, communicate genuine respect for the person's humanity**[10]:

- Ask: "What do I need to know about you as a person/family to give you the best care possible?".[2]
- Be attentive to body language and other signs that indicate a person may be feeling vulnerable (e.g., becoming combative during personal care)[5] and make every effort to help them feel safe.
- Create a physical environment that is pleasant for the individual, as much as possible (e.g., managing desired noise level, maintaining privacy).[3]
- Promote times of "normalcy" with usual life activities they enjoy (e.g., social conversation).[2]
- Use polite, courteous language and tone[10] with acceptance, authenticity and compassion,[4] refraining from judgement. Show an equal partnering relationship through body language, such as sitting or rising to equal eye level.[4, 10] Convey attitudes of inherent worth of the person in written, spoken and non-verbal communication.[3]
- It may take time for the person to trust so be patient and sensitive to their readiness to engage with you. Ask what could be put in place to help them feel safe.
- Seek permission before engaging in difficult conversations and ensure the timing is right for the person (e.g., ask who they would like to be present or absent, if they are feeling well enough to talk, etc.).
- Ask and honour how much information they would like to give and receive, this may change over time.[11] Offer information in plain language, without medical terminology,[11] at their level of health literacy.
- Describe what you will do with the information they share with you, who will have access to documentation with their consent, and the purpose of communicating with the inter-professional team.
- Advocate for the person and family to be active participants in care and decision-making.[10] Seek shared understanding of goals of care. Respect and honour choices based on their values and beliefs. Encourage independence and control whenever possible.[3]
- Throughout care, validate the person's and family's emotions and concerns and answer their questions. Promote ongoing, open dialogue with the person, family and health care team.

3. **Respect gender identity and sexual orientation**

- For people who self-identify as lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, two-spirit, queer or other (LGBT2Q+),[12] give opportunity for safe disclosure of their gender identity and/or sexual orientation that is received with acceptance and continued respect rather than judgement.[8] (**See Appendix A for a link to Trans-care BC**)
- To include those who identify as LGBT2Q+ and choose not to disclose, consider adopting a routine practice of using "they/them/their" as the singular pronoun for everyone rather than "he/she".[12]
- With permission, document and communicate identified gender and preferred pronouns to the health care team. }

4. **Respect chosen family and community caregivers**

- Acknowledge and involve chosen family members[7, 8] and community caregivers[7] during care and bereavement.
- With permission, document their chosen family members, using their preferred terminology to describe the relationship.[7, 8]
- Ask if they have an identified spokesperson and provide information to legally appoint a Substitute Decision Maker (SDM)[14] if different than the B.C. Temporary Substitute Decision-Maker List (**Link in Appendix A**)
- With the person's consent and if they desire, include community care providers (including friends, informal supports, volunteers, traditional, alternative and complementary treatment providers) in the circle of care by communicating and collaborating with them.[6, 7]

5. **Respect Culture**

As with previous symptom guidelines, feedback was sought from people with personal and/or professional knowledge of indigenous culture. Some of the following items to consider may also be important for other cultures (recommend future guidelines revisions include input from other cultures as well).

Never assume, but always **ASK** with a posture of humble curiosity if the following priorities at end of life are relevant for this person, family and community[6, 9]:

- Preparing the spirit for transition into the next life (if they believe in an afterlife) by strengthening emotional, mental and spiritual wellness.[11]

- Connection with family, community, deceased relatives/ancestors, traditional territory/land, home,[6, 11] and spiritual beings.
- Protecting the spirit from negativity (they may be reluctant to discuss death or advance care planning).[6, 11] They may also worry that discussing death invites the spirits or death to come.
- Using traditional medicines and healers, ceremonies, rituals and practices (e.g., herbal remedies).

If desired by the person, family and community:

- Seek to understand where they come from: their story, history[11] and traditions.
- Ask if they would like to have a sacred object brought in from home (e.g., feather, rock).
- Adapt the physical environment and organizational policies as much as possible to accommodate large numbers of visitors at once.[11]
- Consider settings with windows that can open to allow for spirits to pass through.
- Partner with them to create opportunities for spiritual rituals[11] (e.g., smudging).
- Acknowledge their experience of the spirit world as real regardless of the HCP's beliefs.

**Using flexible, co-operative problem-solving** to address personal, physical, financial, jurisdictional and geographical barriers to support the person to receive palliative care services in their community and/or chosen safe place whenever possible.[6, 7]

## Step 2 | Screening and assessment

### Screening for distress[15]

1. Using a screening tool such as the Edmonton Symptom Assessment System-Revised (ESAS-r),[16] Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale (HADS) (links in Appendix B.1), a screening tool used in your organization and/or endorsed by your profession to identify areas of potential psychosocial and/or spiritual distress.

2. Ask further screening questions such as:

    - Do you feel depressed[17] or extremely sad?
    - Do you feel anxious or worried?
    - Are there any issues you would like to resolve before your death?
    - Are there other things that are a concern to you and/or your family?

3. When areas of psychosocial and/or spiritual distress are identified through initial screening, further assessment is required. [15, 18]

    Often, emotional distress is linked to physical distress.[19] Provide best practice symptom management[20] including assessment and treatment of total pain (Pain symptom management guidelines[3]).

    The recommended assessment and interventions in the following sections are within the scope of practice for many health professions. Always practice within the boundaries of your profession, experience and organizational policies. Refer to social workers, counsellors and/or spiritual health practitioners as appropriate for specialized assessment and intervention.

---

3 BC Centre for Palliatve Care (2017). B.C. Inter-professional Palliatve Symptom Management Guidelines. (Pain Section)

## Spiritual wellness screening and assessment

**Spirituality**: "a dynamic and intrinsic aspect of humanity through which persons seek ultimate meaning, purpose, and transcendence, and experience relationship to self, family, others, community, society, nature, and the significant or sacred. Spirituality is expressed through beliefs, values, traditions, and practices.''[21]

- May use spiritual screening tools such as FICA and HOPE. (S**ee links in Appendix B.1**)
- May use a "gentle querying"[22] approach. (**Appendix B.1**)
- Ask, "Do you, your family and/or your community have cultural/spiritual/religious beliefs, practices or values you'd like us to be aware of? If so, how can we support you as best as possible to meet these needs?"
- Ask, "What has given you meaning through your life? What brings meaning in this time in life?
- What has given you strength in your life and throughout your illness?"
- Identify when the person's needs may require the clinical training of a spiritual health practitioner (e.g., spiritual/existential distress, past spiritual hurts, rituals, sacraments, and/or wrestling with the impact of beliefs on decision-making).

## Recognizing existential distress

**Spiritual or existential distress:** there are many definitions but common themes are: personal anguish,[23] loss of meaning,[24] feeling irrelevant,[24] questioning the purpose of one's life and death,[23] loss of connectedness,[23, 24] intense fear of dying,[23, 24] hopelessness,[24] guilt, and a sense of isolation.[23, 24]

**Health care providers can recognize distress when the person, their families and/or caregivers are:**

- Struggling with hopelessness or a loss of faith.
- Feeling lonely, forgotten, isolated, guilty or misunderstood.
- Experiencing anger at others or a Higher Power.
- Questioning the purpose of their life or the meaning of suffering.
- Needing forgiveness or reconciliation.

## Psychosocial assessment

At the initial inter-professional assessments and throughout ongoing interactions, assess how the illness progression is impacting all domains for the person and family: spiritual, social, emotional, relational, practical, and financial.[25, 26]

- Self-reflective practice: acknowledge your own responses to the person's emotions as sometimes our clinical assessments can be influenced by our own perceptions of what is "emotionally normal" as well as our own discomfort with a person's expression of pain.[27]
- Assess the impact of caregiving on the family in all domains.[26] Sometimes families feel pressured to provide care. Assess their ability and willingness to continue to provide care, especially as the person's illness progresses.
- Ask questions about previous experiences with loss and grief and look for effective coping strategies used in the past, specifically identifying strengths to build on during this journey.
- Assess the frequency and persistence of feelings of distress (e.g, anxiety or depression).

## Differentiating between grief and depression

- 20%-25% of people with terminal illness experience depression but it is often not diagnosed.[28, 29] Thus, people may not receive appropriate care for their psychosocial needs.[28, 29] It is imperative for health care providers to have a basic understanding of the range of grief and depression symptoms so as to not intervene in a normal grieving process and possibly disrupt it,[30] but also not underdiagnose this serious issue. Grief can be difficult to distinguish from depression and they can co-exist together. (See Appendix B.2 for a comparison table )
- The usual screening and assessment tools for depression include indicators such as: sadness, fatigue, weight loss, withdrawal from social relationships, anorexia, and unrelieved pain,[19, 28] which could all be due to illness progression, and/or grieving, rather than clinical depression.[19] These tools have been shown to screen out those who are not depressed. However, if a person identifies as possibly depressed using these screening tools, further assessment is required.[16, 18]

- The intent of this section is to aid the generalist HCP to identify when a person may be clinically depressed and then to refer to other members of the inter-professional team such as social workers, counsellors and physicians (including psychiatry if appropriate) for further assessment and management of depression. (**See Appendix A for Link to Fraser Health guideline Depression in the terminally ill**)

Suggested questions for a preliminary assessment of depression

| | |
|---|---|
| **Using Mnemonic O, P, Q, R, S, T, U and V**[31, 32] | **Assessment questions** for depression.[31] This framework is based on the familiar O-V assessment questions for physical symptoms. The intention is not that the HCP will ask all of these; instead, chose a few questions that are most relevant for the person and situation. Questions should be asked within a therapeutic relationship and at a pace that is comfortable for the person. **The anticipated outcome is a greater understanding of the person's experience and identification of internal resources and strengths that can be drawn on.** |
| **Onset** | When did you notice changes in your mood? Did it happen gradually or was there a significant event that started it? Have there been times in your life prior to your illness when you have struggled with a low mood? If so, what has helped you in the past? |
| **Provoking / Palliating** | What have you noticed that makes your feelings of depression or sadness either better or worse? |
| **Quality** | Can you describe how you feel? Are there things you still enjoy doing, or have you lost pleasure in things you used to do before you became ill? How does the future look to you? Are you having feelings of hopelessness or worthlessness? |
| **Region/ Radiation** | Are your feelings constant or does your mood change, at times being better, and sometimes worse? |
| **Severity** | How severe are your feelings of depression/sadness? What would you rate it on a scale of 0-10 (0 being none and 10 being the worst possible)? How do you feel right now? At its worst? On average? Are there any other symptom(s) that accompany this feeling? |

## Guiding principles

- Use approaches and language that are inclusive of gender identity and sexual orientation[12], chosen family[7, 12] community caregivers[7] and culture.[8,9]
- With the inter-professional team, assess and address physical symptoms and emotional, mental and/or spiritual distress concurrently.[18]
- Encourage people, families and communities to identify and lean on their strengths and areas of wellness.
- Openness, active listening, silence and a therapeutic presence are interventions within the scope of any clinician.
- Refer on to palliative social workers, counsellors and spiritual health practitioners when the person's and/or family's needs are beyond your scope of practice or expertise to assess and/or intervene.
- When a person expresses a wish to hasten their death, explore their experience before taking any action.
- Work together with families to support children when someone they love is dying.
- Support people and families in their unique experiences of grief from diagnosis and into bereavement.

## Supporting spiritual wellness

The aim of spiritual care is to support all people whether spiritual, religious, atheist or agnostic as they connect with their own inner spiritual resources (e.g., cultural, personal or religious beliefs/perspectives; practices or rituals; connection with others; connection to a transcendent Higher Power; meditation/prayer; sacred objects; scripture/text).

Spiritual well-being improves quality of life and positive coping[33] when approaching death and may have been a source of strength throughout their life as well. Spiritual care has been shown to relieve physical symptoms as well as increase the ability to cope with existing symptoms.[34]

**To support the person and family's spiritual wellness:**

- Convey openness to discuss spirituality and integrate it into care, regardless of the HCP role (i.e., all HCP can integrate spiritual care into practice, not just spiritual health practitioners).[33, 35, 36]
- Allow the person to guide conversations.[36] Provide active listening to stories,[33] convey empathy, respect,[2] and willingness to explore spiritual topics.[37]
- Offer times of silence. "As a caregiving practice, silence is perceived as particularly relevant in spiritual and existential dimensions of care when words may fail."[38]
- Provide "sacred space",[36, 39] which includes time and privacy for spiritual practices the person and family find helpful[33] (e.g., post a sign on the door to prevent interruptions).

Refer to spiritual health practitioners who are responsible to offer respectful, person/family-centered care that supports any expression of spirituality/meaning-making. Spiritual health practitioners have the clinical training and scope to attend to the full range of spiritual and emotional needs of those facing existential/spiritual crisis or difficulties.[40]

If spiritual health practitioners are not available in your organization, social workers or counsellors may be able to provide limited support. The person and family may choose to contact specific spiritual support providers with whom they have an established trusting relationship. Be mindful if referring to religious leaders or other community resources that they may not have clinical training or expertise in health care.

## Supporting psychosocial wellness

Focus on strengths and areas of wellness rather than only on illness or problems. Help the person and family identify past and current problem solving abilities, courage, skills, resilience and resources that they can draw on.[41]

### Emotional supports

- Utilize active listening skills: being fully present, calm[42] and engaged, offer silence without seeming rushed.[10] Focus on their needs rather than the HCP task to be performed.

- Model and promote a team and organizational culture that values the importance of providing emotional and social support, which may require time to sit and listen to people and their families.[42]
- Convey compassion and empathy when they express emotions in a variety of ways, including those that may be uncomfortable for the HCP (e.g., wailing).[10]
- The life review that often happens near end-of-life may cause memories of past trauma to re-surface.[5] Offer the person support from social workers, counsellors and spiritual health practitioners to do a life review if desired.[43]
- Person and family education about signs and symptoms of worsening anxiety or depression.[15]
- Provide information on stress reduction strategies such as mindfulness, yoga, relaxation breathing and music.[15, 43]

## Social supports

- Assert the person's wishes for desired visitors, including "gatekeeping" those they do not wish to see or when they prefer to not have visitors at all. As much as possible, create a welcoming physical space for visiting.
- Recognize some people may be estranged from family and/or feel disconnected from their spirituality. Offer referral to social workers, counsellors and spiritual health practitioners for support in healing estranged social and spiritual relationships, if desired.[8]
- Offer information about on-line and in-person peer support groups[15, 44, 45] and group therapy.[44]
- Support family caregivers who may be extremely fatigued, encouraging them to acknowledge their own needs and to say "no" if they are not able to continue to provide care. Provide information about caregiver supports such as respite services[20, 46] and support groups. (**See Appendix A for a link to Family Caregivers of B.C.**)

## Financial and practical supports

- Anticipate possible needs and offer support to families who may be too weary to ask.
- Provide information about practical supports such as transportation, financial assistance, BC Palliative Care Benefits program[15] and palliative day care programs, where available.[44]
- When appropriate, refer to social work for significant financial concerns.

Refer to qualified social workers or counsellors for psychosocial interventions which may be brief and effective to increase quality of life and reduce emotional distress.[43, 46] Examples are: music therapy,[43] dignity therapy,[43] and meaning-making therapy.[47]

## Expressed wish to hasten death

**The wish to hasten death:** is "a reaction to suffering",[48, 49, 50] "in the context of an advancing life-limiting illness from which the person can see no way out other than to accelerate his or her death. This wish may be expressed spontaneously or after being asked about it, but it must be distinguished from the acceptance of impending death or wish to die naturally".[48]

Expression of wanting to end one's life in the presence of an advanced life-limiting illness is not uncommon.[51, 52, 53] It does not necessarily indicate a request for Medical Assistance in Dying (MAiD) or presence of depression.[54] To understand the person's perspective, a critical and reflective analysis about what underlines their suffering is pivotal.[50] Statements made by persons with a life-limiting illness that either explicitly or implicitly suggest a desire to die can have a variety of meanings. The very fact that there is communication and expression of wanting to die may signify the expectation of an interaction with the physician or health care team.[55]

**An expression of a wish to hasten death is an invitation for a health care provider to lean in with curiosity, seeking to understand the meaning behind a person's expression of desire to die.**

***Many reasons commonly associated with a person's desire to die can be addressed by a palliative inter-professional care team.*** They include the following[48, 56, 51]:

- Existential distress (e.g., loss of meaning in life).
- Psychological distress (e.g., hopelessness, guilt, depression).
- Feeling a burden to others.
- Loss of autonomy and control.
- Uncontrolled physical symptoms presently or anticipated in the future.
- Fear of the future or other fears.
- Readiness -- feeling it is time to die.[57]
- Emotional and/or physical exhaustion.
- A desire to end suffering.

## Assessment and interventions[48]

It is imperative to distinguish between:

- an expression of a desire for a hastened death,
- a request for Medical Assistance in Dying (MAiD), or
- a plan for suicide.

Approaches when responding to an expressed wish to hasten death:

- Do not stigmatize or label the person as a “MAiD person” or “suicidal”.
- Ask about the person’s emotional state, conveying a willingness to talk about the reasons behind their statements.
- Listen and be present in the face of suffering, portray a commitment to respond.
- Engage with the person to identify and address the source of their distress and motivations for desiring hastened death.
- Assess for possible depression (See "Psychosocial Topic Index" on page 29 for sections on depression ).
- Referral to appropriate members of the inter-professional team including social workers, counsellors and spiritual health practitioners.
- If it is determined that there is an imminent threat of suicide, contact an emergency response team (911 or local Mental Health Unit/Hospital) or the person’s family physician for direction. (**Appendix A for suicide prevention resources**)

**Suggested questions and phrases for responding to desire to die statements:**

1. Exploring their current feelings and/or fears: *I am hearing you have a readiness to die. What is contributing to that readiness? Can you share your feelings with me? Are you concerned about something in particular?*
2. Assessing their state of suffering and distress (physical, emotional, spiritual): *What, if anything, do you feel could be improved in your*

*care and treatment? If we could relieve this, would you still wish for a hastened death?* If the reason is refractory symptoms/suffering, refer to the guideline for refractory symptoms and palliative sedation[4].

3. When they are seeking further information on MAiD:

- *Have you talked with your loved ones about this request? Would you like assistance in talking further with them?* (Note: having families' agreement and acceptance of the person's request for MAiD is not required to proceed.)
- *It sounds like you have given this a lot of thought. Would you like me to provide you with additional information about MAiD?* [53]
- Provide information on MAiD if desired by the person in accordance with your organization's and professional governing body's policies and procedures. To ignore, dismiss or diminish a person's request for MAiD can lead to further isolation and suffering and a lack of trust in the health care system. (**See** Appendix A **for MAiD resources in each health authority**)

## Supporting people and their families who are grieving

### Definitions

**Grief** includes a range of emotions and processes in response to loss.[58] "Grief is a normal part of life[20] and a natural response to loss. It is the consequence of living and loving, and meaningful connections with others"[27] It is a complex process that involves the entire body, spirit and mind, an experience unique to each individual, family and community.[27]

- The person and their family may experience grief from the time of diagnosis of a life-limiting condition; family members' grief continues through to bereavement.
- Positive emotions can be experienced alongside painful ones[30] and may fluctuate (e.g., when caregiving has been intense, grief may be combined with relief after death).
- Most people can cope with the support of family, friends and community groups.[20] Sometimes, they feel they have grown and become more resilient as a result of their grief.[27, 59] However, some individuals may be at risk for experiencing complicated grief and may need additional professional support.

4 BC Centre for Palliatve Care (2019). B.C. Inter-professional Palliatve Symptom Management Guidelines. (Refractory Symptoms and Palliative Sedation Chapter)

**Preparatory grief** is experienced by people living with a life-limiting condition as they work through current and anticipated losses such as: ongoing changes in function, identity, future plans, purpose, role in the family, privacy, unresolved issues, and eventually their death.[60, 61, 62] The intensity of grief may increase as death draws closer[61] or symptoms escalate. The person may withdraw from family and caregivers in preparation for their death.[61]

**Anticipatory grief** is experienced by those grieving the loss of the person while they are still physically present.[63] They encounter a number of losses before death occurs, such as their previous relationship with the dying person, their own autonomy, the ability to participate in activities unrelated to caregiving,[63] and plans for the future.

- Families may experience feelings of ambivalence which fluctuate between uncertainty, guilt, frustration, acceptance, desire for relief of suffering, and hope.
- HCPs may also experience anticipatory grief. In order to facilitate resilience to cope with the anticipatory grieving process, practice self-reflection and self-care, attending to your own individual grief and that of other team members.

**Bereavement** is the process of loss and grieving after the person has died.[64] It is a journey of healing that has no timeline,[27] and may involve: acceptance of the death, adjusting to life without the person, creating a new relationship with the person, and re-connection with the world.[27]

**Complicated grief** occurs after the death, when the person has clinically relevant and disabling distress due to "difficulty accepting the painful reality of the death or imagining a future with purpose and meaning"[65] for an extended period of time[65] (length of time varies in the literature). It is characterized by intense and prolonged yearning,[65] emotional pain, or preoccupation with the deceased. [65,66] The person may show symptoms of insomnia, hypertension, more frequent access of the medical system, and substance misuse.[20]

Caution should be taken not to over-diagnose complicated grief as a psychiatric disorder due to the individualized nature of the grieving process.[66] Risk for complicated grief/bereavement can be assessed during care and at the time of death.[20] **See** Appendix B.1 **for a link to the Bereavement Risk Assessment Tool (BRAT)**.

## Supportive interventions for the grieving person and family during illness

- Preparation for the caregiving role decreases distress during bereavement, so answer questions honestly about what will be involved and support the family to plan for care at various stages.[20]
- Ensure the family is aware of and knows what physical changes to expect when death is near[20, 67] while being sensitive to their readiness to hear this information.
- Inform the person and family that they may wish to have important conversations before the person becomes less responsive as their dying time draws near or before administering a possibly sedating medication.
- Normalize the person's and family's experiences of grief including: shock, relief, gratitude, ambivalence, and guilt. Support internal family communication within your scope of practice.[63]
- Name and validate common expressions of grief including: cognitive (focus, memory), emotional (irritability, anger, anxiety), physical sensations (somatic symptoms, fatigue, and other stress responses), and behaviour (difficulty with managing strong emotions).[68]

## Supportive interventions at the time of death

- Allow privacy time with the body if desired. Ask if the family would like you to stay with them or if they prefer to be alone.
- Partner with the family to support religious, cultural or spiritual rituals and customs.

## Bereavement follow-up at key time points

- Ask questions about how specific family members perceived the death (e.g., do they see it as unexpected, traumatic, etc.) which may greatly impact bereavement.[20]
- Key time points are: immediately following death, 3 months after, 6 months after, and 1 year after.[20] If your organization is not resourced to support bereavement, ensure the family has information on community resources[25] including those provided by hospice societies.
- Referral to bereavement specialist services if desired by the family,[66] especially if any members are at risk for complicated grief. (Appendix A – BRAT)

## Supporting children and youth when someone close to them is dying

During a serious illness, families have the opportunity to adapt to changes, to model honest emotions[69] and grieve together.[70] Often families are anxious about how to support children and youth and desire educational, social, practical, and emotional support.[71, 72, 73] Many HCPs find supporting children one of the most difficult aspects of caring for people who are dying[69] and are unclear of their role. Be self-reflective and person/family-centred without allowing your own biases to impact the family's choices (e.g., thinking children shouldn't be around death).

**While families often do want guidance, they also want to have control over the content and timing of what is said.[71] Remember families know their child best and will support them in ways that are congruent with their values, beliefs and parenting style. Seek support from social workers and counsellors.**

Generally, the role of HCPs is to:

- Provide emotional support/validation to all members of the family.
- Assist families to identify needs of children, strategies to adapt to changes, and enhance coping throughout illness trajectory from a strengths-based approach.[71, 72, 74]
- Help family members to identify their own stress levels and coping strategies.
- Seek mental health and/or counselling services if: significant changes in behaviours at home or school, child unable to function with day-to-day tasks, destructive or self-harming behaviours, suicidal ideation,[75] and/or decreased attention to hygiene in older children. Youth may exhibit high risk substance use and/or sexual behaviours.

Below are some principles to guide both families and professionals **as they work together** to support children and youth.

## Consider how decisions about end-of-life plans affect child:

- How will location of care (home, hospice, hospital) impact child? How will space, logistics, emotional support, and caregiving demands be managed?[75]
- Attend to practical needs such as advance care planning, guardianship, financial affairs, estate planning. This is particularly important for single parents.[75]

## Communication (See Appendix B.3 – Tips for families communicating with children about serious illness)

Families tend to disclose information related to serious illness using their usual relational patterns and styles of communication.[76] They may benefit from professional support if they usually avoid difficult subjects or have problematic relationships. Encourage adult family members to seek emotional support if needed and model self-care.[75] Ensure adults have a safe place to grieve and can honestly express emotions.

Refer to individual and group counselling services as desired, including community resources. Encourage peer social support such as support groups and camps with other grieving children and youth to decrease the feeling of isolation.[77, 78]

## Information sharing

Ask families if they would like to bring the child or youth to meet a health professional as this can increase the child's trust in medical care and help them to feel part of the process.[78] Ask what the child/youth has been told and how much the family wants them to know. Plan with the family ahead of time how the conversation will go. Discuss the suggestions below and ask if they would like you to address them, or if they would prefer to lead the conversation. Seek permission from the family before disclosing any health information to the child or youth.

Consider the child's developmental stage (Appendix A **for a link to developmental considerations in the BC Guidelines**). Families may prefer to share information themselves and could benefit from the suggestions below as they communicate directly with the child/youth.

- Engage with knowledgeable professionals such as child and youth counsellors or social workers to assess and support the child/youth with permission from the family.
- Validate how difficult and life-changing the illness is for the child.[75]
- Ask how much information they want and from whom, and tell them they can change their minds later.[70] Take cues from the child in how much they want to know, consider their individual preferences and developmental age.[78]
- Start with what a child can observe. You may have noticed… Ask what they know so far and clarify misunderstandings.[13] Provide current understanding of what may happen in future[71].
- Offer assurances to the common fears children have[69, 13] :
    - They can't catch the illness.

    - It's not their fault, i.e., they didn't cause the illness.
    - They will be taken care of.
    - There are still medicine and treatments that can help their loved one be comfortable.

- Be open and honest, using concrete simple language. Don't use euphemisms such as "pass away". Use correct terms for the illness, such as "cancer",[69, 70, 78, 13, 79] and specific ways it affects the body.[71]
- Watch how the child or youth reacts to what you say; attend to the non-verbal, ask them how they're feeling.[13] Give them the opportunity to ask questions.
- Information may need to be repeated many times[78, 79] and there may be many smaller conversations along the way rather than "THE" talk. The child may persist in "magical thinking" as they take time to process the information.
- Encourage the family to check in often and keep discussion open[13] by asking child if they are getting "too much information, too little, or just right?"[75]

Managing visits to the hospital, hospice or bedside of a dying person.[75] Again, the recommendations below could be suggested to families rather than done by the HCP themselves.

- Ask the dying person for permission for the child to visit.
- Be responsive to the child's desire to be present with a dying person or not; never assume their desires or make them feel guilty if they don't want to visit.[74]
- Is there a place the child can go if they need to leave? If possible, have a caring adult who can help with breaks.[75]
- Prepare the child/youth for what to expect[74]:
    - How will the person look and act and what is the reason? Explain the reason for behaviours that may be scary for children (e.g., agitation in progressive dementia).[75]
    - What is the equipment in the room? What is it for?
    - What may they hear and see? Explain things that may be upsetting such as rattling breathing.
    - Give them age-appropriate tasks to help them feel involved (e.g., telling a story, painting the person's nails, fetching water[13]).
    - Help them understand how to interact safely and to communicate with the person.[75]

## APPENDIX A - ADDITIONAL RESOURCES

- Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care: Depression in the Terminally Ill
  - ➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/-/media/Project/FraserHealth/FraserHealth/Health-Professionals/Professionals-Resources/Hospice-palliative-care/Sections-PDFs-for-FH-Aug31/9524-15-FH---Sym_Guide-Depression.pdf
- CAPO & CPAC: Pan Canadian Practice Guideline: Screening, Assessment and Care of Psychosocial Distress, Depression, and Anxiety in Adults with Cancer - Algorithms
  - ➞ https://www.capo.ca/resources/Documents/Guidelines/4.%20Algorithms%20for%20Cancer-related%20Distress,%20Depression%20and%20Global%20Anxiety.pdf
- BC Guidelines Palliative Care Part 3 - Appendix C: table with developmental ages and considerations for grief in children and youth
  - ➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative3_appendix_c.pdf
- Family Caregivers of B.C.
  - ➞ https://www.familycaregiversbc.ca/
- Trans-care BC. Glossary of terms and other resources
  - ➞ http://www.phsa.ca/transcarebc/health-professionals
- B.C. Temporary Substitute Decision-Maker List
  - ➞ http://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/sdm/
- BC Bereavement hotline
  - ➞ http://www.bcbh.ca/
- Canadian Virtual Hospice
  - ➞ My grief.ca http://www.mygrief.ca/
  - ➞ Kidsgrief.ca https://kidsgrief.ca/
  - ➞ Living my culture.ca http://livingmyculture.ca/culture/
  - ➞ Programs and services for children and youth in B.C. http://virtualhospice.ca/en_US/Main+Site+Navigation/Home/Support/Resources/Programs+and+Services/Provincial/British+Columbia/Programs_+services+and+hospice+for+children.aspx#id_a4b3ed4308902e5eb0b17e4675f90f73

- ➞ Bereavement services in BC
  http://virtualhospice.ca/en_US/Main+Site+Navigation/Home/Support/Resources/Programs+and+Services/Provincial/British+Columbia/Bereavement+services.aspx#id_e7c07bc97b7d5ccd50139a8255eda1c1

- Crisis Intervention & Suicide Prevention Centre of BC
  - ➞ https://crisiscentre.bc.ca/contact-us/

## Resources regarding MAiD:

Article and case studies on request for hastened death: http://www.virtualhospice.ca/en_US/Main+Site+Navigation/Home/For+Professionals/For+Professionals/The+Exchange/Current/Assessing+and+Managing+a+Request+for+Hastened+Death.aspx

Every Health Authority in BC has a Coordination Service or Program to provide specific information on MAiD and how to access. They can assist health care professionals to provide accurate and timely support and information to persons and families who request more information.

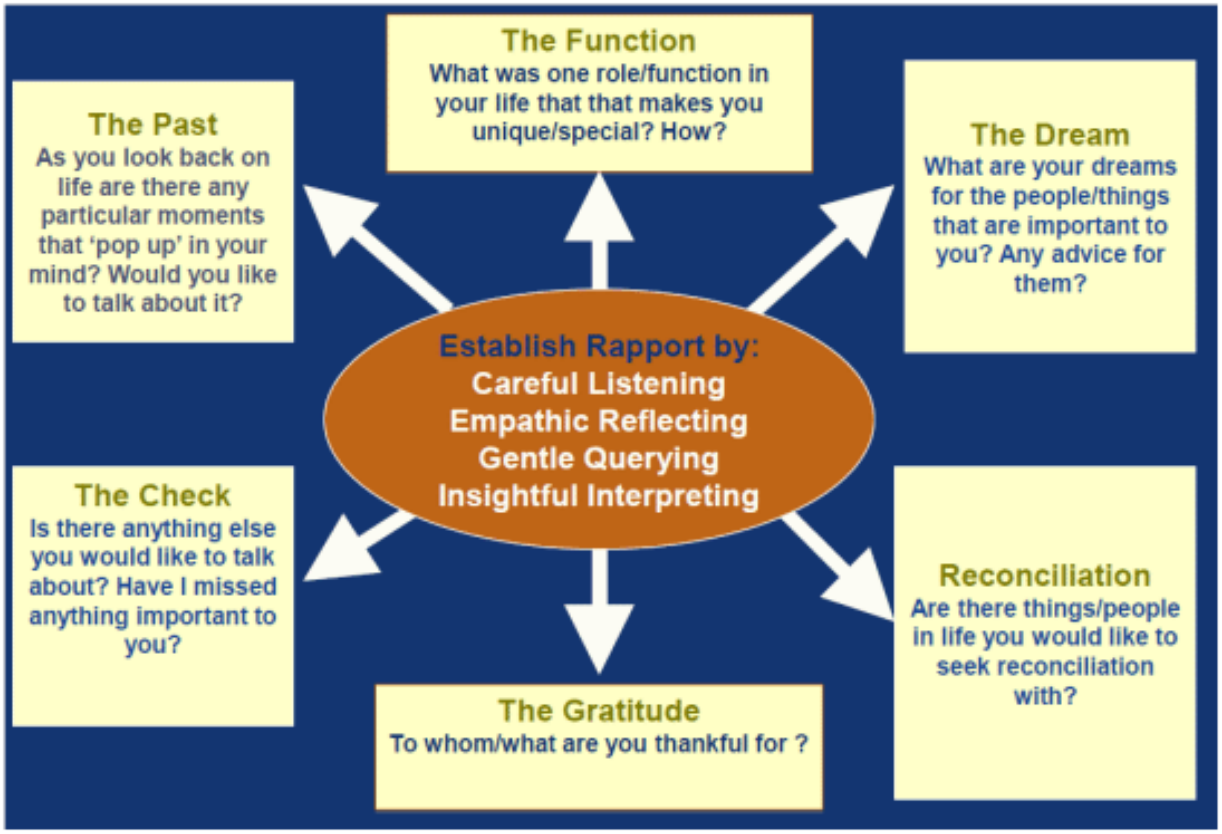
- Vancouver Island Health Authority:
  - ➞ https://www.islandhealth.ca/index.php/learn-about-health/medical-assistance-dying/medical-assistance-dying
- Northern Health Authority:
  - ➞ https://www.northernhealth.ca/health-topics/medical-assistance-dying-maid
- Interior Health:
  - ➞ https://www.interiorhealth.ca/YourCare/MAiD/Pages/default.aspx
- Vancouver Coastal Health:
  - ➞ http://www.vch.ca/public-health/health-topics-a-z/topics/medical-assistance-in-dying
- Fraser Health:
  - ➞ https://www.fraserhealth.ca/health-topics-a-to-z/end-of-life-care/medical-assistance-in-dying#.W-UTbB9KjX4

# APPENDIX B – EXTRA TOOLS

## Appendix B.1 - Screening and assessment tools

- ESAS-r
  - ➞ http://palliative.org/NewPC/_pdfs/tools/ESAS-r.pdf
- HADS
  - ➞ https://www.bgs.org.uk/sites/default/files/content/attachment/2018-07-05/hads_mood.pdf
- Bereavement Risk Assessment Tool
  - ➞ https://www2.gov.bc.ca/assets/gov/health/practitioner-pro/bc-guidelines/palliative3_appendix_e.pdff
- FICA and HOPE printable cards
  - ➞ https://meds.queensu.ca/source/spiritassesstool%20FICA.pdf
- Waterloo spiritual screening form[80]
  - ➞ http://wwpalliativecare.ca/Uploads/ContentDocuments/Spiritual%20Care%201-Pager-%20DRAFT%202D.pdf

- "Gentle Querying" Image re-produced with permission[22]



## Appendix B.2 - Comparison of grief and depression[27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 81, 82, 83]

| Unique to Grief | Shared by Both | Unique to Depression |
|---|---|---|
| • Variable mood, activity, communication, appetite<br>• Preoccupied with loss<br>• Weeping<br>• Stays connected to and is comforted by others<br>• May enjoy simple pleasures<br>• May re-define hope<br>• Specific anxiety about dying process and leaving others behind | • Sadness<br>• Fatigue<br>• Loss of energy<br>• Inability to focus<br>• Not interested in the rest of the world<br>• Anxiety<br>• Physical symptoms<br>• Anger<br>• Fear of losing one's mind<br>• Spiritual estrangement<br>• Alteration in relationships<br>• Impaired function<br>• Longing for an end to the pain<br>• Disturbed sleep patterns<br>• Weight loss, anorexia | • Moods and feelings are more static and have little variability<br>• Persistent low mood (for 2 weeks or more)<br>• Difficulty weeping and/or controlling weeping<br>• Loss confirms they are bad or worthless<br>• Preoccupation with distorted, negative self-view, feel worthless<br>• Feeling immobilized or stuck<br>• Withdrawal, loss of connection with self and others<br>• hopelessness<br>• Loss of pleasure<br>• Unable to be comforted by others<br>• Guilt<br>• Suicidal ideation<br>• Thoughts and feelings of hopelessness |

## Appendix B.3 - Tips for families to support children and youth with a dying family member

Also refer to section within the body of the guideline: page <?>

In times of loss, children and youth learn how to grieve from the modelling of important adults in their life. When children see adults expressing emotion, it teaches them that this is okay to do. If adults hide their tears and repress emotions using alcohol or other substances, children will learn this too. Modelling grief is teaching children important life lessons.

The intensity of adult emotions can also be distressing to children. That is when it is important to pull in close family supports to help with parenting and the importance of the temporary time of "right now".

Using conversation that reflects how you honestly feel is helpful and allows the child to see that their emotions are valid. For example, say: *I really miss Dad so much, and I feel so sad right now. I'm crying a lot and that may be hard to see, but it is okay to cry when we need to. This time is a really hard time for all of us, but it won't always feel this way.*

### Other ways to offer support

- Normalize and expect a wide range of emotion, including times when the child acts like they aren't affected at all.[69, 79, 13]
- Encourage safe ways to express emotion such as play, creativity and physical activity.[79]
- Differentiate between emotions and behaviour, (e.g., acknowledging feelings of anger while addressing undesired behaviour such as hitting).[79, 13]
- Serious illness requires families to reprioritize time/commitments and reorganize family life.[72] Encourage routines and predictability. Support from family and friends can be critical to support a sense of "normalcy".[72]
- Give choices to maintain a bit of control.[70, 72, 79]

### Strengthen social supports for children

- Consider needs at school and how to best engage. Choose a point-person for information sharing and any needed social and emotional support.[75]

### Understand how changes in the person with the illness may affect children

- Acknowledge changes, new limitations, and behaviours. Explain how specific symptoms impact the person's body and their life.
- Focus on what the person can do and adapt interactions to optimize time together.
- Remind child that disturbing behaviours are not their fault, but a result of the illness[75] (e.g., agitation).
- Discuss ways to make special memories, keep memories alive, and continue to honour the loved one[13] (videos, recordings, letters, rituals). Encourage them to say good-bye in their own way.

### 7 Communication tips for families:

1. Find windows of opportunity to have conversations throughout illness, especially at times of new information or changes in health condition[70, 71] because:
   - They may hear from someone else or overhear family conversations.
   - They see changes in parent and family life, feel the emotional climate in family, and sense something is wrong. They often imagine incorrect scenarios if they don't know what's happening.[76] They often already know more than you think they do [69, 70]
   - Knowing the truth lowers anxiety.[69, 13, 79]
   - Gives time to access supports available at school and in the community and allows the chance to say goodbye.[70]
2. Before any communication with a child, attend to your own feelings so you can balance modeling honest expression of emotion with self-care and regulation.[75]
3. Think about timing. Within a normal routine or driving in the car can be less intense.[75] Consider avoiding bedtime due to potential nightmares.
4. Be consistent as mixed messages can be harmful. Make sure loved ones and special people know messages children have received.[75] Never lie about what is happening.[76]

5. Ask if they're worried or have questions as they often try to protect adults by not upsetting them.[13] Let it be okay if they don't want to talk.[75]
6. Listen carefully to make sure you are answering what they're really asking (e.g., "where will Grandma go?" may be related to the body or to the afterlife).
7. Share your family's values and beliefs about spirituality and/or what happens after death. It's okay to say you don't know. [13, 79]

## TOPIC INDEX

Please visit the pages below for information on specific topics listed

### Anxiety (CAPO & CPAC Algorithm)


- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22


### Bereavement


- "Bereavement definition" on page 17
- "Bereavement follow-up at key time points" on page 18
- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22


### Children and Youth


- "Supporting children and youth when someone close to them is dying" on page 19
- "Appendix B.3 - Tips for families to support children and youth with a dying family member" on page 27
- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22


### Cultural Safety


- "Introduction" on page 3
- "Respect Culture" on page 5

- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22

### Depression

- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22
- "Appendix B.2 - Comparison of grief and depression" on page 26
- "Differentiating between grief and depression" on page 9

### Dignity -conserving care

- "Building a foundation of trust and dignity-conserving care" on page 3

### Existential distress

- "Recognizing Existential Distress" on page 8
- "Appendix B.1 - Screening and assessment tools" on page 24

### Family caregivers

- "Respect chosen family and community caregivers" on page 5
- "Social supports" on page 13
- "Appendix B.2 - Comparison of grief and depression" on page 26
- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22
- "Supporting children and youth when someone close to them is dying" on page 19
- "Supporting people and their families who are grieving" on page 16

### Grief

- "Appendix B.2 - Comparison of grief and depression" on page 26
- "Supporting people and their families who are grieving" on page 16

BC Centre for Palliative Care

### LGBT2Q+


- "Respect gender identity and sexual orientation" on page 5
- "Respect chosen family and community caregivers" on page 5
- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22


### MAiD, Wish for hastened death


- "Appendix A - Additional resources" on page 22
- "Expressed wish to hasten death" on page 14


### Psychosocial care


- "Supporting spiritual and psychosocial wellness" on page 11
- "Psychosocial assessment" on page 9


### Screening for distress


- "Appendix B.1 - Screening and assessment tools" on page 24
- "Screening for distress15" on page 7


### Spiritual care


- "Supporting spiritual and psychosocial wellness" on page 11
- "Appendix B.1 - Screening and assessment tools" on page 24
- "Spiritual wellness screening and assessment" on page 8


### Trauma-informed care


- "Building a foundation of trust and dignity-conserving care2:" on page 3

## REFERENCES

1. B.C. Inter-professional Palliative Symptom Management Guidelines [Internet]. BC Centre for Palliative Care; 2017. Available from: http://www.bc-cpc.ca/cpc/symptom-management-guidelines/

2. Johnston B, Larkin P, Connolly M, Barry C, Narayanasamy M, Östlund U, et al. Dignity-conserving care in palliative care settings: An integrative review. J Clin Nurs. 2015;24(13–14):1743–72.

3. Pringle J, Johnston B, Buchanan D. Dignity and patient-centred care for people with palliative care needs in the acute hospital setting: A systematic review. Palliat Med. 2015;29(8):675–94.

4. Brill M, Nahmani N. The Presence of compassion in therapy. Clin Soc Work J. 2017;45(1):10–21.

5. Ganzel BL. Trauma-informed hospice and palliative care. Gerontologist [Internet]. 2018 May 8;58(3):409–19. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=mnh&AN=27927732&login.asp&site=ehost-live&scope=site

6. Caxaj CS, Schill K, Janke R. Priorities and challenges for a palliative approach to care for rural indigenous populations: A scoping review. Heal Soc Care Community. 2018;26(3):e329–36.

7. Stadjuhar, K.I. MA. Too little, too late: How we fail vulnerable Canadians as they die and what do to about it. Victoria, B.C.: University of Victoria Insititute on Aging and Lifelong Health; 2018.

8. Cloyes KG, Hull W, Davis A. Palliative and end-of-life care for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender (LGBT) cancer patients and their caregivers. Semin Oncol Nurs [Internet]. 2018;34(1):60–71. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1016/j.soncn.2017.12.003

9. Acquaviva K. LGBTQ-Inclusive Hospice and Palliative Care. New York, NY: Harrington Park Press; 2017.

10. Murray CD, McDonald C, Atkin H. The communication experiences of patients with palliative care needs: A systematic review and meta-synthesis of qualitative findings. Palliat Support Care. 2015;13(2):369–83.

11. Duggleby W, Kuchera S, MacLeod R, Holyoke P, Scott T, Holtslander L, et al.

Indigenous people's experiences at the end of life. Palliat Support Care [Internet]. 2015;13(06):1721–33. Available from: http://www.journals.cambridge.org/abstract_S147895151500070X

12. Trans Care BC PHSA. Trans Basics - Glossery [Internet]. [cited 2018 Dec 5]. Available from: http://www.phsa.ca/transcarebc/trans-basics/glossary

13. Talking with young people about illness and dying. Talking openly , honestly , and often : A Framework for discussion [Internet]. Dr. Jay Children's Grief Centre; Available from: www.drjaychildrensgriefcentre.ca

14. Lowers J. End-of-Life Care Planning for Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender Individuals. J Hosp Palliat Nurs [Internet]. 2017;19(6):526–33. Available from: http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=cin20&AN=126291175&site=ehost-live

15. Howell D, Keshavarz H, Esplen MJ, Hack T, Hamel M, Howes J, Jones J, Li M, Manii D, McLeod D, Meyer C, Sellick S, Riahizadeh S, Noroozi H AM. A Pan Canadian Practice Guideline: Screening, Assessment and Care of Psychosocial Distress (Depression, Anxiety) in Adults with Cancer: Canadian Partnership Against Cancer (Cancer Journey Advisory Group) and Canadian Association of Psychosocial Oncology. 2015; Available from: http://www.capo.ca/wp-content/uploads/2010/10/Distress_guideline_CAPO_201507311.pdf

16. Bagha SM, Macedo A, Jacks LM, Lo C, Zimmermann C, Rodin G, et al. The utility of the Edmonton Symptom Assessment System in screening for anxiety and depression. Eur J Cancer Care (Engl). 2013;22(1):60–9.

17. Taylor L, Lovell N, Ward J, Wood F, Hosker C. Diagnosis of Depression in Patients Receiving Specialist Community Palliative Care: Does Using a Single Screening Question Identify Depression Otherwise Diagnosed by Clinical Interview? J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2013;16(9):1140–2. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2012.0569

18. Butow P, Price MA, Shaw JM, Turner J, Clayton JM, Grimison P, et al. Clinical pathway for the screening, assessment and management of anxiety and depression in adult cancer patients: Australian guidelines. Psychooncology. 2015;24(9):987–1001.

19. Warmenhoven F, van Weel C, Vissers K, Prins J. Screening Instruments for Depression in Advanced Cancer Patients: What Do We Actually Measure? Pain Pract. 2013;13(6):467–75.

20. Hudson P, Hall C, Boughey A, Roulston A. Bereavement support standards and bereavement care pathway for quality palliative care. Palliat Support Care [Internet]. 2018 Aug;16(4):375–87. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/

login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=131833207&site=ehost-live&scope=site

21. Puchalski CM, Vitillo R, Hull SK, Reller N. Improving the Spiritual Dimension of Whole Person Care: Reaching National and International Consensus. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2014;17(6):642–56. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2014.9427

22. Cheung LT. Existential suffering and hope. In: Master Class: Palliative care in the age of innovation and change [Internet]. Vancouver; 2017. Available from: https://med-fom-fpit.sites.olt.ubc.ca/files/2018/01/Existential-Distress-Hope-Dec-6-2017.pdf

23. Boston P, Bruce A, Schreiber R. Existential suffering in the palliative care setting: an integrated literature review. J Pain Symptom Manage. 2011 Mar;41(3):604–18.

24. Schuman-Olivier Z, Brendel DH, Forstein M, Price BH. The Use of Palliative Sedation for Existential Distress: A Psychiatric Perspective. Harv Rev Psychiatry [Internet]. 2008;16(6). Available from: https://journals.lww.com/hrpjournal/Fulltext/2008/11000/The_Use_of_Palliative_Sedation_for_Existential.3.aspx

25. Hudson P, Remedios C, Zordan R, Thomas K, Clifton D, Crewdson M, et al. Guidelines for the psychosocial and bereavement support of family caregivers of palliative care patients. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2012;15(6):696–702. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2011.0466

26. Cruz J, Marques A, Figueiredo D. Impacts of COPD on family carers and supportive interventions: a narrative review. Heal Soc Care Community. 2017;25(1):11–25.

27. Victoria Hospice Society; Cairns M; Thompson M; Wainwright W. Transitions in Dying & Bereavement. Baltimore, Maryland: Health Professions Press, Inc.; 2003.

28. Periyakoil VS. Differentiating grief and depression in patients who are seriously Ill. Am Fam Physician. 2012;86(3):232–4.

29. Lloyd-Williams M. Difficulties in diagnosing and treating depression in the terminally ill cancer patient. Postgrad Med J. 2000;76(899):555–8.

30. Zisook S, Shear K. Grief and bereavement: What psychiatrists need to know. World Psychiatry. 2009;8(2):67–74.

31. Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care Program Clinical Practice Committee. Depression in the Terminally Ill. Fraser Health; 2006.

32. Fraser Health Hospice Palliative Care Program Clinical Practice Committee. Fraser Health Symptom Guidelines: Hospice Palliative Care. 2006.

33. Chen J, Lin Y, Yan J, Wu Y, Hu R. The effects of spiritual care on quality of life and spiritual well-being among patients with terminal illness: A systematic review. Palliat Med [Internet]. 2018 Jul;32(7):1167–79. Available from: http://10.0.4.153/0269216318772267

34. Holder JS, Aldredge-Clanton J. Parting [Internet]. University of North Carolina Press; 2004. Available from: http://www.jstor.org/stable/10.5149/9780807867693_holder

35. Otis-Green S. Integrating spirituality into care at the end of life: Providing person-centered quality care. Death Stud [Internet]. 2015 Mar;39(3):185–7. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=psyh&AN=2015-12018-008&site=ehost-live&scope=site

36. Holyoke P, Stephenson B. Organization-level principles and practices to support spiritual care at the end of life: a qualitative study. BMC Palliat Care [Internet]. 2017 Apr 11;16:1–19. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=122551004&site=ehost-live&scope=site

37. Minton ME, Isaacson MJ, Varilek BM, Stadick JL, O'Connell-Persaud S. A willingness to go there: Nurses and spiritual care. J Clin Nurs [Internet]. 2018 Jan;27(1/2):173–81. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=126983953&site=ehost-live&scope=site

38. Bassett L, Bingley AF, Brearley SG. Silence as an element of care: A meta-ethnographic review of professional caregivers' experience in clinical and pastoral settings. Palliat Med [Internet]. 2018 Jan;32(1):185–94. Available from: http://10.0.4.153/0269216317722444

39. Fournier AL. Creating a Sacred Space in the Intensive Care Unit at the End of Life. Dimens Crit Care Nurs [Internet]. 2017 Mar;36(2):110–5. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=121170322&site=ehost-live&scope=site

40. Spiritual Health: A Framework for British Columbia's Spiritual Health Professionals. B.C. Ministry of Health Spiritual Health Working Group; 2012.

41. Hughes ME. A Strengths perspective on caregiving at the end-of-life. Aust Soc Work [Internet]. 2015;68(2):156–68. Available from: http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/0312407X.2014.910677

42. Funk LM, Peters S, Roger KS. Caring about dying persons and their families: Interpretation, practice and emotional labour. Heal Soc Care Community. 2018;26(4):519–26.

43. Warth M, Kessler J, Koehler F, Aguilar-Raab C, Bardenheuer HJ, Ditzen B. Brief psychosocial interventions improve quality of life of patients receiving palliative care: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Palliat Med [Internet]. 2019;026921631881801. Available from: http://journals.sagepub.com/doi/10.1177/0269216318818011

44. Bradley N, Lloyd-Williams M, Dowrick C. Effectiveness of palliative care interventions offering social support to people with life-limiting illness—A systematic review. Eur J Cancer Care (Engl). 2018;27(3):1–12.

45. Walshe C, Roberts D, Appleton L, Calman L, Large P, Lloyd-Williams M, et al. Coping well with advanced cancer: A serial qualitative interview study with patients and family carers. PLoS One. 2017;12(1):1–25.

46. Alcide A, Potocky M. Adult hospice social work intervention outcomes in the United States. J Soc Work End-of-Life Palliat Care [Internet]. 2015;11(3–4):367–85. Available from: http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/15524256.2015.1107806

47. Ftanou M, Pascoe MC, Ellen S. Psychosocial interventions for End-of-Life care: An Invited commentary. Aust Psychol. 2017;52(5):340–5.

48. Balaguer A, Monforte-Royo C, Porta-Sales J, Alonso-Babarro A, Altisent R, Aradilla-Herrero A, et al. An international consensus definition of the wish to hasten death and its related factors. PLoS One. 2016;11(1):1–15.

49. Villavicencio-Chávez C, Monforte-Royo C, Tomás-Sábado J, Maier MA, Porta-Sales J, Balaguer A. Physical and psychological factors and the wish to hasten death in advanced cancer patients. Psychooncology. 2014;23(10):1125–32.

50. Wright DK, Chirchikova M, Daniel V, Bitzas V, Elmore J, Fortin M-L. Engaging with patients who desire death: Interpretation, presence, and constraint. Can Oncol Nurs J [Internet]. 2017;27(1):56–73. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=ccm&AN=121616107&login.asp&site=ehost-live&scope=site

51. Hudson PL, Kristjanson LJ, Ashby M, Kelly B, Schofield P, Hudson R, et al. Desire for hastened death in patients with advanced disease and the evidence base of clinical guidelines: a systematic review. Palliat Med. 2006 Oct;20(7):693–701.

52. Van Loon RA. Desire to die in terminally ill people: a framework for assessment and intervention. Health Soc Work. 1999 Nov;24(4):260–8.

53. Hudson PL, Schofield P, Kelly B, Hudson R, O'Connor M, Kristjanson LJ, et al. Responding to desire to die statements from patients with advanced disease: recommendations for health professionals. Palliat Med [Internet]. 2006 Oct 1;20(7):703–10. Available from: https://doi.org/10.1177/0269216306071814

54. Pessin H, Olden M, Jacobson C, Kosinski A. Clinical assessment of depression in terminally ill cancer patients: A practical guide. Palliat Support Care [Internet]. 2006/04/13. 2005;3(4):319–24. Available from: https://www.cambridge.org/core/article/clinical-assessment-of-depression-in-terminally-ill-cancer-patients-a-practical-guide/4B8B86614411841EFA68B221443B4E27

55. Muskin PR. The request to die: role for a psychodynamic perspective on physician-assisted suicide. JAMA. 1998 Jan;279(4):323–8.

56. Johansen S, Holen JC, Kaasa S, Loge HJ, Materstvedt LJ. Attitudes towards, and wishes for, euthanasia in advanced cancer patients at a palliative medicine unit. Palliat Med. 2005 Sep;19(6):454–60.

57. van Wijngaarden E, Leget, C, Goossensen A. Ready to give up on life: The lived experience of elderly people who feel life is completed and no longer worth living. Soc Sci Med [Internet]. 2015 Aug;138:257–64. Available from: http://10.0.3.248/j.socscimed.2015.05.015

58. Grief [Internet]. Oxford Dictionary. Available from: https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/grief

59. Bray P. Bereavement and transformation: A Psycho-spiritual and post-traumatic growth perspective. J Relig Heal [Internet]. 2013 Sep;52(3):890–903. Available from: http://10.0.3.239/s10943-011-9539-8

60. Vergo MT, Whyman J, Li Z, Kestel J, James SL, Rector C, et al. Assessing Preparatory Grief in Advanced Cancer Patients as an Independent Predictor of Distress in an American Population. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2017;20(1):48–52. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/10.1089/jpm.2016.0136

61. Shore JC, Gelber MW, Koch LM, Sower E. Anticipatory grief: An evidence-based

approach. J Hosp Palliat Nurs. 2016;18(1):15–9.

62. Moon PJ. Anticipatory Grief: A Mere Concept? Am J Hosp Palliat Med. 2014;33(5):417–20.

63. Coelho A, Barbosa A. Family anticipatory grief: An Integrative literature review. Am J Hosp Palliat Med. 2017;34(8):774–85.

64. Bereavement [Internet]. Psychology Today. 2018. Available from: https://www.psychologytoday.com/us/conditions/bereavement

65. Shear MK, Gribbin Bloom C. Complicated Grief Treatment: An Evidence-Based Approach to Grief Therapy. J Ration - Emotive Cogn - Behav Ther. 2017;35(1):6–25.

66. Doering BK, Eisma MC. Treatment for complicated grief: State of the science and ways forward. Curr Opin Psychiatry. 2016;29(5):286–91.

67. Nielsen MK, Neergaard MA, Jensen AB, Vedsted P, Bro F, Guldin M-BB. Preloss grief in family caregivers during end-of-life cancer care: A nationwide population-based cohort study. Psychooncology [Internet]. 2017 Dec;26(12):2048–56. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=mnh&AN=28271588&login.asp&site=ehost-live&scope=site

68. Victoria Hospice Society. Dealing With Grief: A Guide to understanding your reactions [Internet]. Victoria, B.C.: Victoria Hospice Spciety; Available from: www.victoriahospice.org

69. Seccareccia D, Warnick A. When a parent is dying: Helping parents explain death to their children. Can Fam Physician. 2008;54(12):1693–4.

70. Warnick A. When to tell the children: Preparing children for the death of someone close to them. Canadian Virtual Hospice E-News. 2014 Dec;

71. Fearnley R, Boland JW. Communication and support from health-care professionals to families, with dependent children, following the diagnosis of parental life-limiting illness: A systematic review. Palliat Med. 2017;31(3):212–22.

72. Buchbinder M, Longhofer J, McCue K. Family routines and rituals when a parent has cancer. Fam Syst Heal. 2009;27(3):213–27.

73. Bharadwaj P, Sandesara N, Sternberg SE, Jones BL. Talking with children about a parent's serious illness. Am Fam Physician. 2013;88(9):571–2.

74. Warnick A. Children at the bedside of a dying family member or friend. Virtual

Hospice. 2017.

75. P.K. and Murial AR. Raising an emotionally healthy child when a parent is sick. Harvard Medical School and McGraw & Hill; 2006.

76. Kopchak Sheehan D, Burke Draucker C, Christ GH, Murray Mayo M, Heim K, Parish S. Telling Adolescents a Parent Is Dying. J Palliat Med [Internet]. 2014;17(5):512–20. Available from: http://online.liebertpub.com/doi/abs/10.1089/jpm.2013.0344

77. Bergman A-S, Axberg U, Hanson E. When a parent dies -- a systematic review of the effects of support programs for parentally bereaved children and their caregivers. BMC Palliat Care [Internet]. 2017 Aug 10;17:1–15. Available from: http://10.0.4.162/s12904-017-0223-y

78. Warnick AL. Supporting youth grieving the dying or death of a sibling or parent: considerations for parents, professionals, and communities. Curr Opin Support Palliat Care [Internet]. 2015 Mar;9(1):58–63. Available from: http://ezproxy.library.uvic.ca/login?url=http://search.ebscohost.com/login.aspx?direct=true&db=mnh&AN=25581448&login.asp&site=ehost-live&scope=site

79. Supporting Grieving Preschoolers [Internet]. The Dougy Centre: The National Centre for Grieving Children & Families; p. 1–3. Available from: www.dougy.org

80. Screening the Spiritual Needs of Palliative Patients , their Families and Caregivers [Internet]. Waterloo Wellington Integrated Hospice Palliative Care; 2009. Available from: http://wwpalliativecare.ca/Uploads/ContentDocuments/Spiritual Care 1-Pager- DRAFT 2D.pdf

81. Ferszt G, Leveillee M. Telling the difference between grief and depression. Psychol Rev. 2009;5(3):12–3.

82. Kennedy T, O'Neill L. A Resource for Interprofessional Providers. Donald W Reynolds Found Arizona Geriatr Educ Center, Arizona Cent Aging [Internet]. 2012;(August). Available from: http://aging.medicine.arizona.edu/

83. British Columbia Health. GUIDELINES & PROTOCOLS Palliative Care for the Patient with Incurable Cancer or Advanced Disease. Guidel Protoc [Internet]. 2011;2011:44. Available from: http://www.bcguidelines.ca/pdf/palliative2.pdf